目录 CONTENTS



全书考点索引 …… I

Unit 1 Dream homes

学习方法创新 …… 1
学习目标梳理 …… 1
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 2
Period 2 Reading …… 7
Period 3 Grammar …… 12
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 18
素养:学会感恩 …… 20
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 24

二维码索引
词汇表听写 …… 1
课时导入 …… 2,7
课文朗读 …… 2,3,7,18,19,24
课文听力 …… 18
知识微课:序数词 …… 16
拓展阅读 …… 7
方法真题练:语境判断法 …… 4

Unit 2 Neighbours

学习方法创新 …… 28
学习目标梳理 …… 28
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 29
Period 2 Reading …… 32
Period 3 Grammar …… 37
素养:了解中外文化,学会与人交流 …… 40
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 43
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 49

词汇表听写 …… 28
课时导入 …… 29,32
课文朗读 …… 29,32,43,44,49
课文听力 …… 43
知识微课:need 的用法 …… 39
拓展阅读 …… 32
方法真题练:主谓一致法 …… 31

Unit 3 Welcome to Sunshine Town!

学习方法创新 …… 54
学习目标梳理 …… 54
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 55
素养:了解中外饮食文化,培养节约粮食的素养 …… 57
Period 2 Reading …… 59
Period 3 Grammar …… 64
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 69
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 72

词汇表听写 …… 54
课时导入 …… 55,59
课文朗读 …… 55,59,70,73
课文听力 …… 69
知识微课:other …… 74
拓展阅读 …… 59
方法真题练:语法判断法 …… 66

Unit 4 Finding your way

学习方法创新 …… 78
学习目标梳理 …… 78
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 79
Period 2 Reading …… 83
素养:让生活充满笑声,活出旷达人生 …… 86
Period 3 Grammar …… 88
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 94
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 97

Project 1 …… 100

词汇表听写 …… 78
课时导入 …… 79,83
课文朗读 …… 79,80,83,94,95,97
课文听力 …… 94
知识微课:冠词 …… 90
拓展阅读 …… 83
方法真题练:词义辨析法 …… 81

教辅资料站
电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 Amazing things

学习方法创新 …… 102
学习目标梳理 …… 102
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 103
素养:培养“中外文化差异”素养 …… 105
Period 2 Reading …… 107
Period 3 Grammar …… 114
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 118
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 121

词汇表听写 …… 102
课时导入 …… 103,107
课文朗读 … 103,104,107,119,121
课文听力 …… 118
知识微课:stop 的用法 …… 105
拓展阅读 …… 107
方法真题练:寻找题眼法 …… 122

Unit 6 Outdoor fun

学习方法创新 …… 124
学习目标梳理 …… 124
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 125
素养:培养“走进自然,热爱生活”素养 …… 127
Period 2 Reading …… 128
Period 3 Grammar …… 133
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 137
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 140

词汇表听写 …… 124
课时导入 …… 125,128
课文朗读 …… 125,128,138,140
课文听力 …… 137
知识微课:too much …… 126
拓展阅读 …… 128
方法真题练:交际法 …… 126

Unit 7 Abilities

学习方法创新 …… 145
学习目标梳理 …… 145
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 146
Period 2 Reading …… 150
Period 3 Grammar …… 155
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 160
素养:培养“中外文化差异”素养 …… 163
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 164

词汇表听写 …… 145
课时导入 …… 146,150
课文朗读 … 146,147,150,161,164
课文听力 …… 160
知识微课:感叹句 …… 158
拓展阅读 …… 150
方法真题练:固定句式法 …… 159

Unit 8 Pets

学习方法创新 …… 169
学习目标梳理 …… 169
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 170
Period 2 Reading …… 173
素养:积极心态,处理问题 …… 176
Period 3 Grammar …… 178
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 183
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 186
Project 2 …… 189

词汇表听写 …… 169
课时导入 …… 170,173
课文朗读 …… 170,173,184,186
课文听力 …… 183
知识微课:形容词 …… 180
拓展阅读 …… 173
方法真题练:短语辨析法 …… 185

活页部分

Unit 1 过关测试 …… 191
Unit 2 过关测试 …… 195
Unit 3 过关测试 …… 199
Unit 4 过关测试 …… 203
Unit 5 过关测试 …… 207
Unit 6 过关测试 …… 211
Unit 7 过关测试 …… 215
Unit 8 过关测试 …… 219
参考答案及点拨 …… 223
教材习题参考答案 …… 244

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

全书考点索引

A a tin of… 56
ability 147
able 148
above 89
agree 179
air 61
all kinds of 36
all over the world 122
all the time 179
artist 47
area 14
as large as 122
as usual 109
at the age of 163
at the foot of a hill 25

B basket 188
be afraid of 120
be different from 21
be full of 21
be good at 46
be ready to … 35
be sure 46
become 139
bedroom 10
believe 147
between 80
better 52
birth 105
by the way 157
by train 45

C camping 127
capital 5
care 177
carefully 111
careless 162
check 34
community 33
complain 126
centre 9
clean up 148
come on 104
country 5
cross 86

D decide 141
do one's best 162
do some shopping 35
drive 75

E end 176
engineer 34
enjoy 57
enough 56
enter 142
even 148
everybody 85

F fact 106
fail 142
fall 130
famous 62
far away from … 45
feed 172
fight 175
follow 80
fresh 61
fire 40
foot 14
future 46
friendly 75

G get away 130
give a seat to 148
go shopping 62
go down 81

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

H happen ····· 111
have fun ····· 9
hear sb./sth. do sth. ····· 74
help ...with ... ····· 34
helpful ····· 33
hit ····· 130
hold ····· 171
hope ····· 22
How about ...? ····· 47
hunt ····· 175
hurry ····· 126
hurt ····· 153

I I'm afraid ... ····· 29
invite ····· 26

K key ····· 65
keep ...away from ... ····· 153
knife ····· 20

L later ····· 113
laugh ····· 86
leave ····· 110
learn about ····· 116
locked ····· 131
look after ····· 175
look forward to ····· 62
lose ····· 166
lucky ····· 35

M make sb. do sth. ····· 51
message ····· 22
mile ····· 9
mine ····· 56
miss ····· 62
moment ····· 153

N neighbour ····· 29
news ····· 153
next to ····· 4
No problem. ····· 157
north ····· 81
not... any more ····· 120
nothing ····· 56
notice ····· 50

O on one's way ····· 111
once ····· 185
order ····· 57
outside ····· 89
over ····· 14

P palace ····· 3
pass by ····· 130
pay ····· 148
pick ····· 112
plenty ····· 98
police ····· 45
prepare ····· 98
protect ····· 153
put up ····· 134

Q quiet ····· 61

R rain ····· 39
reach ····· 142
recommend sb. for ... ····· 165
remember ····· 85
row ····· 71
rush into ····· 153

S sandwich ····· 122
same ····· 105
save ····· 152
say to oneself ····· 112
search ····· 112
send ····· 148
share ····· 10
show sb. around ... ····· 74
shower ····· 20
smell ····· 74
smoke ····· 152
something ····· 34
strange ····· 110
straight ····· 85

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

T take part in ····· 166
take ...to ... ····· 58
term ····· 162
That's it. ····· 171
thousand ····· 14
through ····· 131
till ····· 176
too ...to ... ····· 142
touch ····· 176
trip ····· 82
trouble ····· 176
try ····· 131
turn around ····· 110

V visitor ····· 30

W want ····· 72
weigh ····· 185
What else? ····· 115
Why not ...? ····· 62
wide ····· 175
without ····· 120
wood ····· 139
work hard ····· 162
works of art ····· 71
Would you like ...? ····· 3

其他 辨析 next to 与 near ····· 4
辨析 there be 与 have/has ····· 4
辨析 one 与 it ····· 5
辨析 centre 与 middle ····· 9
辨析 family, house 与 home ····· 9
辨析 in bed, in the bed 与 on the bed ····· 10
辨析 like doing (sth.) 与 like to do (sth.) ····· 10
辨析 listen to, listen, hear 与 sound ····· 10
辨析 look out, look out at 与 look out of ····· 10
辨析 thanks for 与 thanks to ····· 20
辨析 of one's own 与 on one's own ····· 21
辨析 some day 与 one day ····· 22
辨析 in front of 与 in the front of ····· 25
辨析 beside 与 besides ····· 26
辨析 look like 与 be like ····· 30
辨析 anyone 与 any one ····· 35
辨析 fix, mend 与 repair ····· 35
辨析 need to do sth. 与 need doing ····· 39
辨析 elder 与 older ····· 45
辨析 job 与 work ····· 45
辨析 sick 与 ill ····· 47
辨析 information, message 与 news ····· 50
辨析 below 与 under ····· 50
辨析 well, good, fine 与 nice ····· 51
辨析 maybe 与 may be ····· 57
辨析 how far, how long 与 how soon ····· 71
辨析 many more 与 much more ····· 71
辨析 other, the other 与 another ····· 74
辨析 raise 与 rise ····· 74
辨析 have to 与 must ····· 81
辨析 find, find out 与 look for ····· 85
辨析 quite 与 very ····· 86
辨析 sound, noise 与 voice ····· 86
辨析 across 与 through ····· 89
辨析 on, over 与 above ····· 90
辨析 past 与 pass ····· 95
辨析 stop doing sth. 与 stop to do sth. ····· 105
辨析 reply 与 answer ····· 110
辨析 happen 与 take place ····· 111
辨析 leave 与 forget ····· 111
辨析 surprised 与 surprising ····· 112
辨析 too much, too many 与 much too ····· 126
辨析 alone 与 lonely ····· 131
辨析 excited 与 exciting ····· 139
辨析 from now on 与 from then on ····· 139
辨析 little, few, a little 与 a few ····· 141
辨析 look out, take care 与 be careful ····· 147
辨析 in hospital 与 in the hospital ····· 153
辨析 before 与 ago ····· 166
辨析 bring 与 take ····· 171

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Dream homes

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠开门见山法(9 页)　⚠观察连词法(9,11 页)
写作方法	①“三步法”写梦想的家(26 页)
解题方法	1 交际法(3,9,22,223,234 页)　2 词语应用法(26,235 页) 3 固定短语法(23,223 页)　4 联系上下文法 (223 页) 5 短语辨析法 (11,21,234 页)　6 语法判定法 (16,23,234,235 页) 7 词义辨析法 (22,26,223 页)　8 语境判断法(4,15,25 页)

☞温馨提示:括号内的数字表示该方法在本书中对应的页码。

学习目标梳理

话题	不同国家的居住状况		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	palace *n.* 皇宫,宫殿　town *n.* 镇,城镇 Canada *n.* 加拿大　France *n.* 法国 Japan *n.* 日本　Russia *n.* 俄罗斯 UK *abbr.* 英国　London *n.* 伦敦 country *n.* 国家　capital *n.* 首都	next to 在……近旁 the capital of ……的首都 would like to do sth. 想要做某事 in Fifth Street 在第五大街
	Period 2	mile *n.* 英里　garden *n.* 花园,果园 centre *n.* 中心　share *vt.* 合用;分享 bedroom *n.* 卧室　own *adj.* 自己的 bathroom *n.* 浴室,盥洗室 beach *n.* 海滩　sea *n.* 海	have fun with 和……玩得开心 in the centre of 在……中心 living room 起居室,客厅 on the seventh floor 在第七层 share …with …与……分享…… one's own bedroom 某人自己的卧室 look out at 向外看　dining room 餐厅 enjoy a cup of tea 品一杯茶 listen to music in bed 躺在床上听音乐
	Period 3	zero *num.* 零　hundred *num.* 百 thousand *num.* 千　million *num.* 百万 foot *n.* (*pl.* feet) 英尺　square *adj.* 平方的 metre *n.* 米,公尺　area *n.* 面积 over *prep.* 超过	have an area of 面积为…… square metre 平方米 in size 在大小方面
	Period 4	fork *n.* 叉,餐叉　fridge *n.* 冰箱 knife *n.* (*pl.* knives) 刀 shower *n.* 淋浴器;淋浴 sofa *n.* 沙发　video *n.* 录像; 视频 may *modal v.* 可以;也许,可能 message *n.* 消息;音信 double *adj.* 双的;两倍的	be different from 与……不同 be full of 满是 of one's own 属于某人自己的 take a message 捎个口信 some day 将来有一天,总有一天 call sb. back 给某人回电话 ask sb. to do sth. 要求某人做某事

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

	课时	单词	短语
必考点	Period 5	study *n.* 书房　machine *n.* 机器 field *n.* 地，田　invite *vt.* 邀请 stay *vi.* 停留，逗留	at the foot of 在……脚下 in front of 在……前面 on the ground floor 在一楼 invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事 washing machine 洗衣机 football field 足球场 home cinema 家庭影院

句型	1. Would you like to do ...?	你想做……吗？
	2. Is ...the capital of ...?	……是……的首都吗？
	3. May I speak to ...?	我可以找……接电话吗？
	4. Who's speaking, please?	请问你是谁？
	5. Can ... take a message?	……能传个话吗？
	6. I have my own...	我有自己的……
	7. ...has an area of over...	……面积超过……
	8. I hope to...	我希望……
	9. Can you ask sb. to do sth. ?	你能让某人做某事吗？
语法	基数词和序数词	

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

1 **Would you like to live in a palace**[1], **Eddie**?[2]
2 No. I'd like to live **next to**[3] a restaurant.
3 **There are twenty restaurants in town.**[4] Which is your favourite?
4 **The biggest one in Fifth Street!**[5]

课文朗读 Comic strip

Where would you like to live?

The Class 1, Grade 7 students at Sunshine Middle School are learning about homes in different countries.

Task

Complete a questionnaire and write about your dream home.

Welcome to the unit

Countries and capitals

A **Simon wants to learn about foreign countries. He collected some photos. Help him write the names of the countries under the photos.**

Canada	France	Japan
Russia	the UK	the USA

连环漫画

1 埃迪，你想住在宫殿里吗？
2 不。 我想住在一家餐馆的旁边。
3 镇上有 20 家餐馆。 你最喜欢哪一家？
4 在第五大街最大的那一家！

你想要住在哪儿？

阳光中学七年级一班的学生们正在了解不同国家的住宅。

任务

完成一个问卷调查并写下你的梦想家园。

单元导入

国家和首都

A 西蒙想了解外国。 他收集了一些照片。 帮助他在照片下写下国家的名称。

加拿大	法国	日本
俄罗斯	英国	美国

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1 Mount Fuji
2 the White House
3 the Eiffel Tower
4 the CN Tower
5 Big Ben
6 Red Square

TIP
The CN Tower is in Toronto.

B **Simon's cousin, Annie, is asking Simon questions about the places in Part A. Work in pairs and talk about them. Use the conversation below as a model. The capital of each country is listed in the box below.**

London	Moscow	Ottawa
Paris	Tokyo	Washington D. C.

课文朗读B

Annie: Which **country**⑥ is this photo from, Simon?
Simon: Oh, it's from Japan. This is Mount Fuji.
Annie: I see. Where is it?
Simon: It's near Tokyo.
Annie: Is Tokyo the **capital**⑦ of Japan?
Simon: Yes, it is.

1 富士山
2 白宫
3 埃菲尔铁塔
4 加拿大国家电视塔
5 大本钟
6 红场

提示
加拿大国家电视塔位于多伦多。

B 西蒙的表姐安妮正在问西蒙关于A部分的地方的问题。结对谈论它们。用下面的对话作为示例。每个国家的首都都列在下面的方框里。

伦敦	莫斯科	渥太华
巴黎	东京	华盛顿

安妮：西蒙，这是来自哪个国家的照片？
西蒙：噢，它来自日本。这是富士山。
安妮：我知道了。它在哪儿？
西蒙：在东京附近。
安妮：东京是日本的首都吗？
西蒙：是的，它是。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶palace /ˈpælɔs/ *n.* 皇宫，宫殿
eg: Eddie wants to live in a **palace**.
埃迪想住在宫殿里。
拓展 palace常构成固定短语：
the Summer Palace 颐和园
the Palace Museum 故宫博物院
the Children's Palace 少年宫
Potala Palace 布达拉宫
eg: (北京中考) I was in **the Summer Palace** in Beijing on Saturday. I was there for a flower show.
周六我在北京的颐和园，我在那里看花展。

❷Would you like ...? 你想要/愿意……吗？
考向一：Would you like...? 表示用委婉的语气向对方提出请求或建议，后可跟名词、代词或不定式。其肯定回答常用：
(1) Yes, please.
(2) Yes, I'd like/love to.
(3) That's a good/great idea.
其否定回答常用：
(1) No, thanks.
(2) I'd love to, but...
(3) Sorry, but I can't.
(4) I'm afraid I can't.
eg: —**Would you like** some bananas?
你想要一些香蕉吗？
—Yes, please. /No, thanks.
是的。/不要，谢谢。
—**Would you like** to play games with me?
你想和我一起做游戏吗？
—Yes, I'd love to. 是的，我想。
【注意】Would you like ...? 中通常不用 any 或 anything，而应用 some 或 something，表示希望得到对方的肯定回答。
eg: **Would you like** some coffee?
你要喝点咖啡吗？

【考题在线1】 —Would you like more dumplings, Harry?
—_____. I'm full. (云南)
A. Yes, please B. No way
C. No, thanks D. All right
点拨：本题用交际法。句意：——你想再来点水饺吗，哈里？——不，谢谢，我饱了。根据答语：我饱了。可以判断：回答者不需要水饺了，但也要表示感谢。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线2】—Would you like to travel with me after this exam?
—_____. I can't wait. （十堰）
A. That's all right
B. Of course not
C. Yes, I'd love to
D. What a pity


方法真题练：语境判断法

点拨：本题用**语境判断法**。句意：——这次考试结束后，你想和我一起去旅行吗？——是的，我很想去，我都等不及了。That's all right 不客气；Of course not 当然不行；Yes, I'd love to 是的，我很想去；What a pity 真可惜。根据语境选 Yes, I'd love to。

考向二：would like 的几种常见用法

(1) Would like + 名词或代词，表示"想要"某样东西。

eg: I **would like** a cup of tea.
我想要一杯茶。

(2) would like to do sth. 想要做某事

eg: I **would like to play** basketball with you.
我想和你一起打篮球。

(3) would like sb. to do sth. 想要某人做某事

eg: We **would like you to do** the work today.
我们想让你今天就做这项工作。

【注意】以上短语中 would like = want。

拓展 feel like doing sth. 意为"想要做某事"，通常可以和 would like to do sth., want to do sth. 互相转换。

eg: I **want** to go to the cinema. = I **would like** to go to the cinema. = I **feel like** going to the cinema.
我想去看电影。

【考题在线3】Millie would like _____ a new dress for her mother as a birthday gift.
A. buying　　B. buy
C. buys　　D. to buy

❸next to 在……近旁

考向：next to 是固定搭配，相当于 beside 或 close to，意为"紧邻，在……近旁"，其后可接名词或代词。

eg: My school is **next to** the bank.
我的学校紧邻银行。

（滨州中考）There are many nice gardens in it. And **next to** the Abbey, there is a big new church.
有许多漂亮的花园在里面，并且挨着修道院，有一个大的新教堂。

[辨析] next to 与 near

next to	表示"紧邻"，强调位置紧挨着。	The big supermarket is **next to** my house. 那个大超市在我家旁边。
near	表示"在……附近"，强调的距离比 next to 远些。	There is a big supermarket **near** my house. 我家附近有一家大超市。

【考题在线4】我的新房子在我旧学校的旁边。
My new house is _____ _____ my old school.

❹There are twenty restaurants in town.
城里有 20 家餐馆。

考向一：[辨析] there be 与 have/ has

there be	意为"某地有某物（或人）"，表示存在关系。若主语是两个或两个以上的名词并列时，be 动词的形式要与离它最近的主语在人称和数上保持一致，即遵循"就近原则"。	**There is** a car behind the house. 房子后面有一辆小汽车。（表示小汽车存在于房子后） **There is** a book and two pens on the desk. 在课桌上有一本书和两支钢笔。
have/ has	意为"有，拥有"，表示所属关系。可指有生命的人或动物拥有什么，也可指无生命的东西具有什么。	Mr Li **has** a car. 李先生有一辆小汽车。（表示李先生拥有小汽车）

魔法记忆

there be 句型的否定句和一般疑问句口诀：there be 句型有特点，主语放在 be 后边。变否定，很简单，be 后要把 not 添。变疑问，也不难，把 be 提到 there 前。肯定句中有 some，变否定、疑问时用 any 换。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考向二：town / taʊn /*n*. 城镇。

town 比 village（村子）大，比 city（城市）小。常用短语 in town 在城里，town 前无须加定冠词 the。

eg：I have many old friends **in town**.
我在城里有许多老朋友。

拓展 类似结构有：
in hospital 住院
at school 在学校
in bed 在床上

【考题在线 5】他想在城里买些新书。
He wants to buy some new books _____.

❺The biggest one...
最大的那一个……

考向一：The biggest one ...是个省略句，完整形式是“The biggest ...is my favourite.”，用来回答前面的问句“Which is your favourite?”。

考向二：[难点] biggest 为形容词 big 的最高级，意为“最大的”。在英语中，大多数形容词和副词都有原级、比较级和最高级。在形容词的最高级之前需要加定冠词 the。

eg：The elephant is **the biggest** animal on land.
大象是陆地上最大的动物。

考向三：句中的 one 指代上文所提到的 restaurant。

eg：（海南中考）In my opinion, *The Little Prince* is the best one.
在我看来，《小王子》是最好的一本（书）。

[辨析] one 与 it

one	泛指，用来指代前面提到过的那类人或物中的任何一个，其复数形式为 ones。	This tie does not match my shirt well. Would you please show me another **one**? 这条领带不太配我的衬衫，请你拿另外一条给我看看好吗？
it	特指，用来指代前面提到过的那个事或物。	The book is very interesting. Would you like to have a look at **it**? 这本书很有趣，你想看看它吗？

【注意】
（1）one 可以被冠词、形容词、指示代词、疑问代词等修饰，it 不能被这些词修饰。
（2）it 还可代替上文中的句子或句中的某一部分，而 one 则不能。

【考题在线 6】—The fridges are on sale in the supermarket today.
—Really? Let's go and buy _____ for your new kitchen.（安徽）
A. one　　B. it
C. that　　D. them

点拨：句意：——今天这个超市里冰箱大甩卖。——真的吗？咱们去为你的新厨房买一台吧。one 指代前面提到的物品中的一个；it 指前面提到的特指的物品；that 那个；them 它们。从语境知，这里指的是去买这些冰箱中的一个。

❻country /ˈkʌntri/ *n*. 国家

eg：I don't know the name of that **country**.
我不知道那个国家的名字。

考向一：country 为可数名词，其复数形式为 countries。

eg：We can speak English in many **countries**.
在许多国家我们可以讲英语。

考向二：country 还可作“乡村”讲，固定短语：in the country 在乡下。

eg：I have a big farm **in the country**.
在乡下我有一个大农场。

❼capital /ˈkæpɪtl / *n*. 首都

考向：常用结构：the capital of + 地名“……的首都（省会）”。提问“……的首都（省会）是哪个城市？”的问句应为“Which city is the capital of ...?”。

eg：London is **the capital of** the UK.
伦敦是英国的首都。
Nanchang is **the capital of** Jiangxi.
南昌是江西的省会。

拓展 capital 作名词还可意为“大写字母”。

eg：The child writes his name in **capitals**.
这个孩子用大写字母写他的名字。

【考题在线 7】Can you tell me the _____（首都）of Canada?（阜康）

考题在线答案
1. C　2. C　3. D　4. next to　5. in town
6. A　7. capital

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见234页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. If you work hard, your _____（梦想）can come true. （德阳）
2. My father likes to visit different _____（宫殿）all over the world.
3. Every year there are many travellers coming to our t_____ to see our old buildings.
4. —Do you know Sydney?
   —Yes, of course. It's the c_____ of Australia.
5. China is a c_____ with a long history.

二、单项选择

6. —Would you like to come to dinner tomorrow evening?
   —_____ （德州）
   A. Yes, it's true.
   B. You really do.
   C. It's upstairs.
   D. Yes, I'd love to.
7. —Nick, I lost my pen and I couldn't find _____ anywhere.
   —There are many pens in that box. Just take _____. （滨州）
   A. it; it
   B. it; one
   C. one; it
   D. one; one
8. —Where is Kate?
   —She is sitting next _____ Lily. (柳州改编)
   A. to　　B. in
   C. on　　D. with
9. —Is there a watermelon on the table?
   —_____ （南充）
   A. Yes, there is.
   B. Yes, it is.
   C. No, there is.
   D. No, it isn't.
10. —Where does your uncle work?
    —He works in Paris, the capital of _____.
    【导学号：1037419】
    A. the USA
    B. France
    C. Thailand
    D. Japan

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 星期天你经常去少年宫吗？
    Do you often go to the _____ _____ on Sundays?
12. 我想住在一家大型购物中心的旁边。
    I'd like to live _____ _____ a big shopping mall.
13. 这是来自哪个国家的照片？
    _____ _____ is this photo from?
14. 我有一本故事书。它非常有趣。你有一本吗？
    I have a storybook. _____ is very interesting. Do you have _____?
15. 我的祖父喜欢住在乡下。
    My grandpa loves to live _____ _____ _____.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A Homes around the world

Simon wants to learn about homes around the world. Here are the blogs of three students from different countries.

课文朗读A

Hi! I'm Neil.

I live in a town 15 miles[1] from London.[2] The house is big. My favourite room is the kitchen. My **family**[3] and I often sit there and enjoy a cup of tea. We have a beautiful garden. I always **have fun**[4] with my dog there.

Hello! My name is Anna.

I live in a flat in the **centre**[5] of Moscow. Our flat is on the seventh floor. **It's not big, but we have a nice living room.**[6] After dinner, we **like to watch TV**[7] and chat there. I **share**[8] a **bedroom**[9] with my sister. **We often listen to music in bed**[10].

Hi! I'm Stephen.

I live in a large house in Los Angeles. It has eight rooms. I have my own bedroom and bathroom, and I like the balcony best. **I love to sit there and look out at**[11] **the beach and the sea.**[12] It's cool.

B Homes in different countries

B1 Simon wrote down some sentences, but he mixed up the underlined words. Help him write the correct words above the mistakes.

1 I usually wash my face in the dining room.
2 I always sleep in the kitchen.
3 The bathroom is the best place to chat and watch TV.
4 In most homes, people have dinner in the bedroom.
5 We usually cook meals in the living room.

B2 Simon wants to tell his parents about the homes of the students from the blogs. Help him complete the table with the information on page 8.

Name / Home	Neil	Anna	Stephen
City/Town	a town 15 miles from London		
House/Flat			

阅读

A 世界各地的家园

西蒙想了解世界各地的家园。下面是三个来自不同国家的学生的博客。

嗨！我是尼尔。

我住在一个离伦敦15英里的镇上。房子很大。我最喜欢的房间是厨房。我和我的家人经常坐在那儿，享受一杯茶。我们有一个美丽的花园。我总是和我的狗在那儿玩得很开心。

你好！我是安娜。

我住在莫斯科市中心的一个公寓里。我们的公寓在第七层。它不大，但是我们有一个漂亮的客厅。晚饭后，我们喜欢在那儿看电视和聊天。我和我妹妹共用一个卧室。我们经常在床上听音乐。

嗨！我是斯蒂芬。

我住在洛杉矶的一所大房子里。它有八个房间。我有我自己的卧室和浴室。我最喜欢阳台。我喜欢坐在那儿，向外看海滩和大海。这很酷。

B 不同国家的家园

B1 西蒙写了一些句子，但他把画线部分的词弄混了。帮助他在错误的词上面写出正确的词。

1 我通常在餐厅洗脸。
2 我总是在厨房睡觉。
3 浴室是聊天和看电视的最好地方。
4 在大部分家庭，人们在卧室吃正餐。
5 我们通常在客厅做饭。

B2 西蒙想告诉他的父母有关博客中学生的家的情况。用第八页中的信息帮助他完成这个表格。

姓名 / 家	尼尔	安娜	斯蒂芬
城市/镇	离伦敦15英里的一个镇		
房子/公寓			

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Big/Small			
Favourite place			

B3 **Simon is telling his parents about the homes of the three students. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.**

1 Neil lives in the centre of London. _____
2 Neil always has fun with his cat in the garden. _____
3 Anna and her family often watch TV and chat in their kitchen. _____
4 Anna does not have her own bedroom. _____
5 There are eight rooms in Stephen's house.
6 Stephen lives near the sea. _____

B4 **There are more pictures on the students' blogs. Look at the pictures and help Simon complete the sentences.**

Russia	balcony	listen to music in bed
the UK	bedroom	sit there and enjoy a cup of tea
the USA	kitchen	sit there and look out at the sea

1 This is Stephen from _____. He is chatting with his friends on his _____. He loves to _____.
2 This is Anna from _____. She shares a _____ with her sister. They often _____.
3 This is Neil from _____. He is sitting in the _____. He and his family often _____.

大/小			
最喜欢的地方			

B3 西蒙正在告诉他的父母关于那三个学生的家的情况。如果句子正确就写“T”，如果错误就写“F”。

1 尼尔住在伦敦市中心。_____
2 尼尔总是和他的猫在花园里玩得很开心。_____
3 安娜和她的家人经常在厨房里看电视和聊天。_____
4 安娜没有自己的卧室。_____
5 斯蒂芬的家有八个房间。_____
6 斯蒂芬住在大海附近。_____

B4 学生的博客上有更多的图片。看图片，帮助西蒙完成句子。

俄罗斯	阳台	在床上听音乐
英国	卧室	坐在那儿并享受一杯茶
美国	厨房	坐在那儿并朝外看大海

1 这是斯蒂芬，来自_____。他正在和他的朋友们聊有关他的_____的情况。他喜欢_____。
2 这是安娜，来自_____。她和她妹妹合住一个_____。她们经常_____。
3 这是尼尔，来自_____。他正坐在_____里。他和他的家人经常_____。

课文结构梳理

Homes
- Neil's home
  - Position（位置）→a town 15 _____[1] from _____[2]
  - Size（大小）→big
  - Things they like to do→enjoy a cup of _____[3]
- Anna's home
  - Position→in the _____[4] of Moscow
  - Size→not big
  - Things they like to do→watch TV and _____[5]
- Stephen's home
  - Position→in Los Angeles
  - Size→big
  - Things he likes to do→ _____[6] on the balcony and _____[7] out _____[8] the _____[9] and the _____[10]

温馨提示：请同学们先独立做题挑战自我，完成后可将书倒过来看答案哦！

答案：1.miles 2.London 3.tea 4.centre 5.chat 6.sit 7.look 8.at 9.beach 10.sea

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶mile /maɪl/ *n.* 英里

eg: My house is half a **mile** from the city.
我家离这座城市半英里。

考向: mile 为可数名词,其复数形式为 miles。
eg: five miles 五英里

【注意】mile 表示距离,作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。
eg: 5 miles is not far. 五英里不远。

拓展 常见的计量单位小结:
长度: metre 米　kilometre 千米
foot 英尺　inch 英寸
重量: gram 克　kilogram 千克　pound 磅

❷开门见山法: I live in a town 15 miles from London. 这是介绍自己家的时候常用的一种句型。介绍自己的家,首先要介绍家的位置,然后再对自己所住的具体环境进行描述。

❸family /ˈfæməli/ *n.* 家;家庭;亲属

eg: (海南中考) The sister lives with love from her **family** all the time.
姐姐一直在家人的爱的陪伴中生活着。

考向: [辨析] family, house 与 home

family	集体名词①意为"家庭",作主语时,谓语动词用单数。②意为"家人,家庭成员",作主语时,谓语动词用复数。	All his **family** are in Beijing now. 他们全家人现在都在北京。My **family** is a very happy one. 我家是个很幸福的家庭。
house	名词,指"房屋,住宅",人们居住的建筑物。	My new **house** is big and bright. 我的新房子大且明亮。
home	名词,指"家",一个家庭共同生活的地方,也指一个人出生或长大的地方,包含建筑物和里面居住的人。	There is no place like **home**. 没有什么地方比得上家。
	地点副词,与动词连用时,要省略 home 前面的介词。	Let him go **home**. 让他回家。

拓展 "the + 姓氏 + family"表示"某某一家",也可写成"the + 姓氏的复数形式"。the Smith family = the Smiths,表示"史密斯一家"。定冠词 the 不能省。

【考题在线1】 Sally likes Wuhan very much. She thinks it is her second _____.
A. family　B. house　C. home　D. room

❹have fun 玩得高兴

eg: They always **have fun** in the park.
他们总是在公园里玩得很开心。

考向一: [重点] have fun 相当于 enjoy oneself/have a good time。
eg: We often **have fun** on Sundays.
= We often **enjoy ourselves** on Sundays.
= We often **have a good time** on Sundays.
周日,我们经常玩得很开心。

考向二: [重点] have fun 的用法:
(1) have fun 后要用 doing, have fun doing sth. 意为"做某事很开心"。
eg: We **have fun playing** games after class.
课后我们玩游戏玩得很开心。
(2) have fun with sb./sth. 意为"和某人/某物玩得很开心"。
eg: I always **have fun with** my dog.
我总是和我的狗玩得很开心。

【考题在线2】 —I'm going to Mary's birthday party. Bye, Mum.
—_____, David! (宜宾)
A. Best wishes　B. Have fun
C. Take care　D. No problem
点拨: 本题用交际法。句意:——妈妈再见,我要去参加玛丽的生日聚会。——希望你玩得开心,戴维!

❺centre/ˈsentə(r)/*n.* <英> 中心 = <美> center

eg: Beijing is the political, economic and cultural **centre** of China.
北京是中国的政治、经济和文化中心。

考向: 常用短语有:
in the centre of 在……的中心
the shopping centre 购物中心
[辨析] centre 与 middle

centre	centre 指表示立体事物的中心,多指物体的正中心,若要表示"在……的中心",其前介词可以用 in,也可用 at。	There is a big park in the **centre** of the city. 市中心有一个大公园。
middle	middle 指距离两端或两边距离相等的中央或中间部分,也用于时间或活动等。	He sits in the **middle** of the classroom. 他坐在教室的中间。

❻观察连词法: 此句是由 but 连接的并列句,but 意为"但是",表示前后为转折关系。我们在写作过程中常用一些并列连词,可使行文更加流畅。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑦like to do sth. 喜欢做某事

eg：I **like to have** a talk with you.
我喜欢和你谈话。

考向：[辨析] like doing (sth.)与like to do (sth.)

like doing (sth.)	“喜欢做(某事)”，可以表示习惯性的动作。	（自贡中考）I **like writing** very much. 我非常喜欢写作。
like to do (sth.)	“喜欢做(某事)”，可以表示一次性的动作。	He **likes to cook** in his house tonight. 今晚他喜欢在自己家做饭吃。

魔法记忆

一语辨异：I **like** swimming, but I **like to** play football today. 我喜欢游泳，但我今天喜欢踢足球。

⑧share /ʃeə(r)/ *vt.* 合用；分享

考向：及物动词share常用结构：share sth. with sb. 意为“与某人分享某物；与某人合用某物”。

eg：I want to **share** the big cake **with** you.
我想和你分享这个大蛋糕。

【考题在线3】—Do you have your own computer, Millie?
—No, I don't. I _____ one _____ my brother.
A. share; with　　B. share; to
C. use; for　　D. have; and
点拨：句意：——你自己有电脑吗，米莉？——不，我没有。我和我哥哥共用一台。

⑨bedroom /'bedru:m/ *n.* 卧室

eg：My house has three big **bedrooms**.
我家有三间大卧室。

考向：bedroom是由bed + room构成的合成词。此类合成词还有：blackboard 黑板，basketball 篮球，birthday 生日等。

拓展 各类“房间”小结：living room 客厅，起居室；dining room 餐厅；bathroom 浴室，盥洗室；study 书房；kitchen 厨房

⑩We often listen to music in bed.
我们经常躺在床上听音乐。

考向一：[辨析] listen to, listen, hear与sound

listen to	相当于及物动词，意为“听……”，表示专心致志地“听”，后面接“人”或“物”作宾语。	（淄博中考）I feel the best way to **listen to** music is live. 我感觉听音乐的最好方式就是看现场直播的。
listen	用作不及物动词，指“(注意地)听、倾听”，是有意识的动作。	**Listen**! Someone is singing. 听！有人在唱歌。
hear	表示“听到，听见”，通常表示某种声音进入我们的耳朵，但不一定指有意识地听，强调听的结果。	（内江中考）People shop slowly when they **hear** quiet music. 当人们听到轻音乐时，他们慢慢地购物。
sound	作系动词，意为“听起来”，常接形容词作表语。除形容词外，还可与介词like连用。	（泰安中考）Self-cleaning clothes may **sound** crazy. “自行洁净的衣服”听起来很疯狂。

考向二：[易错点] in bed 在床上

eg：He likes reading **in bed**. 他喜欢在床上看书。

[辨析] in bed, in the bed与on the bed

in bed	表示“在床上”，一般是躺着；还可用来表示“生病在床”。	He is ill **in bed**. 他生病在床。
in the bed	表示“在床里面”，即在被子里。	I'm so tired and want to sleep **in the bed** right now. 我太累了，真想马上躺在被子里睡觉。
on the bed	表示“在床上”，表示方位。	The book is **on the bed**. 书在床上。

【考题在线4】Ji Wei's mother was ill _____ for three days.
A. on the bed　　B. in bed
C. in the bed　　D. on bed
点拨：题意是“生病在床”。

⑪look out at 向外看

考向一：[易错点] look out为“动词 + 副词”结构，其后接宾语时要加介词，常与at, of连用。构成：look out at意为“向外看……”；look out of意为“从……往外看”。

考向二：[辨析] look out, look out at与look out of

look out	意为“当心，小心”，通常单独使用。	**Look out**! There's a car coming. 当心！有车来了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

look out at	意为“向外看……”，后接看的对象，强调向外面看什么。	I often **look out at** the street. 我经常向外看着街道。
look out of	意为“从……往外看”，指向某物的外面看，比如 window，door 等。	Don't **look out of** the window in class. 上课时不要往窗外看。

拓展 look 常见的相关短语：

- look 短语
  - look like 看起来像
  - look up 查阅，向上看
  - look after 照顾
  - look for 寻找

【考题在线 5】 Don't _____ the birds. Listen to the teacher carefully.

A. look back　　B. look out

C. look out of　　D. look out at

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意为：“不要向外看鸟，认真听老师讲课。”look back 回首；look out 向外看，其后接看的对象作宾语时，需要介词 at；look out of 从……往外看。

⑫观察连词法：此句前后两个 and 连接不同的并列成分。第一个 and 连接两个动词短语；第二个 and 连接两个名词。

考题在线答案

1. C　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 234 页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. Bill has his _____ (自己的) car and house.
2. The kind boy was happy to _____ (分享) his food with the hungry man. (广州改编)
3. There are a lot of beautiful _____ (海滩) in Hong Kong.
4. There are flowers of different colours in my grandma's _____ (花园).
5. Our school is in the c_____ of the city.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. I'm good at English and I like English _____ (well).
7. Children had fun _____ (play) in Disneyland on Children's Day. (龙东)
8. After class, they like _____ (watch) TV and chat there.
9. Anna is a _____ (Russia) girl.
10. Everyone in our family enjoys _____ (watch) this programme.

三、单项选择

11. Our teacher lives in a town 20 miles _____ the city.

A. away　B. in　C. from　D. for

12. I always have fun _____ my cat.

A. in　B. for　C. with　D. at

13. Don't look _____ the window. Look _____ the picture.

A. out of; /　B. out at; to

C. out of; at　D. out; at

14. Lucy and Lily are sitting in the _____ while their mother is cooking for them in the _____.

A. kitchen; garden

B. living room; kitchen

C. flat; balcony

D. sitting room; bathroom

15. A park is the best place _____ kites. I often go there at weekends.

A. flies　B. flying

C. fly　D. to fly

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 他在北京和自己的家人一起生活。

He lives with _____ _____ _____ in Beijing.

17. 他住在市中心，他的父母住在一个小镇上。

He lives _____ _____ _____ of the city and his parents live _____ _____ _____ _____.

18. 我喜欢和朋友在阳台上聊天。

I like _____ _____ friends _____ _____ _____.

19. 不要在床上看书，这对你的眼睛有害。

Don't read _____ _____; it's bad _____ _____ _____.

20. 米莉想和她的妹妹共用这个卧室。

Millie would like _____ _____ the bedroom _____ her sister.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Cardinal numbers

We use cardinal numbers almost every day. We use them to talk about the numbers of people or things.

0	1	2	3	4	5	6
zero	one	two	three	four	five	six
7	8	9	10	11	12	
seven	eight	nine	ten	eleven	twelve	
13		14		15		16
thirteen		fourteen		fifteen		sixteen
17		18		19		20
seventeen		eighteen		nineteen		twenty
30	40	50	60	70		80
thirty	forty	fifty	sixty	seventy		eighty
90		100		1,000		
ninety		one hundred		one **thousand**[1]		
10,000		100,000		1,000,000		
ten thousand		one hundred thousand		one million		

How do we say the following numbers?

4,056 = four thousand and fifty-six

23,813 = twenty-three thousand eight hundred and thirteen

567,110 = five hundred and sixty-seven thousand one hundred and ten

6,425,200 = six million four hundred and twenty-five thousand two hundred

TIP

When we say thirteen, we stress the second syllable. When we say thirty, we stress the first syllable.

Learning about different countries

Simon is collecting some information about different countries. Help him read the numbers correctly.

1 People from about 180 countries and areas live in New York.

2 The CN Tower is 1,815 **feet**[2] tall.

3 Red Square in Moscow is about 91,000 square metres in size.

4 France has an **area**[3] of **over**[4] 260,000 square miles.

5 There are about 8,000,000 people living in London.

6 Tokyo, the capital of Japan, has over 13,000,000 people.

B Ordinal numbers

We use ordinal numbers to order things and events. We use them to talk about dates, floors, positions, etc.

语法

A 基数词

我们几乎每天都使用基数词。我们使用它们来谈论人或事物的数量。

零 一 二 三 四 五 六

七 八 九 十 十一 十二

十三 十四 十五 十六

十七 十八 十九 二十

三十 四十 五十 六十 七十 八十

九十 一百 一千

一万 十万 一百万

我们如何说出下列数字？

四千零五十六

两万三千八百一十三

五十六万七千一百一十

六百四十二万五千二百

提示

当我们说“十三”的时候，我们重读第二个音节。当我们说“三十”的时候，我们重读第一个音节。

了解不同的国家

西蒙正在收集一些不同国家的信息。帮助他正确读出这些数字。

1 来自大约一百八十个国家和地区的人们住在纽约。

2 加拿大国家电视塔高一千八百一十五英尺。

3 莫斯科红场的大小约九万一千平方米。

4 法国面积有二十六万多平方英里。

5 有大约八百万人住在伦敦。

6 日本首都东京有一千三百多万人。

B 序数词

我们使用序数词来安排东西和事件。我们使用它们来谈论日期、楼层、位置等。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Women's Day is **on the eighth of March**[5].
Our flat is on the seventh floor.
He is always the first to come to school in our class.

妇女节是在三月八日。
我们的公寓在第七层。
他总是我们班第一个到学校的。

How do you write it?

你如何写它?

B1 **Millie is doing a test on numbers. Look at the numbers below and help her write the numbers out in words.**

B1 米莉正在做一个数字测试。看下列数字并帮助她用单词写出这些数字。

Cardinal numbers

1 = one	11 = eleven
2 =	12 =
3 =	13 =
4 = four	19 = nineteen
5 = five	20 =
6 =	21 = twenty-one
7 =	30 = thirty
8 =	40 =
9 = nine	100 =
10 =	101 =

Ordinal numbers

1st = first	11th = eleventh
2nd = second	12th = twelfth
3rd = third	19th =
4th = fourth	20th = twentieth
5th = fifth	21st = twenty-first
6th =	22nd =
7th =	23rd =
8th =	30th =
9th = ninth	40th = fortieth
10th =	100th =

基数词

一	十一
二	十二
三	十三
四	十九
五	二十
六	二十一
七	三十
八	四十
九	一百
十	一百零一

序数词

第一	第十一
第二	第十二
第三	第十九
第四	第二十
第五	第二十一
第六	第二十二
第七	第二十三
第八	第三十
第九	第四十
第十	第一百

B2 **Simon wants to tell his classmates where his friends live. Look at the building. Complete the sentences with the correct floor numbers.**

1 Elsa lives on the _____ floor.
2 Ivan lives on the _____ floor.
3 Mary lives on the _____ floor.
4 Peter lives on the _____ floor.
5 Ricky lives on the _____ floor.
6 Wilson lives on the _____ floor.

Ivan Wilson Ricky Elsa
Mary Peter

B2 西蒙想告诉他的同班同学他的朋友们住哪儿。看这座建筑物。用正确的楼层号码完成句子。

1 埃尔莎住在_____楼。
2 伊凡住在_____楼。
3 玛丽住在_____楼。
4 彼得住在_____楼。
5 里基住在_____楼。
6 威尔逊住在_____楼。

伊凡 威尔逊 里基 埃尔莎
玛丽 彼得

TIP

In British English, the floor of a building at street level is the ground floor(G).

提示

在英式英语中，一栋建筑物的地面的那层称作 the ground floor。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶thousand /ˈθaʊznd/ *num.* 千

考向一：thousand 前有具体数字时，其后不能加-s。hundred（百），million（百万），billion（十亿）用法与 thousand 相同。

eg：There are about two **thousand** students in the school. 这所学校大约有两千名学生。

考向二：thousand 与 of 连用时，应用其复数形式，其前不用数词，表示不确定的数目。thousands of 数以千计的。类似用法有：hundreds of 数以百计的；billions of 数以十亿计的。

eg：**Thousands of** visitors come to our town every year. 每年成千上万的游客来到我们镇上。

特色土方法

巧记hundred，thousand，million 的用法：

具体数字两无（无 s，无 of）；

模糊数字两有（有 s，有 of）。

【考题在线 1】 _____ people visited Hongyadong, Chongqing on May Day this year. （重庆 B）

A. Thousand　　B. Thousands

C. Thousand of　　D. Thousands of

点拨：句意：今年五一成千上万人参观了重庆洪崖洞。根据语境可知，本句中数词表示概数。“Thousands of”是一个固定搭配，表示概数，意指“成千上万”。

❷foot /fʊt/ *n.* 英尺，脚；其复数形式为 feet。

eg：The building is 500 **feet** tall.

那幢楼高 500 英尺。

（宁波中考）A bee lands on your **foot**.

一只蜜蜂落在了你的脚上。

考向一：表示“高……英尺”用“基数词 + foot/feet + tall”结构。

eg：This tree is five feet tall. 那棵树高 5 英尺。

拓展 长、宽、高的表达法：

- 长、宽、高的表达法
  - 数词 + 表示计量单位的名词 + 形容词
    - 20 metres long 20 米长
    - 30 metres wide 30 米宽
    - 40 metres high 40 米高
  - 复合形容词
    - 20-metre-long 20 米长的
    - 30-metre-wide 30 米宽的
    - 40-metre-high 40 米高的

【考题在线 2】 —How far is it from Tianjin to Changsha?

—It is a _____ flight（航行）from Tianjin to Changsha. （呼和浩特）

A. 2-hour-long　　B. 2-hours-long

C. 2 hours' long　　D. 2 hour long

考向二：foot 意为“脚”，其复数形式也是 feet。常用短语 on foot 步行，at the foot of … 在……脚下

❸area /ˈeəriə/ *n.* 地区，区域，面积

考向：area 是可数名词，复数形式为 areas。常用搭配有：have an area of 面积为……；in poor areas 在贫困地区

eg：China **has an area of** about 9,600,000 square kilometers.

中国的面积约为 960 万平方公里。

We should help people **in poor areas**.

我们应该帮助贫困地区的人们。

❹over /ˈəʊvə(r)/ *prep.* 超过

考向一：（表示等级或数目）高于；在……之上，超过。

eg：He is **over** forty. 他四十多岁了。

考向二：（表示位置）在……的正上方；在……的上面；在……的上空。

eg：There is a lamp **over** the table.

桌子正上方有一盏灯。

考向三：（表示方向）越过，从一边至……的另一边。

eg：Instead of opening the gate, we climbed **over** it.

我们没有开大门，而是从门上爬过去的。

拓展 over 用作副词，意为“结束”。

【考题在线 3】 她卧室的面积超过 15 平方米。

Her bedroom has _____ _____ _____ _____ 15 square meters.

❺on the eighth of March 在 3 月 8 日

考向：on 常与“日期、星期”搭配或与表示具体某一天的上午、下午或晚上的词汇搭配。

如：日期 on October 1st　星期 on Monday

节假日 on weekends；on New Year's Day

具体某一天的某时段 on Friday evening

【考题在线 4】 I'd like to hold our next meeting _____ June 23rd. Is that OK for you? （威海）

A. in　　B. at　　C. on

考题在线答案

1. D　2. A　3. an area of over　4. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

(一)基数词

基数词的概念:数词中表示数目或数量多少的词叫基数词。

考点1:[难点]基数词的构成

考向:(1)1~12为独立的单词

one	two	three	four	five	six
seven	eight	nine	ten	eleven	twelve

(2)13~19都以-teen结尾

thirteen	fourteen	fifteen	sixteen
seventeen	eighteen	nineteen	

(3)20~90之间的"整十"都以-ty结尾

twenty	thirty	forty	fifty
sixty	seventy	eighty	ninety

(4)十位数与个位数之间要加连字符"-"。

eg:28 twenty-eight 96 ninety-six

(5)101—999先说"几百",再加and,再加末尾两位数或末位数。

eg:928 nine hundred and twenty-eight

(6)1000以上的数,从后往前每三位加一个逗号,第一个逗号在的位置为thousand,第二个逗号在的位置为million,以此类推。

eg:8,542,601 eight million five hundred and forty-two thousand six hundred and one

魔法记忆

基数词的记忆歌诀:

1至12逐个记,13至19 teen结尾,
20至90整十位,ty结尾是后缀,
要表示"几十几",连字符十位连个位,
若要表示"几百几",hundred之后and立。

考点2:[重点]基数词的用法

考向一:一般用法

(1)用于名词前表示数量的多少。

eg:I have five friends.
我有五个朋友。

(2)表示年龄。

eg: The girl is twelve.
这个女孩十二岁。

【注意】表示人的不确切岁数时,用几十的复数形式。

eg: He was a singer in his thirties.
他三十多岁时是一个歌手。

【考题在线1】 Tony's mum looks young and beautiful. It's hard to imagine(想象)she is already in her _____. (苏州)

A. fifties B. fifty
C. fiftieths D. fiftieth

点拨:本题用**语境判断法**。根据句意可知,很难想象她已经五十多岁了。"in one's +整十数词的复数形式"表示"在某人……多岁时"。

(3)表示价格。

eg: The bike is two hundred and ninety *yuan*.
这辆自行车二百九十元。

(4)表示时间(几点几分)。

eg:10:55 ten fifty-five或five to eleven
十点五十五分

(5)表示时间(年代)。

eg:1949读作:nineteen hundred and forty-nine或nineteen forty-nine(最常见的说法)
in the early/late 1950s
在20世纪50年代初/末

(6)表示顺序和编号,放在"房间"、"页"等名词后面。

eg: Room 405读作:room four o[əʊ] five
405房间

【考题在线2】 Last week, five _____ students took part in the sports meeting in our school. (凉山)

A. hundred B. thousands
C. hundreds of D. thousands of

点拨:句意:上周,我们学校的五百名学生参加了运动会。hundred或thousand有基数词修饰时即表示确切数字时,后面不加-s。

考向二:特殊用法

具体数字和模糊数字的表达见本书Unit 1 Period 3知识点1。

考向三:句法功能:基数词可在句中作主语、宾语、定语、表语和同位语等。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

eg:Two and two make four.
二加二等于四。(Two and two 作主语)
I'd like five.
我想要五个。(作宾语)
There are twenty boys in our class.
我们班有二十个男生。(作定语)
His grandpa is seventy.
他爷爷七十岁了。(作表语)
They three were late for class.
他们三个人上课迟到了。(作同位语)

(二)序数词



序数词的概念:表示数目顺序的词叫序数词。

考点1:[难点]序数词的构成

考向:

范围	特点	例词
1~3	特殊记	first,second,third
4~19	在大多数基数词末尾直接加-th	fourth, seventeenth
	八去t,九减e,f来把ve替	eighth,ninth, fifth,twelfth
20~90之间的整十数	把基数词后面的y变为i再加-eth	twentieth, ninetieth
20以上的非整十数	个位数用序数词,其余用基数词	twenty-first, one hundred and sixty-eighth

魔法记忆

100以内的基数词变序数词

基变序,有规律,一、二、三特殊记,结尾各是t,d,d,八去t,九减e,f来把ve替,整十变y为ie,词尾再加th。若是见到几十几,只变个位就可以,排列顺序不费力,连字符莫丢弃,巧学妙记加努力,hundred是你的好成绩!

【考题在线3】 This Saturday is my _____ birthday. Welcome to my party! (重庆B)
A. fourteenth　　B. the fourteenth
C. fourteen　　D. the fourteen

点拨:本题用语法判定法。生日前应该使用序数词形式,故排除选项C、D;在本空前有物主代词my,不加定冠词the。

考点2:[易错点]序数词的用法

考向一:一般用法

(1)表示顺序。
eg:January is the first month of the year.
一月是一年中的第一个月。

(2)表示日期。
eg:Today is the fifth of March.
今天是3月5日。

【考题在线4】 World Environment Day is on the _____(five) of June. (盐城)
点拨:on the fifth of June 在六月五日。

(3)表示编号。
eg:Daniel sits in the third row.
丹尼尔坐在第三排。

(4)表示第几层楼。
eg:He lives on the sixth floor.
他住在六楼。

考向二:特殊用法

(1)序数词前用不定冠词a或an时,表示"再,又"。
eg:You'll have to do it a second time.
你得再做一次。

(2)序数词起副词作用,这时前面不加"the"。
eg:Simon always comes first in the English exams. 西蒙总是在英语考试中得第一名。

【注意】序数词的前面一般要加定冠词the。但当序数词前有形容词性物主代词或名词所有格修饰时,不用定冠词the。
eg:Simon is his third child.
西蒙是他的第三个孩子。

考向三:句法功能:
序数词在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、定语和同位语等。

【考题在线5】 Liu Yang became the _____(one) Chinese woman in space on June 16, 2012. (临沂)

考题在线答案
1.A　2.A　3.A　4.fifth　5.first

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见234页)

一、根据句意及提示完成句子

1. There are about two _____ (千) students in our school. (贺州)
2. You can wear shoes in your father's _____ (号; 尺码).
3. Our school is big. It has an _____ (面积) of 1,000 square metres.
4. The street is about 1,000 _____ (米) long.
5. Look! The hill next to the sea is about 800 _____ (foot) high, I guess.

二、单项选择

6. Most of the villagers took part in the Dragon Boat races _____ 9:00 a. m. _____ the morning of June 18. (乌鲁木齐)
   A. at; in B. at; on C. on; in D. on; on
7. —More than 400 street gardens will be built in Shenzhen.
   —Good news! Our city becomes more and more beautiful. (深圳)
   A. Over B. Around
   C. Nearly D. Almost
8. My daughter is _____ years old. Today is her _____ birthday. (邵阳)
   A. nine; nineth B. nine; ninth
   C. ninth; nine D. ninth; ninth
9. China has _____ area of about 9,600,000 square kilometres.
   A. a B. an C. the D. /
10. The number "23, 456" can be read as "_____". (白银)
    A. twenty-three thousand, four hundred and fifty-six
    B. twenty-three thousand and four hundred fifty-six
    C. two three thousand and four five six
    D. two three thousand four and five six

三、语法专练

(A)根据句意及所给提示完成句子

11. Thursday is the f_____ day of a week. (阜康)
12. Today is the little boy's n_____ birthday. His mother made him a big cake. (贵港改编)
13. Jane would like to live on the _____ (第十二) floor. (广安)
14. My family has three children and I am the t_____ child of my family.
15. On the _____ (三十) of July, Mother often buys me a big birthday cake.

(B)单项选择

16. Please write down the new words in the text of _____.
    A. Lesson Eleven B. the Lesson Eleven
    C. Lesson Eleventh D. Eleventh Lesson
17. —How long is the new bridge? Do you know?
    —Yes. It's about _____.
    A. one thousand one hundred and eighty metres
    B. one thousand one hundred fifty metres
    C. two thousands one hundred forty metres
    D. two thousands seventy and three metres
18. In our hometown, _____ villagers leave for big cities to look for jobs. (曲靖)
    A. two hundreds of B. hundred of
    C. hundreds of D. two hundreds
19. Unit _____ is easy but _____ unit is difficult. (梅州)
    A. Sixth; seven B. Six; seven
    C. Sixth; the seventh D. Six; the seventh
20. This tall building has _____ floors. And Tony lives on the _____ floor.
    A. twelve; twelve B. twelfth; twelfth
    C. twelfth; twelve D. twelve; twelfth
21. —Where is Class _____?
    —It's on the _____ floor. (河池)
    A. Ninth; second B. Ninth; two
    C. Nine; second D. Nine; two
22. —How many friends will come to celebrate your _____ birthday?
    —About _____.
    A. fifteen; fifteen B. fifteenth; fifteenth
    C. fifteen; fifteenth D. fifteenth; fifteen
23. It's never too old to learn. Karl Marx began to learn English in his _____. (广东)
    A. the fiftieth B. fiftieth
    C. fifty D. fifties
24. —Can you write the number "eighty-five thousand six hundred and twenty-six"?
    —Yes, it is _____.
    A. 856,620 B. 85,626
    C. 58,662 D. 58,626

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A My home in the UK

课文听力A1 音频及材料

A1 Neil made a video of his house in the UK. He sent it to Simon. First, write the name of the place under each picture. Then listen to Neil and put the pictures in the correct order. Write the numbers 1 – 6 in the boxes.

课文听力A2 音频及材料

A2 Listen to Neil telling more about his house. Help Simon label the things in Part A1 with the words in the box.

flowers forks fridge **knives**[1]
lamp picture **shower**[2] sofa
toilet TV

A3 Help Simon complete his email to Neil with the correct words in the box.

beautiful	bedroom	garden
house	living room	rooms

Dear Neil,

Thanks for your video.[3]

Your (1) _____ **is** really **different from**[4] the flats here in our town. Your (2) _____ **is full of**[5] flowers. It looks (3) _____. I also like your (4) _____. It looks big and comfortable. There are many (5) _____ in your house, and you have your own (6) _____. It is really nice. I also have **a bedroom of my own**[6], but it is not big.

I hope to visit your home some day.[7]

All the best,

Simon

B Speak up: May I speak to Daniel, please?

Simon wants to speak to Daniel, but Daniel is not at home. His father answers the phone. Work in pairs to make a phone call. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Daniel's father: Hello?

Simon: Hello. **May I speak to Daniel, please?**[8]

Daniel's father: Sorry, he's not at home. Who's speaking, please?

Simon: This is Simon. I'm calling from my new home.

Daniel's father: New home? That's great! Can I take a **message**[9]?

综合技能

A 我在英国的家

A1 尼尔制作了一盘他在英国的家的录像。他把它寄给了西蒙。首先，在每张图片下方写上那个地点的名字。然后，听尼尔说并把图片按正确的顺序排列。在方框中写上数字 1 – 6。

A2 听尼尔讲更多有关他的房子的情况。帮助西蒙用方框中的单词将 A1 部分的物品标注出来。

花 叉子 冰箱 刀子 台灯
画 淋浴器 沙发 厕所 电视

A3 帮助西蒙用方框中正确的单词完成他给尼尔的电子邮件。

漂亮的	卧室	花园
房子	客厅	房间

亲爱的尼尔：

谢谢你的录像。

你的（1）_____确实与我们这儿镇上的公寓不同。你的（2）_____长满了花儿。它看起来（3）_____。我也喜欢你的（4）_____。它看起来大并且舒服。你的房子里有许多（5）_____，并且你有你自己的（6）_____。它真的很漂亮。我也有我自己的卧室，但是它不大。

我希望有一天能去你家拜访。

祝一切顺利，

西蒙

B 大声说：请问我可以和丹尼尔通电话吗？

西蒙想和丹尼尔通电话，但是丹尼尔不在家。他的父亲接了电话。结对打电话。用下面的对话作为示例。

丹尼尔的父亲：你好！

西蒙：你好。请问我可以和丹尼尔通电话吗？

丹尼尔的父亲：对不起，他不在家。请问你是谁？

西蒙：我是西蒙。我从我的新家打的电话。

丹尼尔的父亲：新家？好极了！要我捎个口信吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Simon: Yes, please. Can you **ask him to call me back**[10]? My new telephone number is 5557 2188.

Daniel's father: Five, five, five, seven, two, one, double eight, right?

Simon: Right. Thanks. Goodbye.

西蒙：是的，可以。 您能让他给我回个电话吗？ 我的新电话号码是 5557 2188。

丹尼尔的父亲：5557 2188，对吗？

西蒙：对。 谢谢。 再见。

Study skills

学习技能

Stress in a word

When we pronounce words with more than one syllable, we stress one of the syllables. The stressed syllable sounds stronger. The stress can be on the first, middle or last syllable of a word.

单词重音

当我们读有多于一个音节的单词时，我们要重读其中一个音节。 重读音节听起来读得更重。 重音可能在单词的第一个、中间的或最后一个音节上。

A Listen and practise saying these words.

课文朗读A

Stressing the first syllable

1 **beau** · ti · ful

2 **coun** · try

3 **pal** · ace

Stressing the second syllable

1 ex · **pen** · sive

2 po · **ta** · to

3 to · **mor** · row

Stressing the last syllable

1 be · **tween**

2 en · **joy**

3 Hal · low · **een**

A 听并练习说这些单词。

重读第一个音节

1 漂亮的

2 国家

3 宫殿

重读第二个音节

1 昂贵的

2 马铃薯

3 明天

重读最后一个音节

1 在……之间

2 享受

3 万圣节前夕

B Listen and underline the stressed syllable of each word.

课文朗读B

1 cen · tre

2 bath · room

3 hun · dred

4 Oc · to · ber

5 mes · sage

6 in · clude

7 fa · vour · ite

8 won · der · ful

9 de · sign

B 听并在每个单词的重读音节下画线。

1 中心

2 浴室

3 百

4 十月

5 信息

6 包括

7 最喜爱的

8 精彩的

9 设计

C Work in pairs. Take turns to read the words in Part B aloud. The stressed syllable of each word should sound stronger than the other syllable(s).

C 结对练习。 轮流大声读 B 部分的单词。每个单词的重读音节应该比其他音节听起来读得重些。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶knife /naɪf/ *n.* 刀子

考向：[重点]knife 属于以-fe 结尾的词，它的复数形式是变 fe 为 v，再加-es，即 knives。

【考题在线 1】There are two _____(刀) and three forks on the table.

点拨："刀"的英文为 knife，其复数形式为 knives。

拓展 以-f(e)结尾的词，复数形式以-ves 结尾的名词小结：

wife—wives(妻子)，knife—knives(刀)，wolf—wolves(狼)，shelf—shelves(架子)，thief—thieves(小偷)，leaf—leaves(叶子)

魔法记忆

以-f(e)结尾名词变复数总结：

"妻子"拿"刀"去杀"狼"，"架"后"小偷"用"叶"挡。

❷shower/ˈʃaʊə(r)/ *n.* 淋浴器；淋浴间；淋浴

eg：I'm in the **shower**. 我在淋浴间冲澡。

Do you prefer to have a bath or a **shower**? 你喜欢洗盆浴还是淋浴？

考向一：名词 shower 的常用短语有：take a shower = have a shower"洗淋浴"。

eg：Would you like to **have/take a shower**? 你想洗淋浴吗？

考向二：英语中有不少类似 shower 这样的搭配。

eg：take a rest = have a rest 休息一下

walk = take a walk = have a walk 散步

look = take a look = have a look 看

bath = take a bath = have a bath 洗澡

❸Thanks for ...谢谢……

考向一：thanks for = thank sb. for

eg：**Thanks for** teaching us English so well.

= **Thank you for** teaching us English so well.

谢谢你教我们英语教得这么好。

[辨析]thanks for 与 thanks to

thanks for (=thank sb. for)	为……而感谢某人	**Thanks for** your help. (=Thank you for your help.)谢谢你的帮助。
thanks to (=because of)	幸亏；由于	**Thanks to** your help, I found my dog. 多亏你的帮忙，我找到了我的狗。

【注意】for 和 to 皆为介词，其后跟名词、动名词或代词宾格。

考向二：对别人致谢的其他常用表达：

Thanks./Thanks a lot./Many thanks. 感谢。/非常感谢。

It's very kind of you. 你真是太好了。

Thank you all the same. 仍然感谢你。

考向三：对别人致谢的常用答语：

Not at all.
That's all right.
You are welcome.
It's a pleasure./My pleasure.
Don't mention it.
} 不客气。

【考题在线 2】根据汉语，完成句子

(1)谢谢你的信。

_____ _____your letter.

(2)多亏了微信，我们可以和朋友更好地交流。

_____ _____ WeChat, we can communicate better with our friends.

学会感恩

感恩是爱和善的基础。在家中，当你吃着可口的饭菜，你是否感激父母付出的辛勤劳动？在学校里，面对老师们的辛勤劳动，你是否知道感恩？

感恩是一种处世哲学（philosophy），是一种生活智慧（wisdom）。感恩斥责你的人，因为他们让你学会了思考；感恩遗弃你的人，因为他们教会了你独立；感恩欺骗你的人，因为他们增长了你的阅历；感恩伤害你的人，因为他们磨砺了你的心志。

感恩是学会做人，成就阳光人生的支点。常怀感恩之心，可以让我们活得更加美丽，更加充实。让我们一起学会感恩，收获别样的人生！

【素养行动】为父母或者长辈做点事情，倒杯水，冲杯牛奶，洗件衣服，帮忙做点家务等，都可以温暖他们的心，拉近家人之间的距离（distance）。

【素养行动结果】懂得付出，学会感恩。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

❹be different from 与……不同

eg: My house **is different from** hers.
我的房子与她的不一样。

考向一：短语 be different from 常用于双方的比较，但要注意此词组前后比较的对象性质要一致。

eg: The weather in our hometown **is different from** that in your hometown.
我们家乡的天气与你们家乡的天气不一样。

考向二：be different from 的反义词组是 be the same as，意为“与……一样”，其中定冠词 the 不可以省略。

eg: My trousers **are different from** yours. = My trousers **are not the same as** yours.
我的裤子与你的不一样。

拓展 difference，名词，意为“不同点，不同之处。”

【考题在线 3】 Many teenagers don't like to talk with their parents. But I am _____ them. I love to share my joy and sorrow with my parents. （烟台）
A. the same as　　B. different from
C. interested in　　D. angry with
点拨：本题用**短语辨析法**。be the same as 和……相同；be different from 和……不同；be interested in 对……感兴趣；be angry with 对……生气。句意：很多青少年不喜欢和他们的父母亲交谈，但我和他们不同，我喜欢和我的父母分享我的喜悦和悲伤。

❺be full of 充满

考向：be full of 的同义短语为：be filled with。

[辨析] full 与 fill

full	形容词“满的”	be full of 充满……
fill	及物动词“装满”	fill …with“将……装满”be filled with“被装满……”

eg: （滨州中考）The husband's eyes **were full of** tears.
丈夫的眼里充满了泪水。
He is **filling** the glass **with** water.
他正给玻璃杯盛满水。
The basket **is filled with** apples by the old man.
篮子被这个老人装满了苹果。

【考题在线 4】 If you read a lot, your life will be full _____ pleasure. （莱芜）
A. by　　B. of
C. for　　D. with
点拨：考查固定短语。句意：如果你阅读很多，你的生活将会充满乐趣。固定短语 be full of = be filled with 充满。

❻a bedroom of my own 属于我自己的卧室

考向：[重点] of one's own 表示“属于某人自己的”，句中 a bedroom of my own 相当于 my own bedroom，但前者的 own 是一个代词，后者中的 own 是一个形容词。

eg: Do you have a car **of your own**? = Do you have **your own** car?
你有自己的汽车吗？

[辨析] of one's own 与 on one's own

of one's own	“属于某人自己的”，在句中一般用作定语。	I have a bike **of my own**. 我有一辆属于我自己的自行车。
on one's own	“单独地，独自”，在句中一般用作状语。	Lily goes to school by bus **on her own** every day. 莉莉每天独自坐公共汽车去上学。

【考题在线 5】 Do you have a study of _____ (you) own?
点拨：固定短语，of your own 属于你自己的。

拓展 (1) own *vt.* 拥有，所有

eg: Which of these would you like to **own**?
这些东西中你想拥有哪一件？

(2) owner 可数名词，意为“物主，所有人，主人”

eg: The **owner** of the house is Mr Green.
这个房子的主人是格林先生。

魔法记忆

一语辨异：I **own** a new computer. I'm the **owner** of the computer. Do you have a computer of your **own**? 我有一台新电脑，我就是这台电脑的主人，你有自己的电脑吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑦I hope to visit your home some day.
我希望有一天能去你家拜访。

考向一：hope 的常见用法：

hope to do sth. 希望做某事	We **hope to see** you again. 我们希望再次见到你。
hope + (that) 从句，表示可以实现的愿望	I **hope** he can do that. 我希望他能做那件事。
hope so 希望如此； hope not 希望不如此	—You will pass this exam. —I **hope so**. ——你会通过这次考试的。 ——我希望如此。

【注意】hope sb. to do sth. 此搭配不成立。

考向二：[辨析] some day 与 one day

one day	可指过去或将来，即可用于过去时态或将来时态。	**One day** the temperature was 30℃. 有一天温度达到 30 摄氏度。
some day	只指将来，即只用于将来时态。	We're all going to be old **some day**. 总有一天我们都会老的。

⑧May I speak to ..., please?
请问，我可以和……通电话吗？

考向：May/Can/Could I speak to ..., please? 是英语中打电话时常用的开场白，其常用答语有：

Certainly. / Sure. / Of course. 当然可以。
Speaking. /This is ...speaking. 请讲。
Wait a minute, please. 请稍等。
I'm afraid he isn't here now.
恐怕他这会儿不在这里。

拓展 常用电话用语

①This is ...(speaking). 表示“我是……”。电话用语不用 I，而用 this/ it 来表示“我”。

eg: This is Simon (speaking). =
It is Simon here. =
Simon is here.
我是西蒙。

②电话里询问对方是谁，用“Who's calling?”或“Who's that (speaking)?”。切记不能用“Who are you?”。“Is that ...(speaking)?”表示“你是……吗?”

eg: —This is Tom. Who's that?
我是汤姆。你是哪位？
—It's Jack here.
我是杰克。

③请对方别挂电话或稍等，用“Hold on, please.”或“Hold on for a moment.”。若要表达某人不在，应该用“Sorry, ...is not in.”。

eg: —Hello! May I speak to Mr Smith?
你好！我可以同史密斯先生通电话吗？
—Hold on, please. 请稍等。

【考题在线 6】—Who is that speaking?
—_____ Mike speaking. （眉山）
A. I'm
B. My name is
C. That is
D. This is

点拨：本题用交际法。在电话用语中，表示“我是……”应用“This is...(speaking).”。

【考题在线 7】—May I speak to Mary, please?
—_____. （黔西南）
A. Yes, you are right
B. Speaking
C. Thank you
D. She is fine

点拨：本题用交际法。在电话中介绍自己就是对方要找的人，常用“This is ...speaking.”或“Speaking.”。

⑨message /ˈmesɪdʒ/ ***n.*** **消息；音信**

考向：message 为可数名词，复数形式为 messages。

含有 message 的固定搭配：
- take a message for sb. 为某人捎个口信
- give sb. a message 把口信捎给某人
- leave a message 留个口信

【考题在线 8】When Peter comes, please ask him to leave a(n) _____. （呼和浩特）
A. notice　　B. message
C. sentence　　D. information

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。notice 通知；message 消息，口信；sentence 句子；information 信息，是不可数名词。句意：彼得来的时候，请叫他留个口信。

⑩ask him to call me back 让他给我回电话

考向一：ask sb. (not) to do sth. 意为“叫/让某人(别)做某事”。

eg: Our teacher **asks us not to play** in the classroom.
我们的老师叫我们别在教室里玩。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

拓展 类似的短语有：
tell sb. (not) to do sth.
告诉某人(别)做某事；
want sb. (not) to do sth.
想要某人(别)做某事

【考题在线 9】It was raining. My father asked me _____ a raincoat. (重庆A)
A. take B. takes
C. took D. to take
点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：下雨了，爸爸让我带上雨衣。ask sb. to do sth. "要求某人做某事"，其中的动词不定式作宾语补足语。

考向二：call sb. back 意为"回电话"，call back 是"动词＋副词"构成的动词短语，当名词作其宾语时，既可以放在 call 和 back 之间，也可放在 back 之后；当代词作其宾语时，则必须放在 call 和 back 之间。

eg：Please **call back** your mother.
请给你妈妈回电话。
Don't forget to **call** her **back**.
别忘记给她回电话。

【考题在线 10】—Is that Jack speaking?
—Sorry, he isn't here now. I'll tell him to _____ you _____ later.
A. call; on B. calling; at
C. call; back D. calling; back
点拨：本题用固定短语法。tell sb. to do sth. 让某人做某事；call sb. back 给某人回电话。

考题在线答案
1. knives 2. (1) Thanks for (2) Thanks to 3. B 4. B 5. your 6. D 7. B 8. B 9. D 10. C

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见234页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. There are three _____ (knife) in my kitchen.
2. Thank you for _____ (bring) me the book.
3. Can you ask him _____ (come) tomorrow?
4. My flat is _____ (real) different from yours.
5. We hope _____ (visit) your new home soon.

二、单项选择

6. —Hello, is that Molly speaking?
—_____ (云南)
A. You're welcome.
B. Speaking, please.
C. This way, please.
D. Glad to hear that.

7. —Listen! It's raining heavily outside.
—Wow! Look! The yard is _____ rainwater now!
A. fill with B. full of
C. fill of D. full with

8. The old man often feels unhappy because he has no child _____ .
A. on his own
B. of his own
C. by his own
D. from his own

9. I like singing very much. I hope I can sing in *Voice of China* _____ .
A. some day B. any day
C. some days D. any days

10. My parents ask me _____ computer games.
A. not playing
B. not to play
C. not play
D. to not play

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 我明天上午9:00给你回电话。
I will _____ you _____ at 9:00 am tomorrow.

12. 孩子们有他们自己最喜欢的游戏。
Children have _____ _____ _____ games.

13. 我可以捎个口信吗？
Can I _____ _____ _____?

14. 我每天晚上洗淋浴。
I _____ _____ _____ every evening.

15. 我奶奶的花园里全是花，看上去很美。
My grandma's garden _____ _____ _____ flowers and it _____ _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

My dream home

A Complete the questionnaire below with your own information.

Homes in different countries

Last name: _____ First name: _____

Age: _____ Telephone number: _____

What kind of home do you live in? Put a tick(√) in the box.

House ☐ How many floors are there in your house? _____

Flat ☐ How many floors are there in your building? _____

Do you have a garden? _____

How many rooms are there in your home? _____

How many people live in your home? _____

Who are they? _____

Put a tick(√) in the box next to the things you have in your home.

balcony ☐ computer ☐ fridge ☐

living room ☐ shower ☐ sofa ☐

study ☐ toilet ☐ washing machine ☐

Useful expressions

There is a/an ...**in front of**[1]/behind / beside ....

It has ...floors.

There is/are ...on the ground/second floor.

There is/are always enough ...there.

I would like to invite my friends to ....

My friends like to ....

It is great fun!

B Read Simon's article about his dream home.

课文朗读B

My dream home

My dream home is **at the foot of a hill**[2]. It has three floors. There is a football field behind my house and a swimming pool **beside**[3] it.

There is a kitchen and a home cinema on the ground floor. The kitchen is very clean. There is always more than enough food there. The cinema has a large TV. I would like to **invite**[4] my friends to watch films with me at the weekend.

任务

我梦想的家园

A 用你自己的信息完成下面的问卷。

不同国家的家园

姓: _____ 名: _____

年龄: _____ 电话号码: _____

你住在哪种类型的家里？在方框里用“√”标出来。

房子☐ 你的房子有多少层？_____

公寓☐ 你的楼房有多少层？_____

你有一个花园吗？_____

你家有多少个房间？_____

你家有几口人？_____

他们是谁？_____

在你家有的东西的旁边的方框中打“√”。

阳台☐ 电脑☐ 冰箱☐

起居室☐ 淋浴器☐ 沙发☐

书房☐ 厕所☐ 洗衣机☐

有用的表达

……的前面/后面/旁边有一个……

它有……层。

一楼/二楼有……

那儿总是有足够的……

我想邀请我的朋友们去……

我的朋友们喜欢……

它真有趣！

B 读西蒙的关于他梦想的家的文章。

我梦想的家

我梦想的家在小山脚下。它有三层。我的房子后面有一个足球场，旁边有一个游泳池。

一楼有一个厨房和一个家庭影院。厨房非常干净。那儿总有很多很多的食物。影院有一个大的电视机。周末我想邀请我的朋友们和我一起看电影。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

On the first floor, there are six bedrooms. Each room has a new computer and all the beds are comfortable. My friends like to come and stay here.
There are two large rooms on the second floor. My friends and I **have parties**[5] there. It is great fun!

在二楼有六个卧室。每个卧室有一台新的电脑并且所有的床都很舒服。我的朋友们喜欢来并且呆在这儿。
三楼有两个大房间。我和我的朋友们在那儿举行聚会。非常有意思!

C Write an article about your dream home. Use Simon's article as a model.

C 写一篇有关你的梦想的家的文章。用西蒙的文章做示例。

Self-assessment

自我评估

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about the three homes in different countries.		
2 use the new words to talk about my (dream) home.		
3 use cardinal numbers and ordinal numbers to talk about people and things.		
4 stress the right syllable of each word.		

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论不同国家的三个家。		
2 用生词谈论我(梦想)的家。		
3 用基数词和序数词来谈论人和事物。		
4 正确地读出每个单词的重读音节。		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

结果: 极好! 好! 一般!
我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶in front of 在……前面

考向:[辨析] in front of 与 in the front of



in front of	"在……前面",反义词是behind。	指某物在另一个物体外部的前面,两者是相离关系。
in the front of	"在……前部",反义词组是at the back of。	指某物在另一个物体内部靠前的部分,两者是包含关系。

魔法记忆

一语辨异: I am sitting **in the front of** the cinema but then someone sits **in front of** me, so I can't see anything. 我正坐在电影院的前部,但之后有人坐在我的前面,所以我什么也看不见。

【考题在线1】 —Why are you unhappy these days, Julie?
—I can't see the blackboard because two tall boys sit _____ me. (丹东)
A. behind B. next to
C. in front of D. between

点拨: 本题用语境判断法。句意:——朱莉,你这些天为什么不开心?——因为两个高个男孩儿坐在我_____,我看不到黑板。behind在……后面;next to在……旁边;in front of在……前面;between在……中间。由语境及常识可知,我看不到黑板是因为被前面的人挡住了。

❷at the foot of a hill 在山脚下

考向:at the foot of 意为"在……脚下;在……的底部",此处foot意为"底部,下端"。

eg: He walked to the **foot** of the stairs.
他走向楼梯底部。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展 类似的描述方位的短语还有：
at the top of 在……顶部
in the middle of 在……中间
at the bottom of 在……底部

【考题在线 2】 黄山脚下有许多高大的树。
There are a lot of tall trees _____ _____ _____ _____ Mount Huang.
点拨：根据中文提示可知，表示“在……脚下”用固定短语 at the foot of。

③beside/bɪˈsaɪd/ *prep.* 在……旁边

考向：beside 介词，在……旁边，其近义词为 next to

eg：I sit **beside** Meimei. 我坐在梅梅旁边。

[辨析] beside 与 besides

beside	方位介词，意为“在……旁边”	Put it **beside** the table. 把它放在桌子旁。
besides	介词，意为“除……之外（还有）”	He can speak English **besides** Chinese. 除了汉语外，他还会说英语。

【考题在线 3】 In the picture, the chair is _____ the table. （南京）



A. under　　B. on
C. above　　D. beside

点拨：本题用**词义辨析法**。under 在……下面；on 在……上面；above 在……之上；beside 在……旁边。句意：在这幅画里，椅子在桌子旁边。

④invite /ɪnˈvaɪt/ *vt.* 邀请

考向：[重点] invite 的常用搭配：

invite sb. to do sth.	邀请某人做某事	Jack **invited me to** watch the match with him. 杰克邀请我和他一起去看比赛。
invite sb. to sp.	邀请某人去某地	Are **you invited to** Mary's birthday party? 你被邀请参加玛丽的生日聚会了吗？
invite sb. for a drink/meal	邀请某人喝一杯/吃饭	I **invited him for a meal** yesterday. 昨天我邀请他吃了顿饭。

【考题在线 4】 Harry invited me _____ with him when his parents were out of town. （天津）
A. stay　B. stayed　C. staying　D. to stay
点拨：本题用**词语应用法**。句意：哈里邀请我在他父母亲在外地的时候去陪他呆着。invite sb. to do sth. 是固定结构，意为“邀请某人做某事”，所以选用 to stay。

⑤have parties/a party 举行聚会

eg：We often **have parties** in the garden.
我们经常在花园里举行聚会。

考向：[重点] have 作实义动词，有不同的含义

有	I have a new bike. 我有一辆新自行车。
举行，进行活动	have a party 举行聚会； have a break 休息一会儿
患病	have a headache 头痛； have a cold 感冒
经受，经历	I've had so many falls that I'm black and blue all over. 我跌了很多跤，以至于全身都是青一块紫一块的。
吃，喝	I want to have a cup of tea and some eggs. 我想喝杯茶并吃一些鸡蛋。

考题在线答案
1. C　2. at the foot of　3. D　4. D

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

“三步法”写梦想的家

步骤一：开篇点题
步骤二：具体描述梦想的家：家的位置、大小、设计等
步骤三：自己的感受

易错点提示

1. 表示位置关系的介词的正确使用
2. there be 句型中主语和 be 动词的一致性

参考词汇和句式

单词	dream, centre, house, floor, garden, bedroom, bathroom, beach, sea
短语	in the centre of, next to, in front of, be full of, share with, look beautiful, have fun with
句式	My dream home is … It's next to … There is … in front of … On the first floor, … I often invite …

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典例

跟大家分享一下你梦想中的家。

题目:My Dream Home

词数:80 词左右

提示:

家的大小、位置、有几层、房间分配等。

【范文欣赏】

My Dream Home

①Everyone has his dream home. I also have mine.

My dream home is②a big house with a beautiful garden. It's in the centre of the city and next to a supermarket. It has two floors. ③On the ground floor, there is a kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. My family can eat and watch TV there. ③On the first floor, there are three bedrooms and a study. The study is full of books and I often share them with my friends.

I love my dream home.

【点评】

本文采用"三步法"描写梦想的家。第一步:开篇点题(第一段);第二步:具体描述梦想的家(第二段)——big, in the centre of ..., has two floors, ...;第三步:自己的感受(第三段)——I love my dream home.。

添彩点:

①开篇语 Everyone has his dream home. I also have mine. 合情合理,自然引出下文;②a big house with a beautiful garden 使得具体描述更形象化;③On the ground floor, there is ... 及 On the first floor, there are ... 两个 there be 句型是具体描述中的主线,使文章既富有层次感,又有整体感。



"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ.随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见235页)

一、单项选择

1. —Why are you standing, Alice?
—I can't see the blackboard. Two tall boys are sitting _____ me.
A. behind B. next to
C. between D. in front of

2. —_____ students are there in your class?
—Fifty. (梧州)
A. How many B. How much
C. How long D. How far

3. In the picture, he sits _____ me, looking very happy. (天津)
A. beside B. among C. up D. through

4. I hope you _____ soon.
A. call back me B. will call me back
C. calling me back D. to call me back

5. I'd like to thank you for _____ me.
A. invite B. to invite
C. inviting D. invites

二、根据汉语完成句子

6. 在山脚下有一条河。
_____ _____ _____ _____ the hill, there is a river.

7. 我家后面有个游泳池。
There is a _____ _____ _____ my house.

8. 他经常在足球场上踢足球。
He often plays football _____ _____ _____ _____.

9. 周末我经常呆在家里。
I often _____ at home _____ _____ _____.

10. 我有一个新公寓,我想要邀请我的朋友们到我家来举行聚会。
I have a new flat. I'd like to _____ _____ _____ _____ my home and _____ _____ _____.

三、根据首字母提示完成下面的短文

Neil lives in a town 15 m_____[11] from London. He likes his house b_____[12]. His family and he often sit in the kitchen and enjoy a cup of tea. They have a beautiful g_____[13]. He always has f_____[14] with his dog there.

Anna lives in a flat in the c_____[15] of Moscow. Her flat is on the seventh floor. It's not big. Their family like to watch TV and chat in the living room after dinner. She s_____[16] a bedroom with her sister. They often listen to m_____[17] in bed.

Stephen lives in a large house with 8 rooms in Los Angeles. He has his o_____[18] bedroom and bathroom. He loves to sit on the balcony and look o_____[19] at the beach and the s_____[20]. It's cool.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Neighbours

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①开门见山法(33 页)　②观察连词法(35 页)　③归纳总结法(36 页)
写作方法	◇①“总分总法”写社区生活(52 页)
解题方法	1寻找题眼法(235,236 页)　2转化法(236 页)　3交际法(30,46,51,224 页) 4语境判断法(46,52,236 页)　5词语应用法(34,39,224,235 页) 6语法判断法(41,48,224,236 页)　7短语辨析法(35 页) 8词义辨析法(34,35,47,50,51 页)　9主谓一致法(31 页)

学习目标梳理

话题	街区的生活		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	neighbour *n.* 邻居　will *modal v.* 将,将会 visitor *n.* 访问者,参观者 like *prep.* 像,类似;……怎么样	most of ……当中的大部分
	Period 2	helpful *adj.* 愿意帮忙的;有用的　community *n.* 社区　skill *n.* 技能,技巧　problem *n.* 问题 something *pron.* 某事,某物 engineer *n.* 工程师;技师　check *vt.* 检查;核实　broken *adj.* 损坏了的;破碎的　someone *pron.* 某人　fix *vt.* 修理　anyone *pron.* 任何人 college *n.* 学院　lucky *adj.* 幸运的	help sb. with sth. 帮助某人解决某种困难　all kinds of 各种各样的 have a meeting 开会　be ready to do sth. 乐意做某事　do some shopping 买东西
	Period 3	shall *modal v.* 将,将会 fire *n.* 火	the day after tomorrow 后天 make a fire 生火　be free 有空 check sth. for sb. 为某人检查某物 wait for sb. to do sth. 等某人做某事
	Period 4	manager *n.* 经理　postman *n.* 邮递员 company *n.* 公司　person *n.* 人 job *n.* 工作　elder *adj.* 年纪较长的 future *n.* 将来　artist *n.* 艺术家,画家 sound *linking v.* 听起来 sick *adj.* 恶心的;生病的	police station 警察局 post office 邮局 by train 乘火车 in the future 在将来 far away from… 远离……
	Period 5	notice *n.* 布告,通知　information *n.* 信息 below *adv.* 下面　better *adj.* 较好,更好 anything *pron.* 任何事　group *n.* 组,群	worry about 为……担心 know a lot about 懂得许多关于…… feel well 感觉身体好
句型	1. I'm going to …　我打算…… 2. They help us with …　他们帮助我们解决…… 3. There's something wrong with …　……出毛病了。 4. You are lucky to …　你很幸运…… 5. I'm afraid …　恐怕…… 6. That sounds like a good idea.　那听起来是个好主意。		
语法	一般将来时		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

1 Hi, Hobo. Where are you going?
2 I'm going to visit our new **neighbours**[1].
3 Wow! New neighbours! I'll meet them too!
4 **I'm afraid**[2] they won't welcome **visitors**[3] **like**[4] you.

课文朗读 Comic strip

Neighbours

The Class 1, Grade 7 students are discussing life in their neighbourhood.

Task

Write about how people help each other in your neighbourhood.

Welcome to the unit

People and places

A **Where can you find these people? Match them with the places. Write the correct letters in the boxes.**

1 waiter 2 doctor 3 teacher
4 nurse 5 student 6 cook

B **Amy is asking Simon about his neighbourhood. Work in pairs and talk about your neighbourhood. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

Amy: Where do you live, Simon?
Simon: I live in a flat **in City Garden in Ninth Street**[5].
Amy: How many buildings are there in your neighbourhood?
Simon: There are about 20 buildings. **Most of them**[6] have 14 floors.
Amy: What do you have around your neighbourhood?
Simon: We have supermarkets, restaurants, a school and a hospital.
Amy: Do you like living there?
Simon: Yes. It's good to live in a neighbourhood like that.

连环漫画

1 嗨,霍波。 你要去哪儿?
2 我打算去拜访我们的新邻居。
3 哇! 新邻居! 我也去见见他们!
4 恐怕他们不会欢迎像你这样的来访者。

邻居

七年级一班的学生正在讨论他们的街区生活。

任务

写一写在你的街区人们之间是如何互相帮助的。

单元导入

人与地方

A 你在哪儿能找到这些人? 把他们与地方搭配起来。 在方框里写出正确的字母。

1 服务员 2 医生 3 教师
4 护士 5 学生 6 厨师

B 埃米正在问西蒙有关他的街区的情况。 结对练习并讨论你的街区。 用下面的对话作为一个示例。

埃米: 西蒙,你住在哪儿?
西蒙: 我住在第九大街城市花园的一所公寓里。
埃米: 你们街区有多少栋楼?
西蒙: 大约 20 栋。 它们当中大部分有 14 层。
埃米: 你们街区周围有什么?
西蒙: 我们有超市、餐馆、一所学校和一所医院。
埃米: 你喜欢住在那儿吗?
西蒙: 是的。 住在那样的社区很好。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 neighbour /ˈneɪbə(r)/ *n.* 邻居

eg: We are their next-door **neighbours**.
我们是他们的隔壁邻居。

拓展 neighbour 为英式写法,美式写法为 neighbor。派生词 neighbourhood/neighborhood,意为"居民区,街区"。常用短语:in the neighbourhood"在社区"。

2 I'm afraid... 恐怕……

考向: I'm afraid 之后用 so/not,可代替上文提到的内容,意为"恐怕(不)是这样的"。

eg:—Do you have to stay at home today?
你今天必须呆在家里吗?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—**I'm afraid so.** 恐怕是的。
—Can we go and see him today?
我们今天能去见他吗?
—**I'm afraid not.** 恐怕不行。

【考题在线1】—Would you like to play football after school?
—_____. I have a lot of homework to do. (安徽)
A. I'm afraid not　　B. Enjoy yourself
C. Take your time　　D. It takes no time
点拨:I'm afraid not. 恐怕不行,在交际用语中表达委婉否定。

③visitor /'vɪzɪtə/ ***n.*** **访问者,参观者,游客**

考向:visitor 的动词形式为 visit,其后常接地点或人,接地点时意为"访问,参观";接人时,意为"拜访,看望"。visit 还可用作名词,其固定搭配为(be) on a visit to ...参观……。

eg:(济宁中考) About 500,000 people **visit** the island every year to see the island's beauty and nature.
每年大约五十万人来参观这座岛屿,游览这座岛的美丽和自然风光。
Daniel is **on a visit to** Yangzhou.
丹尼尔正在扬州参观。

拓展 以-or 结尾的表示人的名词还有:
actor 男演员　translator 翻译,译员
inventor 发明家　collector 收集者　doctor 医生

【考题在线2】—Is this your umbrella?
—No, it's another _____(visit). (常州)

④like /laɪk/ ***prep.*** **像;相似;……怎么样**

考向一:like 作介词,意为"像",反义词是 unlike。其常用含义为:

(表示样子)像,相似	He looks **like** Father Christmas. 他看起来像圣诞老人。
(表示行为)像……一样	(滨州中考) Must I go to a law school and be a lawyer **like** you, Dad? 爸爸,我必须读法律学校,像你一样当律师吗?
(表示列举)比方,例如	Try to avoid fatty foods **like** cakes and biscuits. 尽量避免吃蛋糕和饼干这一类高脂食物。
(询问意见)……怎么样	What **are** Dan's parents **like**? 丹的父母是怎样的人?

考向二:[易错点][辨析]look like 与 be like

look like	强调外貌方面	—What does your sister **look like**? 你姐姐长什么样子? —She is tall. She has long black hair. She is very beautiful. 她个子很高。她有一头黑黑的长发。她很漂亮。
be like	强调性格方面。但范围更大一些,有时候既指性格也指外貌	—What**'s** your sister **like**? 你姐姐怎么样?/你姐姐是怎样一个人? —She is kind. She is like her mother. 她很善良。她像她的妈妈。

【考题在线3】—What does your brother look like?
—_____. (昆明)
A. He is outgoing
B. He is really tall and thin
C. He is a student
D. He is in hospital
点拨:本题用交际法。问句句意:你的弟弟长相如何?根据问句中 look like 询问人物外貌,可知道 B 项符合句意。

【注意】What be sb./sth. like? 可以和 How be sb./sth.? 相互转换,表示某人/某事怎么样。

eg:What's the weather like in Hefei now?
= How is the weather in Hefei now?
现在合肥的天气怎么样?

考向三:like 还可用作动词,意为"喜欢;喜爱"。详细讲解见本书 Unit 1 Period 2 知识点 7。

eg: I **like** swimming. 我喜欢游泳。

【注意】在使用 like 时要学会判断 like 是作介词,还是作动词,通常动词在句中作谓语,因此会随着主语人称、数以及句子的时态变化而发生改变,而介词没有这些变化。

eg:Eddie, **like** Hobo, doesn't **like** eating fish.
埃迪像霍波一样,不喜欢吃鱼。
(后一个 like 与 doesn't 连用,是动词;前一个是介词,无变化)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 4】 Daniel _____ his father _____ playing basketball at the weekend.

A. likes; like
B. like; like
C. likes; likes
D. like; likes


方法真题练:主谓一致法

点拨:本题用主谓一致法。根据句意可知道第一空意为"像",用介词 like,没有变化形式;第二空意为"喜欢",用动词 like,本句主语为 Daniel,故谓语动词用第三人称单数 likes。

❺in City Garden in Ninth Street
在第九大街城市花园

考向:英语中地点状语的排列顺序与中文截然相反:小地点在前,大地点在后。另外书写时要注意地名、城市名、国家名为专有名词,首字母须大写。

eg: My aunt is living in the Hilton Hotel, Shanghai, China.
我阿姨住在中国上海希尔顿酒店。

❻most of them 它们当中大部分

eg: **Most of them** can finish their homework on time. 他们当中大部分能按时完成作业。

考向一:[易错点]most of 后接名词、代词等。当接名词时,名词前一般须有形容词性物主代词或定冠词修饰,表示部分与整体之间的关系。

eg: most of my books 我的大部分书籍

考向二:[易错点]当 most of 修饰名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数还是复数形式取决于 most of 修饰的是不可数名词还是可数名词。

eg: Most of the water is clean here.
这里大部分的水是干净的。
Most of the shops are closed at this time every day.
每天的这个时候大部分商店都关门了。

【注意】most 是 much"许多的"和 many"许多的"的最高级,(much, many 的比较级为 more)。其后可接可数名词的复数或不可数名词。

eg: He has the **most** money of all of them.
这些人当中,他最有钱。

拓展 at most 至多,不超过

eg: There are five books in the bag **at most**.
这个包里有不超过五本书。

【考题在线 5】 There are lots of restaurants in our town. And most of _____ are clean and cheap. (南昌)

A. it B. they C. us D. them

点拨:考查人称代词的用法。句意:我们镇上有很多家饭馆,而且其中大多数又便宜又干净。介词 of 后面应该使用人称代词宾格形式。

考题在线答案
1. A 2. visitor's 3. B 4. D 5. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见 235 页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Tom lives next to me. So we are _____ (邻居).
2. What do you have _____ (周围) your school?
3. The girl is _____ (害怕) to go out at night. (百色)
4. —Look at the dog! How cute it is!
—Jack has a dog _____ (像) this one.
5. _____ (大部分) of them are from the USA.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Many _____ (visit) came to the hometown of the great man during the vacation. (遂宁)
7. How many _____ (build) are there in your school? 【导学号:1037419】
8. His brother works as a _____ (wait) in a big restaurant near his home.
9. Tom and Jack are good friends. They like _____ (play) football very much.
10. He is good at _____ (cook) and he is a nice _____ (cook).

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 游客们正在游览颐和园。
The _____ are _____ the Summer Palace.
12. 这个星期天我将去拜访我的新邻居们。
I _____ _____ my new _____ this Sunday.
13. 恐怕明天我不能去参观你的新家了。
_____ _____ I cannot visit your new house tomorrow.
14. 这儿大多数楼房都有十九层。
_____ _____ the buildings here have _____ _____.
15. 住在那样的居民区真好。
It is good _____ _____ _____ a neighbourhood _____ that.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A Good neighbours

课文朗读A

Amy wants to learn more about Simon's neighbours. Read their conversation.

Amy: Hi, Simon. **What are your neighbours like** ❶

Simon: They're kind and **helpful**❷. Some of them are volunteers. They often meet at the **community**❸ centre and share their different skills. They **help us with**❹ all kinds of problems.

Amy: When do they meet?

Simon: Usually they have a "helping hands" meeting at the weekend.

Amy: Are they going to have a meeting this weekend?

Simon: Yes. There's **something**❺ wrong with my computer. I'm going to ask a computer **engineer**❻ to **check**❼ it. **My cousin Annie's bicycle is broken, so she's going to ask someone to fix**❽ **it.**❾

Amy: Can you find **anyone**❿ to help you with your homework?

Simon: Yes. Some college students **are ready to**⓫ help.

Amy: That's really nice. Do the volunteers help the old people too?

Simon: Yes. Some of them often visit the old people and **do some shopping**⓬ for them. This weekend, they'll help the old people clean their flats.

Amy: That's great! **You're lucky**⓭ **to live in a neighbourhood like that, Simon.**⓮

B About Simon's neighbours

B1 Simon is showing Amy some pictures from the community centre. Help him complete the sentences with the words in the box.

bicycle	college	computer
engineer	fixing	shopping

1 This volunteer often does some _____ for the old man.

2 The _____ student is helping the boy with his homework.

3 The man is _____ the girl's _____.

4 The _____ is checking the _____.

阅读

A 好邻居

埃米想更多地了解有关西蒙的邻居的情况。读他们的对话。

埃米：嗨，西蒙。你的邻居怎么样？

西蒙：他们善良且乐于助人。他们当中一些人是志愿者。他们经常在社区中心见面，并和大家分享各自的一技之长。他们帮助我们解决各种问题。

埃米：他们什么时候见面？

西蒙：通常在周末他们有一个"援助之手"的见面会。

埃米：这周末他们要开见面会吗？

西蒙：是的。我的电脑出问题了。我打算找一位计算机工程师检查一下。我的堂姐安妮的自行车坏了，因此她打算找人修理。

埃米：你能找到人在家庭作业方面帮助你吗？

西蒙：是的。一些大学生乐意帮忙。

埃米：那真是太好了。志愿者也帮助老人吗？

西蒙：是的。他们当中一些人经常去拜访老人，并为他们采购些物品。这个周末，他们将帮助老人打扫公寓。

埃米：好极了！西蒙，你真幸运住在那样一个街区。

B 关于西蒙的邻居

B1 西蒙正在给埃米看一些来自社区中心的图片。用方框中的词帮助他完成句子。

自行车	大学	电脑
工程师	修理	购物

1 这位志愿者经常为那位老人_____。

2 这位_____学生正在帮助那个男孩做家庭作业。

3 那个男人正在_____那个女孩的_____。

4 这个_____正在检查_____。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B2 **Amy is writing something about Simon's neighbours. Read her notes. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.**

1 Volunteers share their skills and help people in the neighbourhood with different problems.
2 Usually there is a meeting at the weekend.
3 Simon wants to ask someone to fix his bicycle.
4 Annie's computer is broken.
5 Parents help their children with their homework.
6 Volunteers also help the old people.

B3 **Simon is writing about his neighbours for the school newsletter. Help him complete his article with the words in the box.**

all kinds of[15] at the weekend broken check different skills fix homework lucky problems ready to help

My neighbours

My neighbours are kind and helpful. Some of them are volunteers. They have (1) _____ and often help us with (2) _____ problems.

Usually there is a "helping hands" meeting (3) _____. People go there when they need help with their (4) _____. Computer engineers are popular. They help people (5) _____ their computers. You can also find someone to (6) _____ things like (7) _____ bicycles.

Students can get help with their (8) _____. There are some college students among the volunteers, and they are always (9) _____. Volunteers also help the old people.

We are (10) _____ to live in a neighbourhood like that. People here are like a big family.

B2 埃米正在写关于西蒙邻居的事。读一读她的笔记。如果句子正确写"T",如果错误写"F"。

1 志愿者分享他们的技能,并帮助社区的人们解决不同的问题。
2 在周末通常有一个会议。
3 西蒙想请人修理他的自行车。
4 安妮的电脑坏了。
5 父母帮孩子们解决家庭作业问题。
6 志愿者也帮助老人。

B3 西蒙正在为学校的通讯写有关他的邻居的事。用方框里的词帮助他完成他的文章。

各种各样的 在周末 坏的 检查 不同的技能 修理 家庭作业 幸运的 问题 乐于帮助

我的邻居

我的邻居善良且乐于助人。他们当中一些人是志愿者。他们有(1) _____并经常帮助我们解决(2) _____问题。

通常有一个"援助之手"见面会(3) _____。当人们遇到(4) _____需要帮助时去那儿。计算机工程师非常受欢迎。他们帮助人们(5) _____他们的电脑。你也能找到人(6) _____东西像(7) _____自行车。

学生能在(8) _____方面得到帮助。志愿者当中有一些大学生,他们总是(9) _____。志愿者也帮助老人。

我们(10) _____住在那样的街区。这儿的人们就像一个大家庭。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1开门见山法:对话一开始就直接奔向主题,询问邻居的情况,统领整个对话。我们在编写类似的对话时,通常用这种方法,让读者一看就明了本段对话的主题。

2helpful /ˈhelpfl/ ***adj.*** **乐于助人的;有用的**

考向:helpful 是由名词 help"帮助"加后缀-ful 构成的,其反义词为 helpless。be helpful to sb. = be of help to sb. 对某人有帮助

eg:This book **is** very **helpful to** me. = This book **is of** great **help to** me.
这本书对我很有帮助。
A dictionary **is helpful to** us.
词典对我们有帮助。

【考题在线1】 The students are very _____ (help). They clean houses for the old people every weekend. (广州改编)

3community /kəˈmju:nəti/ ***n.*** **社区**

eg:My friend works in a **community** centre.
我的朋友在一个社区中心工作。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展 community 为可数名词，复数形式为 communities。常用搭配有：community centre 社区中心。

❹help ...with... 在……方面帮助……

考向一：[重点] help 作动词的常见搭配：

help sb. with sth. = help sb. (to) do sth. 帮助某人做某事	Can you **help me with** English? = Can you **help me (to) learn** English? 你能帮我学英语吗？
help oneself (to) 自用(食物等)	**Help yourself to** some fish. 随便吃些鱼。

拓展 help 作动词的其他搭配

help sb. out 帮助某人摆脱困境或解决难题

help (to) do sth. 帮助做某事

can't help doing sth. 禁不住做某事；忍不住做某事

can't help (to) do sth. 不能帮着做某事

eg：(枣庄中考) Green tea **helps stop** the bad result of the computer.
绿茶帮助阻止电脑的坏的影响。

【考题在线 2】 Ann often helps me _____ math after school. (温州)
A. for B. with C. on D. by

考向二：[易错点] help 作名词的常见搭配：

(1) with the help of sb. = with one's help
在某人的帮助下
without the help of sb. = without one's help
没有某人的帮助

(2) ask sb. for help = (turn to sb.) 向某人寻求帮助

【考题在线 3】 _____ your help, I can't get good grades. (怀化改编)
A. With B. Without
C. For D. Under
点拨：词语应用法。句意：没有你的帮助，我不会取得好成绩。With your help 是在你的帮助下，不符合逻辑，故用 Without。

❺something /ˈsʌmθɪŋ/ *pron.* 某物，某事

eg：This time I want to do **something** different.
这次我想做点不一样的事情。

考向一：[重点] 形容词作定语修饰不定代词时要后置。

eg：something important 重要的事
something new 新事情

【考题在线 4】 —Why do you come here?
—Because I have _____ to tell you. (铜仁)
A. anything important
B. important anything
C. something important
D. important something
点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——你为什么来这里？——因为我有重要的事情要告诉你。肯定句用 something，形容词 important 修饰不定代词放在其后。

考向二：[易错点] 不定代词 something 不可以分开写，也没有复数，一般用于肯定句。如用于疑问句中则表示说话人的请求，想得到对方的肯定回答，此用法如同 some。

拓展 英语中常见的不定代词

代指人	代指物
everyone/everybody 每人 someone/somebody 某人 anybody/anyone 某人、任何人 nobody 没人	everything 每件事 something 某事 anything 任何事 nothing 没有东西

❻engineer /ˌendʒɪˈnɪə/ *n.* 工程师；技师

eg：I dream of being an **engineer**.
我梦想成为一名工程师。

考向：engineer 是以元音音素开头，“一位工程师”用 an engineer。

拓展 职业类词汇小结：teacher 教师 worker 工人 driver 司机 doctor 医生 nurse 护士 policeman 警察 waiter 服务员 singer 歌手 actor 演员

❼check /tʃek/ *vt.* 检查；核实

eg：(滨州中考) We **check** our mobiles from time to time during the meal. 吃饭的时候，我们会时不时检查我们的手机。

拓展 check 还可作不及物动词，常用搭配：check in (在宾馆、机场等) 登记；check out 结账离开；check over 核对

【考题在线 5】 —What time is it?
—Just a minute. I will _____ it for you. (日照)
A. count B. check
C. watch D. set
点拨：本题用词义辨析法。count 计算；check 检查，核对；watch 观看；set 设定。根据句意可知是指查看时间。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

8fix /fɪks/ *vt.* 修理；安装；使固定

考向：[辨析] fix，mend 与 repair

fix	修理，安装；表示“修理”时与 repair 意思相同。常用短语 fix up “修理”。	The workers are **fixing** the machine. 工人们正在修理机器。
mend	修理，修补；常指修补磨损的、破裂的、撕毁的小东西，很少用于大物品。	She is **mending** her shoes. 她正在修补她的鞋子。
repair	修理；常指修理已破旧或损坏的比较严重或构造较复杂的物品，使其恢复原有的良好状况，repair 多表示对房屋、汽车、电器或桥梁的修理。	He **repaired** his house. 他修缮了他的房子。

【考题在线 6】My bike is broken. Could you help me to _____? （烟台）

A. fix it up　　B. set it up

C. make it up　　D. put it up

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。fix up 修理；set up 建立；make up 编造；put up 举起。句意：我的自行车坏了。你能帮助我修理吗？

9观察连词法：本句是由连词 so 连接的并列句，so 后接表示结果的句子，但不能与 because 同时出现在一个句子中。

10anyone /ˈeniwʌn/ *pron.* 任何人

考向一：anyone 相当于 anybody。常用于疑问句或否定句中，肯定句中用 someone 或 somebody。

eg：Did **anyone** come?

有人来过吗？

【考题在线 7】“I don't think I am different from _____ else. I am just the son of a farmer,” Mo Yan said. （东营）

A. anyone　　B. nobody

C. someone　　D. everyone

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。anyone 任何人；nobody 没有人；someone 某人；everyone 每个人。句意：“我认为我与其他任何人没有什么不同。我只不过是一个农民的儿子。”莫言说。

考向二：[辨析] anyone 与 any one

anyone	用作代词，只能指人，意为“任何人”，不能与 of 短语连用。	Is there **anyone** at home? 家里有人吗？
any one	既可指人，也可指物，意为“任何一个人或任何一个物”，强调只限一个，可以和 of 短语连用，表示“……之中的任何一个”。	You may choose **any one** of these. 你可以从这些当中选择任何一个。

魔法记忆

一语辨异：Do you know **anyone** else there? I don't know **any one** of them. 你认识那儿的其他任何人吗？他们中我一个也不认识。

11be ready to … 乐于……

考向：be ready to do sth. 意为“准备/乐于做某事”；be/get ready for … 意为“为……做好准备”。

eg：（丽水中考）Heather **is** always **ready to do** her job.

希瑟总是准备好做她的工作。

Please **be ready for** the lesson, boys and girls. 同学们，请准备好上课。

12do some shopping 买东西

考向：do some shopping 相当于 go shopping。

eg：I often **do some shopping/go shopping** on Sundays.

我常常在星期天去买东西。

拓展 类似结构的短语还有：

do some reading 阅读；

do some washing 洗衣服；

do some walking 散步；

do some running 跑步；

do some talking 谈话

13lucky /ˈlʌki/ *adj.* 幸运的

考向一：**be lucky to do sth.** 意为“很幸运做某事”。

eg：I'**m lucky to be** your friend.

我很幸运成为你的朋友。

考向二：lucky 的反义词为 unlucky，名词形式为 luck，意为“幸运”；副词形式为 luckily，意为“幸运地”，其反义词为 unluckily。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg：Good **luck** to you！祝你好运！

Luckily, they got to the hospital in time. 幸运的是他们及时到达了医院。

（济宁中考）**Unluckily**, the visitors create problems. 不幸地，游客们制造了麻烦。

【考题在线 8】How _____（幸运的）they are to have such a good teacher!（苏州）

⑭**归纳总结法**：本句归纳总结了本段对话，表明埃米对西蒙所住社区的看法。

⑮**all kinds of 各种各样的**

考向：kind 的相关短语

a kind of	一种……	Rice is **a kind of** plant. 水稻是一种植物。
all kinds of	各种各样的	I have **all kinds of** clothes. 我有各种各样的衣服。
kind of	有点	I'm **kind of** tired. 我有点累。

拓展 kind 还可作形容词，意为“友好的，亲切的”。常用句型：It's kind of sb. to do sth. 意为“某人做某事真是太好了。”

eg：It's very kind of you to say that.

你那么说真是太好了。

考题在线答案

1. helpful 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. B
6. A 7. A 8. lucky

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见235页）

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. There is a c_____ centre in our neighbourhood.
2. My uncle is an _____（工程师）.
3. He is _____（检查）his homework.
4. He will go to _____（大学）next year.
5. Tom likes playing football. He has good football _____（技能）.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. The girl often helps the old woman _____（cook）meals. She is very _____（help）.
7. We will have different _____（problem）when doing the experiment.
8. I didn't watch TV last night, because my TV set was _____（break）.（兰州）
9. She is _____（luck）to have a lot of friends to help her.
10. I don't have _____（something）to do at the moment.

三、单项选择

11. Can you help me _____ my English?
A. in B. with
C. from D. to

12. I want to be _____ engineer when I grow up.（成都改编）
A. a B. an
C. the D. /

13. —What are you going to give your mother for her birthday?
—I think I'll buy her _____.（百色）
A. something special
B. special something
C. anything special
D. special anything

14. The people from our community centre help each other. We _____ a big family.
A. like B. likes
C. are like D. are liking

15. —Look! _____ is dancing under the tree.
—Oh, that's my cousin, Anna.
A. Everybody B. Anybody
C. Nobody D. Somebody

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 汤姆总是乐于帮助别人。我们都喜欢他。
Tom is always _____ _____ _____ others. We all like him.

17. 他们帮助我们解决各种各样的问题。
They _____ us _____ _____ _____ problems.

18. 我的电脑出毛病了，你能帮我修理一下吗？
There's _____ _____ _____ my computer. Can you _____ me _____ it?

19. 我们这周五将要开一个会。
We will _____ _____ _____ this Friday.

20. 一些志愿者正在为老人们购物。
Some volunteers _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ the old people.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Simple future tense with *will* and *shall*

We use will or shall when we talk about

1 things that are sure to happen in the future:

It will rain this afternoon.

2 plans that we are making now:

I will take an umbrella with me.

TIP
We usually use will. We only use shall with I or we, and this usage is becoming old-fashioned.

We make positive and negative sentences using the simple future tense like this:

I/We	will(not)/shall(not)	go.
You/They/He/She/It	will(not)	

We ask and answer questions using the simple future tense like this:

Will/Shall	I/we	go?
Will	you/they/he/she/it	

Yes,	I/we	will/shall.
	you/they/he/she/it	will.

No,	I/we	will not/shall not.
	you/they/he/she/it	will not.

TIP
I will/shall = I'll
I will not = I won't
I shall not = I shan't

Asking for help

Simon's computer is broken. He is asking someone at the community centre for help. Complete their conversation with the simple future tense of the verbs in brackets.

Mr Lin: Hello, Simon. Do you **need**[1] any help?

语法

A 带有 will 与 shall 的一般将来时

我们使用 will 或 shall 当我们谈论

1 将来肯定要发生的事情时:

今天下午将会下雨。

2 我们现在正在做的计划时:

我将带上雨伞。

提示
我们通常用 will。我们只把 shall 与 I 或 we 连用,而且这种用法渐渐过时了。

我们像这样用一般将来时造肯定句和否定句:

我/我们	将(不)	去。
你(们)/他们/他/她/它	将(不)	

我们像这样用一般将来时来问和回答问题:

将	我/我们	去?
将	你(们)/他们/他/她/它	

是的,	我/我们	将去。
	你(们)/他们/他/她/它	将去。

不,	我/我们	将不去。
	你(们)/他们/他/她/它	将不去。

提示
我将要
我将不
我将不

请求帮助

西蒙的电脑坏了。他正在向社区中心的某个人寻求帮助。用括号中动词的一般将来时态完成对话。

林先生:你好,西蒙。你需要帮助吗?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Simon: Yes, Mr Lin. There's something wrong with my computer.

Mr Lin: OK. We(1) _____(ask) an engineer to check it for you.

Simon: When(2) _____the engineer _____(be) free?

Mr Lin: Well, we(3) _____(call) him first. (4) _____ you _____(wait) for us to call back?

Simon: All right. I(5) _____(wait) for your call. Thanks.

Mr Lin: You're welcome.

B Simple future tense with be going to

We use be going to when we talk about

1 something we decide to do:

I am going to visit our new neighbours.

She is going to watch the film next Friday.

2 things that will probably happen:

It is nine o'clock. We are going to be late.

It is so cloudy. I think it is going to **rain**[2].

TIP

We often use some time expressions when we talk about the future.

this afternoon　tonight　tomorrow

the day after tomorrow　this Sunday

next Tuesday　next week

TIP

When we use be going to without a time expression, we are talking about the near future.

We ask and answer questions with be going to like this:

Am	I	going to	have a party	tomorrow?
Are	you/we/they			
Is	he/she/it			

Yes,	I	am.
	you/we/they	are.
	he/she/it	is.

No,	I	am not.
	you/we/they	are not.
	he/she/it	is not.

TIP

are not = aren't

is not = isn't

西蒙：是的，林先生。我的电脑出毛病了。

林先生：好的。我们(1) _____(请)一位工程师给你检查一下。

西蒙：工程师什么时候(2) _____(是)有空的?

林先生：噢，我们先(3) _____(打个电话给)他。(4) _____你_____(等)我们回电话吗?

西蒙：好吧。我(5) _____(等)你们的电话。谢谢。

林先生：不客气。

B be going to 的一般将来时

我们用 be going to 当我们谈论

1 我们决定要做的事时：

我打算拜访我们的新邻居。

她打算下周五看电影。

2 有可能要发生的事情时：

九点钟了。我们要迟到了。

天这么阴沉。我认为将会下雨。

提示

当我们谈论将来的时候常用到一些时间表达方式。

今天下午　今晚　明天

后天　这周日

下周二　下周

提示

当我们在没有时间表达的情况下用 be going to 时，我们是在谈论不久的将来。

我们像这样用 be going to 问和回答问题：

是	我	将	举行聚会	明天吗?
是	你(们)/我们/他们			
是	他/她/它			

是的，	我	将会。
	你(们)/我们/他们	将会。
	他/她/它	将会。

不，	我	不会。
	你(们)/我们/他们	不会。
	他/她/它	不会。

提示

are not = aren't

is not = isn't

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Planning a day out

Simon is telling Amy about his plan for a day out with his uncle's family. Help him use the correct forms of be going to to talk about his plan.

Simon: Hi, Amy. My parents and I are planning a day out with my uncle's family the day after tomorrow.
Amy: Great! What(1) _____ you _____(do)?
Simon: I(2) _____(buy) some food, and my cousin Annie(3) _____(buy) some plates and forks.
Amy: What(4) _____ your parents _____(do)?
Simon: They(5) _____(bring) some water.
Amy: How about your uncle?
Simon: He(6) _____(make) a **fire**③.
Amy: And your aunt? What(7) _____ she _____(do)?
Simon: She(8) _____(cook) some food.

计划外出一天

西蒙正在告诉埃米有关他和叔叔一家外出一天的计划。帮助他用 be going to 的正确形式谈论他的计划。

西蒙：嗨，埃米。我和我父母计划后天和我叔叔一家外出一天。
埃米：好极了！你们(1) _____(干)什么？
西蒙：我(2) _____(买)一些食物，我的堂姐安妮(3) _____(买)一些盘子和叉子。
埃米：你父母(4) _____(干)什么？
西蒙：他们(5) _____(带)一些水。
埃米：你叔叔呢？
西蒙：他(6) _____(生)火。
埃米：你婶婶呢？她(7) _____(干)什么？
西蒙：她(8) _____(做)饭。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

①need/niːd/ *v.* 需要

eg:(安徽中考)The olive tree grows in rocky places and it doesn't **need** much water.
橄榄树生长在多岩石的地方，它不需要太多的水。

知识微课：need的用法

考向一:[重点]need 在此处为实义动词，其后可接名词、代词、动词不定式或动名词作宾语。need 既可用于肯定句中，也可用于否定或疑问句中，有人称、数及时态的变化。构成否定或疑问句时要借助于助动词。

eg:Does your father **need** any help?
你爸爸需要帮助吗？
What do we **need** to take for the picnic?
野餐我们需要带些什么？

考向二:[难点][辨析]need to do sth. 与 need doing

need to do sth.	意为“需要做某事”，表示主动动作。	She **needs to go** out for a walk. 她需要出去散散步。
need doing	意为“需要对某物做某事”，是主动形式表示被动意义。	My hair **needs cutting**. 我需要理发了。

【考题在线1】 Everyone, you need _____ a dream. The future of China depends on you! (苏州改编)
A. had B. to have
C. has D. having

点拨:本题用词语应用法。need 用于肯定句，作为实义动词，后接动词不定式，表示“需要……”。

拓展 (1)need 作情态动词，意为“需要”，主要用于否定句和疑问句中，其后接动词原形。此时，need 无人称、数及时态的变化。

eg:He **needn't** stay long.
他不必呆很久。
Need we go so soon?
我们用得着那么快就走吗？

(2)need 作名词，意为“需要”，常用短语为 in need。

eg:A friend **in need** is a friend indeed.
患难见真情(谚语)。

②rain/reɪn/ *vi.* 下雨

考向一:动词 rain 可用副词 heavily 或 hard 修饰，表示“雨下得很大”。

考向二:rain 还可作名词，意为“雨，雨水”。形容词是 rainy，意为“多雨的”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

魔法记忆

一语辨异：It is **raining** heavily outside. But the children are playing football in the **rain**. This is really a **rainy** season. 外面下着大雨，但是孩子们还在雨中踢足球，这真是一个多雨的季节。

拓展 常见的与天气有关的词：

sun（太阳）→ sunny（晴朗的）
cloud（云）→ cloudy（多云的）
rain（雨）→ rainy（多雨的）
wind（风）→ windy（多风的）
snow（雪）→ snowy（下雪多的）

【考题在线 2】It's _____（多云的）. I think it is going to r_____.

点拨：本题考查表示天气的形容词和动词。由汉语翻译可知第一空填 cloudy，be going to 后接动词原形，故第二空填 rain。

了解中外文化，学会与人交流

我们都知道，英国人总是在谈论天气，人们经常通过谈论天气打招呼（greeting），问候彼此。中国人除了说"你好"以外，在吃饭前会问"吃过饭了吗？"，是客套话。而美国人则用"Hello"或"Hi"。如果不理解中国人打招呼的含义，美国人会误会（misunderstanding），因为这样打招呼有时意味着你邀请对方去吃饭。中国人也谈天气，但那不是开头的问候语。

【素养行动】主动和别人打招呼，语言得体舒服，令人如沐春风，你会变成一个受欢迎（popular）的人。

【素养行动结果】做一个积极主动（active）、乐观向上（optimistic）、会交际（communicative）的人。

❸**fire**/ˈfaɪə(r)/ *n.* 火；火灾

eg：It's dangerous to play with **fire**.
玩火是危险的。

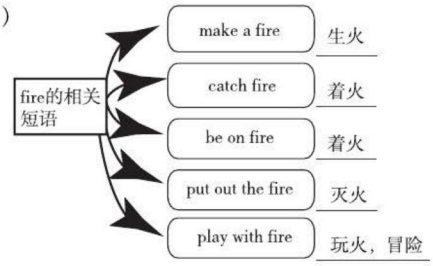
考向：fire 一般作不可数名词，但指"火灾"时可作可数名词也可作不可数名词，而指"炉火"时，为可数名词。

eg：There was a **fire** last night.
昨夜有一场火灾。

（南充中考）When there's a **fire**, you should use cloth to cover your mouth and nose.
当火灾发生时，你应该用布捂住你的嘴和鼻子。

拓展

（1）



（2）fireman *n.* 救火员，消防队员，其复数形式为 firemen。

【考题在线 3】你会生火吗？
Can you _____ _____ _____?

考题在线答案
1. B
2. cloudy; rain
3. make a fire

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

一般将来时

考向一：意义和构成

概念：一般将来时表示将来发生的动作或存在的状态。

常用的时间状语有：tomorrow，the day after tomorrow，soon，in a week，next week/month 等。

构成：

（1）肯定句

①主语 + be（am/is/are）+ going to + 动词原形 + 其他.

eg：I'm going to attend a meeting next week.
我下个星期要参加一个会议。

②主语 + will + 动词原形 + 其他.

eg：I'll go and visit her next Friday.
下个星期五我要去拜访她。

③主语（主语为 I 和 We）+ shall + 动词原

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

形+其他.

eg: This time next week I shall be in Scotland.

下周这个时候我就在苏格兰了。

④be doing 表示将来。

常用于这种结构的动词有 come, go, leave, start, begin 等短暂性动词。

eg: We are leaving for Beijing next week.

我们下周将动身去北京。

(注:I will 的缩写形式为 I'll; will not 的缩写形式为 won't; shall not 的缩写形式为 shan't。)

【考题在线 1】 Michael _____ in a school in Yunnan from February to June next year.

A. teach　　B. taught

C. will teach　　D. was teaching

点拨:本题用语法判断法。句意:迈克尔将于明年2月至6月在云南的一所学校任教。根据后面的表示将来的时间状语 next year 可知此处要用一般将来时。

【考题在线 2】 We _____ have a picnic together with our teachers next Thursday.

A. are going

B. are going to

C. will going

D. may going to

点拨:本题用语法判断法。句意:下周四我们将要和我们的老师一起去野餐。由关键词 next Thursday 可知道用 be going to。

(2)否定句:分别在 be, will, shall 后面加 not; will not 和 shall not 可缩写为 won't/shan't。

eg: She won't do it tomorrow.

明天她不会做这件事。

(3)一般疑问句:分别将 be, will, shall 提到句首。

eg: Will you do it tomorrow?

明天你将做这件事吗?

(4)特殊疑问句:特殊疑问词+一般疑问句?

eg: What will you do tomorrow?

明天你将做什么?

考向二:注意事项

(1)will 除用于一般将来时中,还可表示意愿、邀请、要求等。

eg: I'll be glad to help you.

我很乐意帮助你。

Will you go shopping with me?

你愿意和我一起去购物吗?

Will you please not talk?

请不要讲话好吗?

(2)shall 用于第一人称 I 或 we 作主语的一般疑问句,还可表示征求对方的意见或提出建议。

eg: Shall we have a rest?

我们休息一下好吗?

(3)表示根据迹象判断要发生某事,常用 be going to。

eg: Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.

看那些乌云,要下雨了。

(4)will 与 be going to 的区别

be going to 强调的是在说话时刻之前已经考虑过的,即强调计划性和安排性;will 强调的是客观情况。

eg: He is going to be a doctor when he grows up.

他长大后打算当一名医生。

He will be twenty years old next month.

下个月他将满20岁。

(5)there be 结构的一般将来时形式为:there will be 或 there be(is/are) going to be。

eg: There is going to be a party this weekend.

这个周末将有一次聚会。

【考题在线 3】 There _____ a folk music concert in Xinjiang Opera Theater next month. (乌鲁木齐)

A. is going to have

B. will have

C. is

D. is going to be

点拨:本题用语法判断法。句意:下个月在新疆歌剧院将有一场民族音乐会。通过时间状语 next month 可知应用一般将来时;There be 句型的一般将来时为 There will be 或 There is/ are going to be。

考题在线答案

1. C　2. B　3. D

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ.随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见235页）

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. His uncle _____ (be) back in a week.
2. _____ your mother _____ (see) the doctor tomorrow?
3. Shall we _____ (meet) at the school gate tomorrow morning?
4. There _____ (be) a meeting in our school tomorrow afternoon. （滨州）
5. She _____ (water) the flowers the day after tomorrow.

二、单项选择

6. —Where is your brother?
   —He has gone to Beijing. He _____ back in three days. （阜康）
   A. will come　　B. comes
   C. has come　　D. came
7. Daniel and Kitty _____ food this afternoon.
   A. is going to buy
   B. are going to buy
   C. shall buy
   D. will to buy
8. —We _____ to Yun Brocade Museum with the exchange students this coming summer holiday.
   —That's amazing! （南京）
   A. went　　B. go
   C. have gone　　D. will go
9. I think it is true that Jill _____ to work today because she is on a trip.
   A. has come　　B. didn't come
   C. is coming　　D. will not come
10. —What does he say?
    —He says there _____ a meeting tomorrow morning.
    A. is　　B. has
    C. will be　　D. have

三、根据要求完成句子

11. Mum will do some shopping the day after tomorrow.（改为否定句）
    Mum _____ _____ _____ shopping the day after tomorrow.
12. Bill is going to watch TV this afternoon.（改为一般疑问句）
    _____ Bill _____ to watch TV this afternoon?
13. We shall meet at the school gate.（对画线部分提问）
    _____ _____ we meet?
14. My cousin will fly to Shanghai next week.（对画线部分提问）
    What _____ your cousin _____ next week?
15. There was a meeting in the hall yesterday afternoon.（用 next Monday 改写句子）
    There _____ _____ _____ _____ a meeting in the hall next Monday.

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 她明天晚上给你回电话。
    She _____ _____ _____ _____ tomorrow evening.
17. 天如此阴，我想天要下雨了。
    It is so _____. I think it _____ _____ _____ _____.
18. 你明天要去看病吗？
    _____ you _____ _____ see the doctor tomorrow?
19. 我们后天去看电影，好吗？
    _____ _____ go to the cinema _____ _____ _____ _____?
20. 著名作家格林先生，下周要来我们学校参观。
    Mr Green, a famous writer, _____ _____ _____ _____ our school next week.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Different jobs

A1 Millie wants to know more about different jobs. Look at the following pictures. Help her write the correct names under the pictures.

manager	office worker	policeman	postman	company
police[1] station	post office	restaurant		

A2 Wendy, Millie's penfriend, is talking about her family members' jobs. Listen to her and complete the table below.

课文听力A2音频及材料

Person	Job	Place
Wendy's dad		
Wendy's mum		
Wendy's elder brother		
Wendy's elder sister		

A3 Millie is making notes about Wendy's family. Listen to Wendy again and help Millie complete her notes below.

Wendy's family

There are five people in Wendy's family.
Her dad is a(1) _____. He works in a (2) _____ near her school. Sometimes he works (3) _____.
Her mum works in a (4) _____ in the town centre. She is a (5) _____, so she is always busy.
Her elder brother works in a (6) _____. He is a (7) _____. He often goes to work (8) _____. He loves his **job**[2].
Her **elder**[3] sister is an(9) _____. She works for a(10) _____ **far away from**[4] her home, so she goes to work **by train**[5].

B Speak up: What are you going to be in the future?

Millie is talking with her classmates about their future jobs. Work in groups and talk about what you are going to be. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Millie: Hi, Daniel. What are you going to be in the **future**[6]?
Daniel: I like computers. I'm going to be a computer engineer.

综合技能

A 不同的工作

A1 米莉想更多地了解不同的工作。看下面的图片。帮助她在图片下写出正确的名称。

经理	办公室职员	警察	邮递员	
公司	警察局	邮局	餐馆	

A2 温蒂,米莉的笔友,正在谈论她家人的工作。听她的谈话并完成下面的表。

人	工作	地点
温蒂的爸爸		
温蒂的妈妈		
温蒂的哥哥		
温蒂的姐姐		

A3 米莉正在写关于温蒂家庭的笔记。再听一遍温蒂的谈话,并帮助米莉完成她下面的笔记。

温蒂的家庭

温蒂家有五口人。
她的爸爸是一个(1)_____。他在她的学校附近的一个(2)_____工作。有时他工作(3)_____。
她妈妈在镇中心的一家(4)_____工作。她是一名(5)_____,因此她总是忙。
她的哥哥在一家(6)_____工作。他是一名(7)_____。他经常(8)_____上班。他喜欢他的工作。
她的姐姐是一名(9)_____。她在离她家很远的一个(10)_____工作,因此她乘火车上班。

B 大声说:你将来打算干什么?

米莉正在和她的同班同学谈论他们将来的工作。分组谈论你们打算干什么。用下面的对话作为一个示例。

米莉:嗨,丹尼尔。你将来打算干什么?

丹尼尔:我喜欢电脑。我打算成为一名电脑工程师。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Millie: That's interesting. I'**m sure**[7] you'll **be good at**[8] it. I love school. I'm going to be a teacher.

Sandy: I'm good at drawing. I'm going to be an **artist**[9].

Millie: That **sounds**[10] like a good idea. And you, Amy?

Amy: I'm going to be a doctor. I want to help **sick**[11] people. **How about you, Simon**?[12] What are you going to be?

Simon: I'm going to be a football player.

米莉：那太有趣了。我肯定你会擅长它的。我喜欢学校。我打算成为一名老师。

桑迪：我擅长绘画。我打算成为一名画家。

米莉：那听起来是个好主意。你呢，埃米？

埃米：我打算成为一名医生。我想帮助病人。西蒙，你呢？你打算干什么？

西蒙：我打算成为一名足球运动员。

Study skills

Linking sounds

We often link sounds together when we speak English. There are four different ways of linking sounds together.

1 We usually link a consonant sound with a vowel sound.
an apple　　stand up　　in an hour

2 When the first word ends in -r or -re and the next word begins with a vowel sound, we join them together with a /r/ sound between them.
there are　　for us　　here is

3 When there are two vowel sounds, we join them as if there were a /j/ or /w/ sound between them.
we enjoy　　go out　　the other

4 When two consonant sounds of two words meet, we sometimes do not need to pronounce the first consonant sound.
best time　　sit down　　a big cake

A Listen carefully. See how you can link the following words together. Then practise saying them.

1 cold ice　　3 an egg　　5 turn on
2 big orange　　4 an umbrella　　6 get up

课文朗读A

B Listen carefully to these words. Then practise saying them.

1 there is　　3 far away　　5 more or less
2 here are　　4 four of us　　6 over again

课文朗读B

C Listen carefully to these words. Then practise saying them.

1 high up　　3 three exercises　　5 no other
2 the area　　4 go in　　6 two oranges

课文朗读C

D Listen carefully to these words. Then practise saying them.

1 next team　　3 keep busy　　5 best doctor
2 cold drink　　4 white cat　　6 hard time

课文朗读D

学习技能

连读

我们讲英语时经常连读。有四种不同的方法连读单词。

1 我们通常把辅音和元音连读。

一个苹果　　起立　　在一小时以后

2 当第一个单词以-r或-re结尾，第二个单词以元音开头时，我们在它们中间加一个/r/的音，把它们连在一起。
有　　为我们　　这是

3. 当有两个元音时，我们把它们连在一起，就好像在它们中间有一个/j/或/w/的音。
我们欣赏　出去　　另一个

4 当两个单词的两个辅音相遇时，我们有时就不需要发第一个辅音。

最好的时间　　坐下　　一个大蛋糕

A 仔细听。看看你如何将下列单词连读。然后练习读出它们。

1 寒冷的冰　　3 一个鸡蛋　　5 打开
2 大橙子　　4 一把伞　　6 起床

B 仔细听这些单词。然后练习读出它们。

1 有　　3 遥远　　5 或多或少
2 这是　　4 我们当中的四个　　6 再次

C 仔细听这些单词。然后练习读出它们。

1 在高处　　3 三个练习　　5 没有其他
2 这个地区　　4 参加　　6 两个橙子

D 仔细听这些单词。然后练习读出它们。

1 下一支队伍　　2 冷饮
3 保持忙碌　　4 白猫
5 最好的医生　　6 艰难的时候

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶police/pəˈliːs / *n.*（常和 the 连用）（总称）警方，警察局

eg：You can ask the **police** for help.
你可以向警方求助。

考向：[易错点]集合名词 police 常用结构“the + police”，police 虽然形式为单数，但意义是复数，作主语时谓语动词要用复数形式。

注：如果要表达单数意义可用 a policeman/policewoman。

eg：The **police** are also looking for the second car. 警方也在寻找第二辆车。

【考题在线 1】—What does your father do, Lily?
—He is _____. His job is to make sure that drivers obey the traffic rules. （襄阳）

A. an actor　　B. a policeman
C. a waiter　　D. a reporter

点拨：actor 演员，policeman 男警察；waiter 侍者，服务员，reporter 记者。根据答语后一句“他的工作是确保司机遵守交通规则。”可得知答案。

❷job/dʒɒb/ *n.* 工作

考向：[辨析]job 与 work

job	是可数名词，常常表示某一项具体的工作。	（宁波中考）Loewy's husband has a very good **job**. 洛伊的丈夫有一份很好的工作。
work	是不可数名词，泛指体力劳动和脑力劳动。	He has a lot of **work** to do. 他有许多工作要做。

【考题在线 2】Sandy wants to have a _____（工作）in the bookshop.

点拨：表示具体的工作用 job。

❸elder /ˈeldə(r)/ *adj.* 年纪较长的

考向：[辨析]elder 与 older

elder	指兄弟姐妹及子女之间的长幼，常作定语	This is my **elder** sister. She is **older** than me. 这是我姐姐。她比我年龄大。
older	是 old 的比较级，泛指新旧、老幼、年龄大小，常作表语	

【注意】elder 还可作名词，意为“年长者”。

eg：You should respect your **elders**.
你应当尊敬你的长辈。

❹far away from… 远离……

eg：They do not live **far away from** the school.
他们住得离学校不远。

考向一：far away 用作表语或状语，away 可以省去，因此，far away 相当于 far；far away from 相当于 far from。far（away）后不接宾语；far（away）from 后一定要接宾语。

eg：They do not live **far away**.
他们住得不远。
We do not live **far from** the park.
我们住得离公园不远。

【考题在线 3】如果她在远处工作，她将会思念她的家人。（益阳）
If she works _____ _____, she will miss her family.

点拨：far away 意为“在远处”，在此处作状语。

考向二：away from 与 far from 的区别：

away from 与 far from 的区别主要在于 far 与 away 的区别：far 是表示较笼统、模糊概念的“远”，其前不能有具体的数字；而 away 是表示具体的“远”，away from 前常有具体数字。

eg：My home is very **far from** the hospital.
我家离医院很远。
My home is 20 kilometres **away from** the hospital. 我家离医院二十公里远。

特色土方法

far away 不接宾语，不加数词
away from 必接宾语，可加数词

❺by train 乘火车

考向一：[辨析]表示乘某种交通工具的 by，in 与 on

by	交通工具前不能用任何冠词，也不能加任何的修饰词。	by bus 乘公共汽车；by bike 骑自行车
in	交通工具前通常有冠词或物主代词修饰，侧重于在里面。	in a car 乘汽车；in a taxi 乘出租车

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

on	交通工具前通常有冠词或物主代词修饰，侧重于平面。	on a bus 乘公共汽车；on a train 乘火车；on a bicycle 骑自行车

拓展 take 与交通工具搭配的用法：take + 限定词 + 交通工具

eg：take the bus/train/subway
乘公交车/火车/地铁

【考题在线 4】 Her mother goes to work _____ bus every morning. (毕节)
A. by B. at C. on D. in

考向二：by 的其他用法

词义	示例
在……旁边	Some old men are fishing **by** the river. 一些老人正在河边钓鱼。
不迟于，在……之前	You must finish the work **by** June. 六月之前你必须完成这项工作。
通过……方式	I learn English **by** listening to the tape. 我通过听磁带学英语。

【考题在线 5】 We can save money _____ cooking our own meals instead of eating outside.
A. by B. to
C. for D. with
点拨：本题用语境判断法。句意为：我们能够通过自己做饭而不是出去吃饭而节约用钱。

6 future/ˈfjuːtʃə(r)/ ***n.*** 将来

考向：[辨析] in the future, in future 与 in the near future

in the future	将来，未来	(福州中考) More Africans can use the solar cookers **in the future**. 未来更多的非洲人可以用太阳能炊具。
in future	以后；今后，相当于 from now on	**In future** we shall all be able to find happiness. 今后我们都将能找到幸福。
in the near future	不久，相当于 soon	**In the near future**, we may not have to wear glasses. 在不久的将来，我们或许不必戴眼镜。

拓展 future 可作形容词，意为“将来的，未来的”，只用作定语。

eg：Keep the book for **future** use.
留着这本书以后用。

7 be sure 确定

eg：**I'm sure** I'm right. 我确信我是对的。

考向一：[难点] be sure 用法

be sure + 从句，“确信……”	We **are sure** he will make great progress this term. 我们确信他这学期会取得巨大进步。
be sure to do sth. “一定会做某事”	We **are sure to** win. 我们一定会赢。
be sure of/about + 动名词或名词，“确信……，对……有把握”	**I'm sure of** that. 我对那件事有把握。

【考题在线 6】 我确信他们会欢迎像我们这样的参观者。
I _____ _____ they will welcome _____ _____ us.

考向二：sure 还可作副词，意为“当然可以”，相当于 certainly。

eg：—May I use your bike?
我可以用你的自行车吗？
—**Sure./Certainly.** 当然可以。

【考题在线 7】 —Would you like to go for a bike ride on Sunday afternoon?
—_____. I haven't been outdoors these days. I can't wait! (白银)
A. Sorry, I can't B. Sure, I'd love to
C. Not at all D. Forget it
点拨：用交际法。句意为：——周日下午你想骑自行车去兜风吗？——我当然愿意。我这些天都没去户外，我迫不及待！

8 be good at 擅长；在……方面做得好，其后可接名词、代词或动名词。

考向：be good at 的同义短语为 do well in，二者可以相互转换。

eg：**Are** you **good at** English? = Do you **do well in** English? 你擅长英语吗？

拓展 be good for 对……有益
be good to sb. 对某人和善

eg：Running **is good for** our health.
跑步对我们的健康有好处。
He **is good to** us. 他对我们很和善。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 8】She is good at speaking English.（找同义句）
A. She speaks English good.
B. Her English speaks good.
C. She do well in speaking English.
D. She does well in speaking English.

⑨artist /ˈɑːtɪst/ *n.* 画家

eg：Paul Sandby was a great English **artist**.
保尔·桑德比是一位伟大的英国画家。

拓展 -ist 是职业类名词后缀，表示“……的人”。pianist 钢琴家；violinist 小提琴家；scientist 科学家

【考题在线 9】A/An _____ can use his drawings to tell about beautiful mountains, the blue sea and many other things.（德州）
A. actor B. scientist C. artist D. doctor
点拨：本题用词义辨析法。actor 演员，scientist 科学家，artist 画家，doctor 医生。根据句意可知，一个能用图画描述美丽的山、蓝色的海洋和其他很多东西的人应该是画家。

⑩sound /saʊnd/ *linking v.* 听起来

考向一：[辨析]（系动词）sound，look，smell，taste 与 feel

sound	听起来	（内江中考）That **sounds** perfect. 那听起来很完美。
look	看起来	He **looks** nice today. 他今天看起来不错。
smell	闻起来	Do these flowers **smell** sweet? 这些花闻起来香吗？
taste	尝起来	The beef **tastes** nice. 牛肉尝起来不错。
feel	摸起来	This kind of silk doesn't **feel** soft. 这种丝绸摸起来并不柔软。

拓展 sound（系动词）+ like（介词），意为“听起来像……”

【考题在线 10】—Do you enjoy Chinese folk songs?
—Yes, the folk songs _____ nice.（福建改编）
A. sound B. smell C. look D. taste
点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：——你喜欢中国民歌吗？——是的，民歌听起来不错。sound 听起来，smell 闻起来，look 看起来；taste 尝起来。

考向二：sound 还可作名词，意为“声音”，可表示自然界的各种声音。
eg：（重庆 B 中考）But if an unknown person enters a home, the camera will send a warning **sound** on the owner's phone.
但是如果一个不认识的人进了家门，照相机将会在主人的手机上发送警告的声音。

⑪sick/sɪk/ *adj.* 生病的；恶心的

考向一：形容词 sick 在句中可作表语或定语。
eg：（山东滨州）At 75, the wife did not ask the husband any more; she was very **sick**.
七十五岁时，妻子没有再问丈夫（那个问题），她病得很厉害。

考向二：[辨析] sick 与 ill

单词	词性 & 词义	用法	特殊用法
sick	形容词，“患病的”	可作定语或表语，作表语时相当于 ill。	作表语，表示“恶心的”时，不可和 ill 互换。
ill	形容词，“有病的”	不作定语，只作表语。	其表示“坏的；不良的”时也可作定语。

eg：The **sick** boy has to stay at home and rest on the bed.
这个生病的男孩只能呆在家里在床上休息。
His grandpa is **ill/sick** in hospital.
他爷爷生病住院了。
He is a man of **ill** repute（名声）.
他是个名声不好的人。

⑫How about ...？相当于 What about...？……呢？常用于询问对方或第三者与情景有关的各种情况。

eg：I want to eat an apple. **How/What about** you?
我想吃一个苹果。你呢？

考向一：[重点] How/What about sb./sth.？中 about 是介词，所以后面的宾语是人称代词的时候，要用宾格。
eg：How/What about her?
她呢？

考向二：[易错点] How/What about doing sth.？“做某事怎么样？”表提建议。about 是介词，所以后面若跟动词则用其动名词形式。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg: How/What about playing football?
踢足球怎么样？

【考题在线 11】—What could I get my father for Father's Day?
—_____ getting him a tie?
A. Why not
B. How about
C. Why don't you
D. Would you like

点拨：本题用语法判断法。A 项与 C 项后接动词原形，D 项后接动词不定式。根据题干中的 getting 可知答案。

考题在线答案

1. B　2. job
3. far away　4. A　5. A
6. am sure; visitors like
7. B　8. D　9. C　10. A　11. B

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞（答案见236页）

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. —What does your father do?
—He has a company. He is the _____（经理）.
2. What are you going to do in the f_____?
3. His o_____ is on the ninth floor of the tall building.
4. —What's your father's _____（职业）?
—He is a doctor.（宿迁）
5. Mary won't go to the cinema with us. She needs to look after her s_____ grandmother.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. —Who is that girl in a blue dress?
—She is my _____（old）sister, Mary.
7. How about _____（sit）under the big tree?
8. My cousin is good at _____（dance）.（徐州）
9. My two brothers are both _____（postman）in the post office.
10. Her father is a famous _____（art）in America.

三、单项选择

11. I want to be _____ police artist. It's _____ interesting job.
A. a; the
B. a; an
C. an; the
D. the; the
12. —How do you like Li Yundi?
—A cool guy! His music _____ really beautiful.
A. tastes　B. sounds
C. smells　D. looks
13. —Where does your uncle work, Jack?
—In a _____ in Paris. He is a policeman.（温州）
A. TV station　B. bookstore
C. post office　D. police station
14. I usually ride _____ bike to school. But this morning, I went to school by _____ bus.（泰安）
A. a; the　B. the; a
C. 不填; a　D. a; 不填
15. My office is about 15 kilometers _____ my home.（江苏泰兴横桥初中月考）
A. far away from　B. far from
C. away from　D. far away

四、按要求完成下列各题

16. There are five people in Wendy's family.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____ people are there in Wendy's family?
17. 我们确信中国梦一定会在不远的将来实现。（根据汉语完成句子）
We _____ _____ the China Dream will come true _____ _____ _____ _____.
18. I'm going to be a football player.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____ you going to _____?
19. He is good at drawing.（改为同义句）
He _____ _____ _____ drawing.
20. What's your father?（改为同义句）
_____ _____ your father _____?
_____ _____ your _____ _____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

Helping each other


课文朗读A

A Simon is looking at the noticeboard of the community centre. Read the notices.

Notices[1]

Dear all,

We are going to have a "helping hands" meeting at the community centre on the afternoon of 5 March.

Do you have any problems? Please look at the **information**[2] **below**[3]. It may help you!

City Garden Community Centre

Are you not **feeling well**[4] these days? **Do not worry.**[5] There are good doctors and nurses here. They will **make you feel**[6] **better**[7]!

Health Centre

Is your washing machine not working? Is there anything wrong with your fridge? Our engineers are here to help with your problems!

Fix-It Club

Are you worrying about what to wear to a party or how to design your home? We have some artists to help. All our group members know a lot about styles and colours. They will be happy to give you some ideas!

Art & Design Group

B Simon is writing about the meeting on his blog. Help him complete his article with the information in Part A.

We are going to have a "helping hands" meeting at the (1) _____ on the afternoon of (2) _____. Some neighbours are there ready to help.

Sometimes people do not feel well. The (3) _____ at the Health Centre will (4) _____. There are also some (5) _____ at the Fix-It Club. People will get help if there is (6) _____ with their washing machine or fridge. The members at the Art and Design Group know a lot about (7) _____. When people do not know (8) _____ or (9) _____, the artists will give them (10) _____.

C How do your neighbours help each other? Prepare notes about it. Then write your article. Use Simon's article as a model.

Self-assessment

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about Simon's neighbours.		

任务

互相帮助

A 西蒙正在看社区中心的公告板。读这些通知。

通知

亲爱的朋友们，

我们三月五日下午将在社区中心举行"援助之手"见面会。

你有问题吗？请看下面的信息。它可能对你有帮助！

城市花园社区中心

这些天你是不是感觉不舒服？别担心。这儿有优秀的医生和护士。他们将会让你感觉好点！

健康中心

你的洗衣机不运转了吗？你的冰箱出毛病了吗？我们的工程师会在这儿帮助解决你们的问题！

修理部

你是不是在担心穿什么去参加聚会或者如何设计你的家？我们有一些艺术家来帮助你。我们所有小组成员对式样和颜色知道很多。他们将会很高兴给你一些建议！

艺术设计小组

B 西蒙正在博客上写关于见面会的事。帮助他用A部分的信息完成他的文章。

我们将要在(1)_____下午在(2)_____举行"援助之手"见面会。在那儿有些邻居准备好帮助人。

有时人们感觉不舒服。健康中心的(3)_____将(4)_____。修理部还有一些(5)_____。如果人们的洗衣机或冰箱(6)_____，他们将得到帮助。艺术设计小组的成员懂得许多有关(7)_____。当人们不懂(8)_____或(9)_____，艺术家将给他们(10)_____。

C 你的邻居们是如何互相帮助的？关于这个准备笔记。然后写你的文章。用西蒙的文章作为一个示例。

自我评估

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论西蒙的邻居们。		

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2 use the new words to talk about how people help each other.		
3 use **will/ shall** or **be going to** to talk about activities in the future.		
4 link the sounds when I speak English.		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____ .

2 用生词谈论人们如何互相帮助。		
3 用 will/shall 或 be going to 来谈论将来的活动。		
4 在我说英语时连读。		

结果：极好！ 好！ 一般！
我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶notice /ˈnəʊtɪs/ ***n.*** 布告，通知

考向：notice 作“通知，布告”讲时为可数名词；notice 作“注意”讲时是不可数名词，常用短语：take no notice of …“不注意……；不理会……”。

eg: There's a **notice** on that gate saying “No parking”.
那扇大门上贴着一则通知，写着“不准停车”。

拓展 notice 还可作动词，意为“注意”。
常用搭配：notice sb. do sth. 注意到某人做某事

eg: Did you **notice** the hat she was wearing?
你注意到她戴的那顶帽子了吗？
I **noticed** him cross the street.
我注意到他过了街道。

❷information /ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃn/ ***n.*** 信息

eg: Here is a useful piece of **information** for you.
这里有条对你有用的信息。

考向：[易错点] information 是不可数名词，表示“一条信息”用 a piece of information；“两条信息”用 two pieces of information；“一些信息”用 some information。

【考题在线 1】 Just search the Internet, and you can get almost all the _____ you need. （白银）
A. informations B. information
C. picture D. story
点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：只上网搜一下，你就能得到你需要的几乎所有的信息。

[辨析] information, message 与 news

information	“信息；消息”，主要强调情报、资料、消息等具体的信息，是不可数名词	You can find some **information** on the Internet. 你能在因特网上找到一些信息。
message	“消息，信息”，常指书面或口头的信息等，是可数名词	I have a **message** for you from your parents. 我给你带来一个你父母的口信。
news	“新闻，报道”，常指从媒体上得到的消息，是不可数名词	The **news** is good. Where did you get it? 这个消息很好，你从哪里得到的？

❸below /bɪˈləʊ/ ***prep.*** 在……下面；***adv.*** 下面

eg: Please do not write **below** this line.
请不要写到这条线下面。

考向一：[辨析] below 与 under

below	只表示在下方或位置低于某物，below的反义词为 above
under	主要表示在正下方，其反义词为over

考向二：below 还可作副词，意为“在下方；在下面”。

eg: The people in the rooms **below** are not very friendly.
楼下房间里的那些人不太友好。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④feel well 感觉身体好

考向：句中 well 是形容词，意为“身体好的，健康的”。

eg：I'm **feeling well** now. 我现在感觉身体很好。

考向：[辨析] well，good，fine 与 nice

well	形容词，用于连系动词后，指身体好	（成都中考）You must take a break, especially if you don't feel **well**. 尤其是如果你感到不舒服，你必须休息一下。
	副词，修饰动词	（重庆 B 中考）Adult bison couldn't look after their baby **well**. 成年野牛不能照顾好它们的幼崽。
good	形容词，在连系动词后作表语或在名词前作定语，用来描述人或物的内在品质。	The book is **good**. 这本书很好。
fine	形容词，通常指天气好，身体好。	What a **fine** day today! 今天是多么晴朗的一天！
nice	形容词，可指天气好，人或物的相貌好，外观好。	It's a **nice** day. 天气很好。 Ann looks very **nice**. 安看起来很漂亮。

【注意】well 还可以用作感叹词。

eg：（枣庄中考）**Well**, I don't quite know how to tell you this, dad ...

哦，我真的不知道怎样告诉你这件事，爸爸……

【考题在线 2】 This kind of T-shirt looks _____ and sells _____ in the markets. （安顺）

A. nice; good　　B. well; well

C. nice; well　　D. good; nice

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。sell 是实义动词，其后用副词 well；look 是系动词，其后跟形容词 nice；look nice 看起来不错。

⑤Do not worry. 别担心。

考向一：此句的使用语境是当对方有事或遇到困难时表示安慰的句子。

eg：**Don't worry**. She will be OK.

别担心。她将会好的。

【考题在线 3】 —I can't find my ID card anywhere. What should I do?

—_____ You can go to the Lost and Found. （辽阳）

A. Don't worry.

B. Come on!

C. Look out!

D. Don't mention it.

点拨：本题用交际法。句意：——我哪儿也找不到我的身份证了。我该怎么办？——别担心。你可以去失物招领处。Don't worry. 别担心。Come on! 加油！Look out! 当心！Don't mention it. 不用谢。根据句意可知道选 Don't worry.。

考向二：worry 作及物动词，意为“使……担心；使……发愁”。worry 作不及物动词，常用搭配为 worry about。

eg：His English **worries** me.

他的英语使我发愁。

Don't **worry about** your baby.

别担心你的宝宝。

【考题在线 4】 You shouldn't w_____ about your mother. She is OK. （阜康）

考向三：[易错点] worry 的形容词是 worried，意为“担心的，着急的”，常用短语 be worried about“担心……”，相当于 worry about。

eg：I **am worried about** my sick friend. = I **worry about** my sick friend.

我为生病的朋友担心。

⑥make sb. do sth. 意为“使某人做某事”。

eg：This story is very funny. It **makes** us **laugh**.

这个故事很有趣，它使我们发笑。

考向：[易错点] make sb. do sth. 中 make 表示“使”，后接动词原形作宾语补足语；make sb. 后还可以接形容词作宾语补足语。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线5】He lost his key. It made him _____ in the cold wind to wait for his wife's return. （重庆）

A. to stay　B. stayed　C. stays　D. stay

点拨：本题考查非谓语动词的用法。make sb. do sth. 表示“使某人做某事”。句意为：他丢失了钥匙，这使他呆在寒风中等待他妻子回来。

7 better /'betə(r)/ ***adj.*** **更好的** ***adv.*** **更好地**

eg：Bill's English is **better** than Tom's.

比尔的英语比汤姆的更好。

考向一：better 在此例句中是形容词 good 的比较级，意为“更好的”，用于两者或两方面之间的比较，最高级是 best“最好的”。

【考题在线6】My grandpa told a good story, but I told a _____ one. （河南）

A. good　B. better　C. best　D. worse

点拨：本题用语境判断法。句意：我的爷爷讲了一个好故事，但是我讲了一个更好的。

考向二：better 还是副词 well 的比较级，意为“更好地”，最高级是 best“最好地”。

eg：She sings **better** than her sister.

她唱得比她的姐姐好。

考向三：[难点] better 本身是比较级，所以不可再用 more 表示比较级或被 more 修饰，但可以用 much, a lot, a little, even 等修饰。

【考题在线7】I am good at math, but his English is _____ than mine. （黄石）

A. much better

B. more better

C. very better

D. pretty better

点拨：句意：我擅长数学，但是他的英语比我的好得多。修饰比较级用 much。

考题在线答案

1. B　2. C　3. A
4. worry　5. D　6. B　7. A

Ⅲ. 写作书案　夺取中考写作20分

“总分总法”写社区生活

1. 总体介绍社区生活
2. 分别介绍社区生活特点
3. 总结评价，表达感受

易错点提示

注意主谓宾、主系表一致

参考词汇和句式

单词	community, helpful, problems, computer, find, lucky, like
短语	community centre, social workers, help ... with ..., all kinds of, at the weekend, something wrong, be ready to, be kind and helpful, share one's different skills
句式	There is/are ... If there is ..., they will/you can ... They help us with ... I'm lucky to ...

典例

Simon 所住的街区有一个社区中心。社区中心能帮助人们解决各种各样的问题。如：修理电脑、冰箱等。请以“The Community Centre in Simon's Neighborhood”为题写一篇 80 词左右的短文。

【范文欣赏】

The Community Centre in Simon's Neighborhood

There's a community centre in Simon's neighborhood. They are like a big family.

There are some social workers in it and they help people with all kinds of problems. They are very helpful. They often have a “helping hands” meeting at the weekend. If there's something wrong with your computer, fridge or something else, you can go and find someone to help you. They are ready to help you.

Simon is lucky to have a community centre like that and he feels happy to live there.

【点评】

作者运用“总分总法”描写了社区生活。1. 总体介绍社区生活（第一段）；2. 分别介绍社区生活特点（第二段：social workers, help people with ..., If ..., ...go and find someone to help you. They are ready to help you.）；3. 总结评价，表达感受（第三段）。

添彩点：

文章使用了本单元新学词汇、短语和句式，体现了作者灵活运用语言的能力；含 if 条件状语从句的复合句等高级句式的运用，提升了文章档次，显示出作者扎实的语言功底。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见236页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. There's a _____(通知) on the wall. What does it say?
2. We can get i_____ in many kinds of ways such as reading newspapers, watching TV and surfing the Internet. (黄石)
3. Look at the pictures _____(下面). Are they beautiful?
4. How many members are there in your _____(组)?
5. Is there _____(任何事) wrong with your new computer?

二、单项选择

6. These kinds of clothes feel _____ and sell _____.

A. good; well
B. good; good
C. well; well
D. well; good

7. —It's raining. I can't go to visit my friends.
—_____ You may go tomorrow.

A. Don't worry.
B. That's good.
C. Good idea.
D. You are welcome.

8. You look tired these days. I think you need a _____ sleep. (重庆)

A. shorter B. shortest
C. better D. best

9. —I'll have a ten-day holiday. But I don't know _____.
—How about Paris? (成都)

A. what to do
B. where to go
C. when to go

10. How time flies! We should show love to our parents and make them _____ how much they mean to us.

A. to know B. knowing
C. knew D. know

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 我们组所有成员对款式和色彩了解很多。
All the members of our _____ know a lot about _____ _____ _____.
12. 每天跑步让我感觉身体好多了。
Running every day _____ _____ _____ _____.
13. 以下信息可能对你有帮助。
The _____ _____ _____ _____ you.
14. 工程师们在这里帮助你们解决问题。
The engineers _____ _____ _____ _____ you _____ your problems.
15. 我们的老师会很高兴给你一些建议。
Our teacher will be happy to _____ _____ _____ _____.

四、选用方框中的词或词组填空

broken, neighbourhood, like, volunteers, all kinds of, lucky, ready to help, at the weekend, problems, check

There is a community centre in our _____[16]. There are some _____[17]. They help people with _____[18] problems. Computer engineers can help you _____[19] your computer. You can also find someone to help you fix your _____[20] bicycle. Usually there is a "helping hands" meeting _____ _____[21]. People go there when they need help with their _____[22]. They are _____[23]. It is _____[24] for us to have a community centre like this. We are _____[25] a big family.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Welcome to Sunshine Town!

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①开门见山法(61 页)　②画龙点睛法(63 页) ③主旨大意法(74 页)　④归纳总结法(75 页)
写作方法	①“三部曲法”写家乡介绍类作文(76 页)
解题方法	1 推理判断法(226 页)　2 联系上下文法(225,226 页) 3 词语应用法(56,58,63,72,75,236 页)　4 短语辨析法(75 页) 5 语法判断法(66 页)　6 词义辨析法(56,74,225,226 页) 7 交际法(225 页)　8 固定句型法(237 页)

学习目标梳理

话题	如何向别人介绍自己的家乡		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	mine *pron.* 我的　nothing *pron.* 没有什么	an old friend of mine 我的一位老朋友 wait a minute 等一会儿 take ... to ... 带……去…… a tin of... 一罐……
	Period 2	quiet *adj.* 安静的;寂静的　air *n.* 空气,大气 fresh *adj.* 新鲜的　local *adj.* 本地的;当地的 underground *n.* 地铁　famous *adj.* 著名的 Western *adj.* 西方的　theatre *n.* 戏院,剧场 miss *vt.* 错过,失去　soon *adv.* 很快,不久	by underground 乘地铁　go shopping 去购物　look forward to 期待　stay in a quiet town 呆在一个安静的镇上 learn more about 了解更多有关……的情况
	Period 3	postcard *n.* 明信片　key *n.* 钥匙;答案;键 ring *n.* 环,圈;戒指　yours *pron.* 你的;你们的 ours *pron.* 我们的　theirs *pron.* 他(或她、它)们的　hers *pron.* 她的	key ring 钥匙扣　all over 遍及
	Period 4	work *n.* 作品,著作　row *vt.* 划(船) hotel *n.* 旅馆　own *vt.* 拥有,所有	work of art 艺术品　row a boat 划船 many more 更多
	Period 5	hometown *n.* 家乡　friendly *adj.* 友好的　raise *vt.* 饲养　grow *vt.* & *vi.* (使)生长,发育;长大,长高　smell *vt.* 嗅,闻到 *n.* 气味 drive *vt* & *vi.* 驾车送(人);驾驶,开(车)	show sb. around 带某人参观 know each other 互相认识 drive sb. to... 开车带某人去…… on the farm 在农场
句型	1. There's nothing ...	……什么也没有。	
	2. Is it enough for ...?	够……吗?	
	3. Maybe we can order ...	或许我们可以点……	
	4. Shall we take them to ...?	我们带他们去……怎么样?	
	5. It takes only 40 minutes by underground.	乘坐地铁仅花费 40 分钟。	
	6. There are lots of things to do ...	……有许多事情可以做。	
	7. Why not ...?	为什么不……?	
	8. We're looking forward to ...	我们期盼……	
语法	名词所有格及物主代词		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

1 An old friend of **mine**[1] is coming to see me, Hobo.
But there's **nothing**[2] in the fridge.
2 Let's go to the supermarket.
Wait a minute … We only have five *yuan*, Eddie.
3 Is it **enough**[3] for **a tin of**[4] dog food?
Of course not!
4 **Maybe**[5] we can **order**[6] a pizza …

课文朗读 Comic strip

Things to do in Sunshine Town

The Class 1, Grade 7 students are planning activities for a group of exchange students from the UK.

Task

Write a script for a video presentation on your hometown.

Welcome to the unit

Exchange students from the UK

A **A group of exchange students from the UK are coming to visit Sunshine Town. Look at the pictures and complete what each person is saying.**

Chinese food films football shopping

1 I like _____.
2 I **enjoy**[7] _____.
3 I love playing _____.
4 I love watching _____.

B **The Class 1, Grade 7 students are suggesting activities for the exchange students. Work in groups and talk about what you can do in your hometown. Use the conversation below as a model.**

Millie: The exchange students are coming. Shall we **take** them **to**[8] the cinema?
Daniel: Sure. We can watch some wonderful films together.
Amy: Shopping is fun. We can take them to the shopping mall too.
Simon: Yes, and I'd like to take the boys to our school's football field. **Sandy**: Shall we invite them to have dinner with us? They can try some Chinese food.
Daniel: Good idea!

课文朗读B

连环漫画

1 霍波，我的一位老朋友将要来看我。
但是冰箱里没有东西了。
2 咱们去超市吧。
稍等……埃迪，我们只有五元钱了。
3 那够买一罐狗食吗？
当然不够！
4 或许我们可以点一份比萨饼……

在阳光镇里做的事情

七年级一班的学生们正在为一群来自英国的交换生们计划一些活动。

任务

为关于你的家乡的录像介绍写一篇稿子。

单元导入

来自英国的交换生

A 一群来自英国的交换生要来参观阳光镇。看图并完成每个人所说的话。

中国食物 电影 足球 购物

1 我喜欢_____。
2 我喜爱_____。
3 我喜爱踢_____。
4 我喜爱看_____。

B 七年级一班的学生正在为交换生们建议活动。分组讨论在你们家乡你们可以做些什么。用下面的会话作为示例。

米莉：交换生要来了。我们带他们去电影院怎么样？

丹尼尔：当然。我们可以一起看一些精彩的电影。

埃米：购物很有趣。我们还可以带他们去购物广场。

西蒙：是的，我想带男孩们去我们学校的足球场。

桑迪：我们邀请他们和我们一起吃饭怎么样？他们可以尝试一些中餐。

丹尼尔：好主意！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶mine /maɪn/ *pron.* 我的

考向：mine 是名词性物主代词，它相当于“形容词性物主代词 + 名词”。

eg：Mary's dress is red, and **mine** is purple. = Mary's dress is red, and **my dress** is purple.
玛丽的连衣裙是红色的，我的是紫色的。

【考题在线1】—Is this dictionary yours, Tim?
—No, _____ is in my desk. （本溪）
A. yours　B. mine　C. his　D. hers
点拨：考查代词的用法。句意：——蒂姆，这本词典是你的吗？——不是，我的在我的课桌里。根据问句可知，是询问 Tim，所以 Tim 作答应用 mine“我的”，mine 相当于 my dictionary。

❷nothing /ˈnʌθɪŋ/ *pron.* 没有什么

考向一：nothing 相当于 not ... anything。

eg：She doesn't do anything. = She does nothing. 她什么也不做。

考向二：[重点] nothing 是复合不定代词，作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

eg：There is **nothing** on the table.
桌子上什么都没有。
Nothing is easy for him.
对他来说，没有什么是容易的。

考向三：[重点] 被形容词所修饰时，形容词放在其后，作后置定语。

eg：There is **nothing wrong** with the machine.
这机器没出什么毛病。

拓展 类似于 nothing 的复合不定代词有：something, somebody, someone 常用于肯定句；anything, anybody, anyone 常用于否定句或疑问句；everything, everybody, everyone 等。

【考题在线2】—Do you have any interesting news to tell us?
—No, _____ much. （荆州）
A. anything　B. nothing
C. something　D. everything
点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：——你有一些有趣的新闻告诉我们吗？——不，没有什么新闻。根据答语“No”可知表示“没有什么新闻”，故选 nothing。

❸enough /ɪˈnʌf/ *adj.* 足够的

考向一：形容词 enough 可修饰名词，作名词的定语。enough 既可修饰可数名词的复数，也可修饰不可数名词。修饰名词时常位于名词的前面。

eg：I don't have **enough time** to do my homework.
我没有足够的时间做我的家庭作业。

考向二：enough 也可作副词，意为“足够地、充分地”。常用于修饰其他副词或形容词，一般置于被修饰词之后。

eg：Lucy sings **well enough**. 露西唱得足够好。

【考题在线3】Cathy checked her paper _____ so that she could get good grades this time. （乌鲁木齐）
A. careful enough　B. enough careful
C. enough carefully　D. carefully enough
点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：为了这次能取得好成绩，凯西足够认真地检查了她的试卷。修饰动词短语 checked her paper 需要用副词 carefully，而 enough 通常放在被修饰形容词或副词之后。

考向三：①be ... enough for 意为“对……足够……了”。

eg：It's big **enough for** ten thousand people.
它足够大，可以容纳一万人。

②be...enough to do sth. 表示“足够……可以做某事”。

eg：I **am** old **enough to go** to school.
我年龄足够大，可以上学了。

❹a tin of ... 一罐……

eg：I'd like **a tin of** dog food. 我想要一罐狗食。

考向一：短语中的 a 可用 one 替代，即：one tin of ...，但 one 比 a 更强调数量。

考向二：可以用于“a + ... + of + 不可数名词”结构的量词还有 piece, slice, cup, glass, bottle, bag 等。

eg：a piece of paper 一张纸
a slice of bread 一片面包（也可以用 piece）
a cup of tea 一杯茶
a glass of milk 一杯牛奶
a bottle of water 一瓶水
a bag of rice 一袋大米

考向三：[重点] 不可数名词表示“量”时的复数只把量词变成其复数形式，其他不变。

eg：two pieces of paper 两张纸
four cups of tea 四杯茶

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5maybe/ ˈmeɪbi / *adv.* 也许

考向：[易错点][辨析]maybe 与 may be

maybe	副词，意为“也许，大概”，不能用作谓语，常位于句首作状语。	**Maybe** you'll have better luck next time. 也许下次你的运气会更好。
may be	为“情态动词 + be”结构，意为“可能是”。be 是动词原形，该结构可用作谓语。	It **may be** my mum's hat. 它可能是我妈妈的帽子。

【考题在线 4】 There _____ no flowers in the garden in winter.

A. may B. may be C. maybe D. be

点拨：本题考查 may be 的用法。may be 意为“可能是，也许是”，其中的 be 是动词原形，在此句中与前面的 There 构成 There be 句型。

速记小筏

一语辨异：She **may be** right, and **maybe** she knows how to solve the problem. 她可能是对的，或许她知道如何解决这个问题。

6order /ˈɔːdə(r) / *vt.* 点(酒菜等)

eg：What shall I **order** for dinner?
我要为晚餐点什么菜呢？

考向一：order 作动词，还可意为“命令，要求”，后接不定式作宾语补足语或接从句。

eg：The policeman **ordered** us to leave the building at once. 那个警察命令我们立即离开这幢大楼。

考向二：order 还可作名词，意为“顺序，命令，订单”等。

eg：Please come to the doctor in **order**.
请按顺序到医生这里来。

拓展 order 的固定短语有：

order sb. (not) to do sth. 命令某人(不要)做某事；
in order 整齐，秩序井然；
out of order 混乱，有故障；
in order to/in order that …为了

eg：He gets up early **in order to** catch the early bus. = He gets up early **in order that** he can catch the early bus.
他早起是为了赶上早班车。

【考题在线 5】 Once you put your school things _____, you'll find them easily. (漳州)

A. in danger B. in order
C. in detail

点拨：考查介词词组辨析。in danger 是“在危险中”；in order 是“按顺序”；in detail 是“详细地”。根据句意：一旦你把学习用品按顺序排好，你就会很容易找到它们。

了解中外饮食文化，培养节约粮食的素养

在讲英语的国家的餐馆用餐，点餐和看菜单是必不可少的事情。一份标准的菜单一般由四部分构成，首先是 Appetizers (开胃汤羹；开胃小菜)，其次是 Entrees (主食)，接下来为 Side Dishes (佐餐菜肴)，最后为 Desserts(甜点)。由于文化习俗的差异，中国人传统概念中的“主食”，如米饭 (steamed rice)、炒面 (fried noodles) 等在西方饮食观念中是“副食”，要在菜单的 Side Dishes 中才能找到，而像炒菜 (stir-fried vegetables)、鱼或肉等则成了“主食”。

中国有“光盘”行动，国外点餐也提倡，厉行节约，反对铺张浪费，应珍惜粮食、吃光盘子中的食物(eat up food)。

【素养行动】在餐厅按需点菜，在食堂按需打饭，在家按需做饭。

【素养行动结果】了解用餐文化，珍惜粮食，节约粮食(save food)。让更多的人远离饥饿。

7enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ *v.* 享受……之乐，喜爱，喜欢；其后接名词、代词或动名词

考向一：[辨析]enjoy，like 与 love

enjoy	意为“喜欢”，侧重于享受其中的乐趣。搭配：enjoy doing sth.	She **enjoys** listening to music. 她喜欢听音乐。
like	意为“喜欢”，指一般意义上的喜欢，不带强烈的感情或迫切的愿望。搭配：like to do sth./ like doing sth.	He **likes** having a walk after supper. 他喜欢晚饭后散步。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

love	意为“喜爱”，带有深厚的、强烈的感情。搭配：love to do sth./love doing sth.	My dad **loves** going to watch football games. 我爸爸爱去看足球赛。

【考题在线 6】大明喜欢听英文歌曲。（enjoy）（潍坊）

_____

考向二：enjoy oneself 意为“过得愉快”，其同义短语为：have a good time 玩得开心，have fun 玩得高兴，其中 oneself 需要随着主语人称的变化而变化。

eg：He **enjoys himself** in China. = He **has a good time** in China. = He **has fun** in China. 他在中国玩得很开心。

【考题在线 7】—Did you enjoy _____ in Chengdu last week?
—Yes, I had great fun there.（德州）
A. myself　　B. yourself
C. ourselves　　D. themselves

点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——上周你在成都玩得高兴吗？——对，我在那里玩得非常高兴。结合答语中的“I had great fun...”可知问的是“你”玩得高兴吗？

⑧take ...to ... 把……带到……

eg：Let's **take** the food **to** my grandparents.
咱们把这些食物带给我的祖父母吧。

考向：[重点] 固定结构 take ...to ...中 to 是介词，可构成短语 take sb. to sp.“带某人去某地”。但若 sp. 为地点副词（here, there, home 等）时，要省略介词 to，即：take sb. sp. 。

eg：Can you **take** my little sister **there**?
你能把我的小妹妹带到那儿吗？

【考题在线 8】Please take your dog _____. You should look after it well.
A. to home　　B. home
C. to here　　D. at here

考题在线答案
1. B　2. B　3. D　4. B　5. B
6. Daming enjoys listening to English songs.
7. B　8. B

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞（答案见 236 页）

一、根据句意及所给提示完成句子

1. Don't forget to o_____ more food.
2. Thank you for your w_____ present. I like it very much.
3. When I was free, I really enjoyed _____ (walk) around the town.（孝感）
4. How many _____ (tin) of Coke do you want to buy?
5. _____（或许）he will come tomorrow.

二、单项选择

6. —Are you feeling better now?
—Yes. I'm _____ to go to school.
A. good enough　　B. enough good
C. well enough　　D. enough well
7. A smile costs _____, but gives so much.（莱芜）
A. something　　B. anything
C. nothing　　D. everything
8. Mr Zhang has visited Shaoxing Museum. I am going to _____ him somewhere else tomorrow.【导学号：1037419】
A. take　　B. bring　　C. push　　D. carry
9. —Hello! This is Daniel. May I speak to Sam?
—_____. He is coming.
A. Sorry　　B. All right
C. Wait a minute　　D. Speaking, please
10. —What does she want?
—She wants a bag like _____.
A. me　　B. my　　C. mine　　D. our

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. ——冰箱里有什么？——什么也没有。
—_____ in the fridge?
—_____.
12. 我想邀请我的一些朋友来我的 20 岁生日聚会。
I would like _____ _____ some of my friends to _____ _____ birthday party.
13. 爸爸有时带我去看电影。
Dad sometimes _____ me _____ the cinema.
14. 你钱包里有多少钱？
_____ _____ _____ do you have in your wallet?
15. 我足够大了，能够照顾自己。
I'm old _____ _____ _____ _____ myself.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

课文朗读A

Reading

A A video about Sunshine Town

The Class 1, Grade 7 students are preparing a video presentation for the exchange students from the UK. Here is their script.

Welcome to Sunshine Town!

There are lots of things to do[1] in Sunshine Town.[2]

Would you like to …

stay in a **quiet[3] town**?

The **air[4]** is **fresh[5]** here. You can see many trees, lakes and green hills. There is also a beautiful park in the town centre. Local people like jogging in the park in the morning. Sunshine Town is not far from the centre of Beijing. It takes only 40 minutes by underground.

go shopping[6]?

There are lots of nice shops in our town. Most things are not expensive. You can buy wonderful presents for your family and friends there.

eat Chinese food?

Beijing duck is very **famous[7]**. Would you like to try some? There are many Chinese restaurants here. If you do not like Chinese food, there are some Western restaurants too.

enjoy Beijing opera?

Why not[8] visit our local theatre and enjoy Beijing opera? If you want to learn more about Chinese art, don't **miss[9]** the opera shows there.

Welcome to our town. **We are looking forward to[10] meeting you soon.[11]**

B A good place to live

B1 The students want to check their script carefully before they make the video. Help them match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1 fresh (line 4) _____

2 local (line 5) _____

3 famous (line 13) _____

4 miss (line 18) _____

5 look forward to (line 20) _____

a not hear, see or have something

阅读

A 一盘关于阳光镇的录像

七年级一班的学生们正在为英国交换生们准备一盘录像介绍。下面是他们的稿子。

欢迎来到阳光镇!

在阳光镇有许多事情可以做。

你想要……

呆在一个安静的镇上?

这儿的空气很新鲜。你可以看到许多树、湖和绿色的小山。镇中心还有一个漂亮的公园。当地人喜欢早晨在公园里慢跑。阳光镇离北京城中心不远。乘地铁只要40分钟。

去购物?

在我们镇有许多好商店。大部分东西都不贵。在那儿你可以给你的家人和朋友买精美的礼物。

吃中餐?

北京烤鸭非常出名。你想尝一些吗?这儿有许多中式餐馆。如果你不喜欢中餐,也有一些西餐馆。

欣赏京剧吗?

为什么不参观我们当地的剧院并欣赏京剧呢?如果你想更多地了解中国艺术,别错过那儿的戏剧演出。

欢迎到我们镇上来。我们期待尽快见到你。

B 一个居住的好地方

B1 学生们想在他们制作录像之前仔细检查他们的稿子。帮助他们把左边的单词与右边的意思搭配起来。把正确的字母写在空格处。

1 新鲜的(第四行) _____

2 地方的(第五行) _____

3 著名的(第十三行) _____

4 错过(第十八行) _____

5 期待(第二十行) _____

a 没听见、没看见或没有某物

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

b very clean or cool
c feel happy because you are going to enjoy something
d known by many people
e in the area near where you live

B2 The students want to send a picture of Sunshine Town to the exchange students. Help them fill in the information. Write the correct letters in the boxes.

a enjoy Beijing opera
b buy wonderful presents
c learn more about Chinese art
d most things are not expensive
e not far from the centre of Beijing
f quiet and beautiful
g some Western restaurants
h try some Chinese food

1 the town	2 the restaurants
3 the shops	4 the local theatre

B3 Neil, one of the exchange students, is making some notes on Sunshine Town. Write a *T* if a sentence is true or an *F* if it is false.

1 Sunshine Town is a quiet town. _____
2 Local people like jogging in the park in the morning. _____
3 There are not many shops in Sunshine Town. _____
4 The things in the shops are nice but expensive. _____
5 You can eat Beijing duck in the town. _____
6 You can learn how to sing Beijing opera in the town. _____

B4 Neil is calling his mum in the UK. His mum is asking him some questions about Sunshine Town. Complete their conversation with the information on page 32.

Mum: Hello, who's speaking?
Neil: Hi, Mum. This is Neil.
Mum: Hi, Neil! How are you? Do you like Sunshine Town?
Neil: Yes. It's beautiful. The air is (1) _____, and there are many trees, lakes and (2) _____.
Mum: Is it far from the centre of Beijing?
Neil: No. It takes only (3) _____ by underground.
Mum: Are there many shops there, Neil?
Neil: Yes. We'll go shopping at Sunshine Shopping Mall. Our friends say most things there are not (4) _____.
Mum: That's good. What's the food like there?
Neil: (5) _____ food is great, and there are some (6) _____ restaurants too.

b 非常干净或凉爽的
c 因为你要享受某事而感到高兴
d 被许多人知道
e 在你所住的地方附近

B2 学生们想给交换生寄一张阳光镇的图片。帮助他们填写信息。把正确的字母写在方框内。

a 欣赏京剧
b 买精美的礼品
c 更多地了解中国艺术
d 大部分东西不贵
e 离北京市中心不远
f 安静且漂亮
g 一些西餐厅
h 尝试一些中国食物

1 城镇	2 餐馆
3 商店	4 地方剧院

B3 尼尔，交换生之一，正在做一些有关阳光镇的笔记。如果句子正确写 T，如果错误写 F。

1 阳光镇是一个安静的城镇。
_____
2 当地人喜欢早晨在公园里慢跑。
_____
3 阳光镇没有许多商店。 _____
4 商店里的东西漂亮但很贵。
_____
5 在镇上你能吃到北京烤鸭。
_____
6 在镇上你可以学唱京剧。 _____

B4 尼尔正在给在英国的妈妈打电话。他妈妈正在问他一些有关阳光镇的问题。用 32 页的信息完成他们的对话。

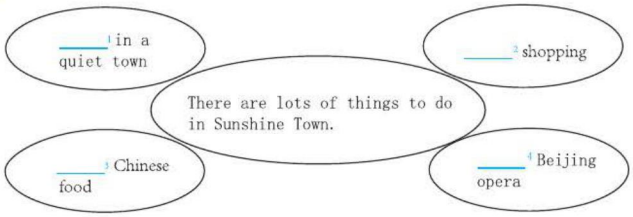
妈妈：你好，是哪位？
尼尔：你好，妈妈。我是尼尔。
妈妈：你好，尼尔！你好吗？你喜欢阳光镇吗？
尼尔：是的。它很美丽。空气(1)_____，还有许多树、湖和(2)_____。
妈妈：它离北京城中心远吗？
尼尔：不远。乘地铁只花费(3)_____。
妈妈：尼尔，那儿有许多商店吗？
尼尔：是的。我们将在阳光购物广场购物。我们的朋友说那儿的大部分东西不是(4)_____。
妈妈：太好了。那儿的食物怎么样？
尼尔：(5)_____食物很好，还有一些(6)_____餐馆。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Mum: What about Beijing opera? I know you want to watch it!
Neil: There's a (7) _____. We can watch Beijing opera there.
Mum: That's nice. Have a good time!
Neil: Thanks, Mum. Bye.
Mum: Goodbye.

妈妈：京剧怎么样？ 我知道你想看！
尼尔：有一个(7)_____。 我们可以在那儿看京剧。
妈妈：好极了。 祝你玩得愉快！
尼尔：谢谢妈妈。 再见。
妈妈：再见。

课文结构梳理



答案：1.stay 2.go 3.eat 4.enjoy

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶There are lots of things to do ...
……有许多事情可以做。

考向一：此句为“There be + 名词 + to do ...”，表示“有……可做”。句中的 lots of things to do 中 to do 为动词不定式修饰前面的名词 things，作后置定语，且两者之间是逻辑上的动宾关系，表示要做的事。

eg: There is too much homework to do every day.
每天有很多作业要做。

考向二：常用句型“There be + 主语 + 动词的-ing 形式 + ...”，表示“有……正在做……”，动词的-ing形式作后置定语，且主语与后面的动词是逻辑上的主谓关系，即这个动作是前面的主语发出的。

eg: There are many people playing in the park.
有许多人正在公园里玩。

❷开门见山法：此句是全文的中心句，起到总领全文的作用，以下几个方面内容(Would you like to stay in a quiet town / go shopping / eat Chinese food / enjoy Beijing opera?)的展开都是围绕这一句进行的。我们在写介绍类文章的时候，要注意可先总写，然后分点一一介绍。

❸quiet /ˈkwaɪət/ *adj.* 安静的；寂静的

eg: Be **quiet**, please! 请安静！

考向：形容词 quiet 的反义词是 noisy，意为“嘈杂的”，副词是 quietly。quiet 既可作表语，也可作定语。quiet 可以用来形容人，也可用来形容街道安静或海面风平浪静等。固定短语有：keep / be quiet 保持安静；a quiet place 一个安静的地方。

❹air /eə(r)/ *n.* 空气

eg: Trees help clean the **air**.
树木帮助清洁空气。

考向一：air 为不可数名词，air 还有“天空”之意，前面一般加 the。常用短语有：fresh air 新鲜空气；in the open air 在户外。

考向二：air 还表示飞机飞行的“空中”。

eg: by air 乘飞机，相当于 by plane 或 in a plane。

拓展 由 air 构成的派生词有：airport 机场；airplane 飞机

❺fresh /freʃ/ *adj.* 新鲜的

eg: The meat is not very **fresh**.
这肉不是很新鲜。

考向：fresh 还可作“新的；没有经验的”讲。

eg: Is there any **fresh** news?
有什么新消息吗？
He is a **fresh** hand in planting the flowers.
种花方面他是个新手。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 1】 I like hiking in the forest because the air is pretty _____. （青岛）
A. free　B. dirty　C. polluted　D. fresh
点拨：free 自由的，空闲的；dirty 脏的；polluted 污染的；fresh 新鲜的。根据句意“我喜欢在森林里徒步旅行，因为那里的空气非常清新。”可知答案。

6 go shopping 去购物

eg：Let's **go shopping** after school.
放学后咱们去购物吧。

考向：go shopping 是“go + 动名词”结构，表示“去做某事”，尤指一些户外活动。该结构可与同义短语“do some + 动名词”结构相互转换。类似结构的词组有：go swimming 去游泳；go boating 去划船；go running 去跑步；go walking 去散步；go skating 去滑冰；go hiking 去远足

【考题在线 2】 The boy and his father go _____ (swim) every weekend. （镇江）

7 famous /ˈfeɪməs/ *adj.* 出名的，著名的

考向：[重点] **famous** 的常用短语有：**be famous for** 因……而著名，**for** 后接著名的原因；**be famous as** 作为……而著名，**as** 后接职业、身份或地位。

速记小筏
一语辨异：**Zhou Runfa is famous as** a movie star. He **is famous for** his fine acting.
周润发是一位著名的影星，他因演技精湛而出名。

【考题在线 3】 The great artist _____ his amazing use of colors and shapes. （因……而闻名） （云南）

8 Why not ...? 为什么不……?

考向：此句型为表示建议的交际用语，“Why not ...?”表示“为什么不……呢?”相当于“Why don't you ...?”，其后跟动词原形，用于向别人提出建议。

eg：It is fine today. **Why don't you** go climbing? = It is fine today. **Why not** go climbing?
今天天气好，为什么不去爬山呢?

拓展 表示建议的句型：You'd (You had) better do sth. 你最好做某事。否定式：You'd better not do sth. 你最好不要做某事。
You should do sth. 你应该做某事。
How/What about ...? ……怎么样?
Shall we do sth.? 我们做某事好吗?
Let's do sth. 咱们做某事吧。

eg：You'd better not watch too much TV.
你最好不要看太多的电视。
You should ask the teacher first.
你应该先问问老师。
What/How about going boating?
去划船怎么样?
Shall we go to the zoo? 我们去动物园好吗?
Let's go to the cinema tonight!
咱们今天晚上去看电影吧!

【考题在线 4】 It's sunny today. Why not _____ (go) for a picnic? （新疆改编）

9 miss /mɪs/ *vt.* 错过，失去

考向：miss 为及物动词，后接名词、代词或动名词。

eg：I **missed** the first bus.
我未赶上第一班公交车。
I don't want to **miss** watching the TV play.
我不想错过看那部电视剧。

拓展 miss 的其他用法

动词	意为“想念，怀念”。	The girl **misses** her parents very much. 这个女孩非常想念她的父母。
名词	首字母大写，意为“小姐”，指未婚女子，常用于姓氏的前面。	**Miss** Smith is our teacher. 史密斯小姐是我们的老师。

10 look forward to 盼望，期待

look forward to 意为“盼望，期待”，后跟名词、代词或动名词等。

eg：Mary is **looking forward to visiting** her grandmother.
玛丽正期待着拜访她的奶奶。

考向一：look forward to 后跟名词（性短语）

【考题在线 5】我们正盼望着暑假呢。
We _____ the summer holiday. （北京）
点拨：look forward to 盼望。本题要注意时态，由“正盼望着”可知要用现在进行时。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向二:[重点]look forward to 中 to 为介词,后跟动名词。

【考题在线 6】孩子们正盼望着在端午节吃粽子。
Children are _____ _____ _____ _____ rice dumplings at the Dragon Boat Festival. (淮安改编)

点拨:本题用词语应用法。固定短语 look forward to"盼望",因为有 are,所以用现在进行时。

⓫画龙点睛法:本句用在文章的结尾,表明了作者的心情。人们在写这类文章时,经常用这样的句子来表达自己的态度。

考题在线答案
1. D 2. swimming
3. is famous for 4. go
5. are looking forward to
6. looking forward to eating/having

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见236页)

一、根据句意及所给提示完成句子

1. Visitors to Yangzhou can enjoy a bite of _____ (当地的) dishes at Yechun Tea House. (扬州)
2. Many people in big cities go to work by u_____.
3. I believe your dreams will come true _____ (不久).
4. My mother often goes to the t_____ to enjoy Beijing opera.
5. This is a very _____ (安静的) place. You can have a rest here.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. My mother often goes _____ (shop) at weekends.
7. There are not many _____ (west) restaurants in our city.
8. There are a lot of places _____ (visit) in Beijing.
9. It is raining outside. Why not _____ (take) an umbrella with you? (兰州)
10. If it _____ (not rain) this Sunday, we will go swimming.

三、单项选择

11. Don't _____ the beginning of the party. It's very special.
A. catch B. miss
C. watch D. play

12. Sanya is famous _____ its beautiful beaches.
A. of B. for
C. as D. between

13. —Do you enjoy _____ a volunteer (志愿者)?
—If you want _____ this, you'd better join us. (日照)
A. being; knowing
B. to be; knowing
C. being; to know
D. to be; to know

14. It usually takes me 10 minutes _____ to school every day. (遂宁)
A. to get B. get C. gets D. getting

15. —_____ try some Shandong food for dinner today?
—Good idea! (江苏扬州江都宜陵中学月考)
A. Why not B. Why don't
C. Why not to D. Why not we

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 不要总看电视。何不出去打篮球?
Don't watch TV all the time. _____ _____ go out and play basketball?

17. 没关系,我们可以教你唱京剧。
Never mind. We can teach you _____ _____ Beijing opera.

18. 我真的非常期待在下次聚会见到您。(烟台)
I'm really _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ at the next gathering.

19. 他的房子离我们的不远。
His house _____ _____ _____ _____ ours.

20. 如果你想更多地了解中国艺术,不要错过那里的歌剧表演。
If you want to _____ _____ _____ Chinese art, _____ _____ the opera shows there.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Noun + 's

- We usually add 's to a singular noun to express the idea of belonging.
  I would like to take the boys to our school's football field.
- We add ' to a plural noun ending in -s.
  The exchange students' homes are in the UK.
- We add 's to plural nouns that do not end in -s.
  children's people's men's women's
- We often use 's with names.
  Neil's mother is calling him from the UK.

> **TIP**
> When a name ends in -s, we also add 's.
> Charles's car

Presents for the students

The students have some presents for the exchange students, but their things got mixed up. Mr Wu is asking Amy which things belong to which people. Help Amy complete the answers.

Daniel
Kitty
Millie

1 Whose postcards are these? They're Millie's .
2 Whose cap is this? It's _____.
3 Whose T-shirt is that? It's _____.
4 Whose **key**[1] ring is that? It's _____.
5 Whose pencils are those? They're _____.

B Possessive adjectives and pronouns

We use possessive adjectives and pronouns to express the idea of belonging.
There are lots of nice shops in our town.
An old friend of mine is coming to see me.

		Possessive adjective	
I	love	my	toys.
You		your	
We		our	
They		their	
He	loves	his	
She		her	
It		its	

语法

A 名词 + 's

- 我们通常在单数名词后加 's 来表达所属的概念。
  我想带男孩们去我们学校的足球场。

- 我们在以-s 结尾的复数名词后加 '。
  交换生的家在英国。
- 我们在不以-s 结尾的复数名词后加 's。
  孩子们的 人们的 男人们的 妇女们的
- 我们经常在名字后加 's。
  尼尔的妈妈正从英国给他打电话。

> 提示
> 当名字是以-s 结尾时，我们也加 's。
> 查尔斯的小汽车

给学生们的礼物
学生们为交换生准备了一些礼物，但是他们的东西混在一起了。 吴老师正在问埃米哪样东西属于谁。 帮助埃米完成回答。

丹尼尔
基蒂
米莉

1 这些是谁的明信片？ 它们是 米莉的 。
2 这是谁的帽子？ 它是_____。
3 那是谁的 T 恤衫？ 它是_____。
4 那是谁的钥匙环？ 它是_____。
5 那些是谁的铅笔？ 它们是_____。

B 形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词
我们用形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词来表达所属概念。
我们镇上有许多好商店。
我的一位老朋友要来看我。

		形容词性物主代词	
我	喜欢	我的	玩具。
你(们)		你(们)的	
我们		我们的	
他们		他们的	
他	喜欢	他的	
她		她的	
它		它的	

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

	Possessive pronoun
They are	mine.
	yours.
	ours.
	theirs.
	his.
	hers.

TIP

The possessive adjective **its** does not have an apostrophe (’). Note that it’s means “it is”.

Whose books are they?

The students have some new books from the bookshop, but their books are mixed up. Look at the picture below and complete their conversation.

Daniel: Look at (1) __our__ books. They’re all over the place.

Millie: Are those (2) _____ books, Amy?

Amy: No, they aren’t (3) _____. They’re Sandy’s. (4) _____ book is under Sandy’s chair.

Sandy: Yes. And (5) _____ is here too, Simon.

Simon: What about that book, Sandy? Is it (6) _____?

Sandy: No. It’s Millie’s.

Daniel: Oh yes, it’s (7) _____, and here is (8) _____ book. It’s next to Amy’s pencil case.

Work out the rule!

We _____ (need, do not need) to put a noun after a possessive pronoun.

	名词性物主代词
它们是	我的。
	你(们)的。
	我们的。
	他们的。
	他的。
	她的。

提示

形容词性物主代词“its”没有撇号(’)。注意“it’s”是“it is”的意思。

它们是谁的书?

学生们从书店买了一些新书,但是他们的书混在了一起。看下面的图片,完成他们的会话。

丹尼尔:看(1)__我们的__书。它们到处都是。

米莉:埃米,那些是(2)_____书吗?

埃米:不,它们不是(3)_____。它们是桑迪的。(4)_____书在桑迪的椅子下面。

桑迪:是的。西蒙,(5)_____也在这儿。

西蒙:桑迪,那么那本书呢?它是(6)_____吗?

桑迪:不,它是米莉的。

丹尼尔:哦,是的,它是(7)_____,这儿的是(8)_____书。它在埃米的铅笔盒旁边。

总结规律!

我们_____(需要,不需要)在名词性物主代词后加名词。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 key /kiː/ *n.* 钥匙

eg: You can turn the **key** and open the door.
你可以转动钥匙,打开门。

考向一:key 的其他用法

名词	键	A piano has black and white **keys**. 钢琴上有黑白键。
	答案;题解	Check your answer in the **key** at the back of the book. 用书后的解答核对答案。
形容词	关键的;最重要的	Do you know the **key** word of this sentence? 你知道这个句子的关键词吗?

考向二:key 的常用短语有:key ring 钥匙环;the key to …… 的钥匙;the key to the answer 问题的答案

【考题在线1】Whose _____ (钥匙环) are these?

点拨:“钥匙环”的英文为 key ring。由 are 可知用复数形式。

【考题在线2】你有这门上的钥匙吗?

Do you have _____ _____ _____ the door?

考题在线答案

1. key rings 2. the key to

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点1：名词所有格

考向一：名词所有格用来表示人或物的所属关系。构成：(1)“’s”形式的所有格。(2)of形式的所有格。

考向二：[重点]名词所有格的用法点拨

(1)“’s”形式的所有格

“’s”形式的所有格是用来表示有生命的人或物的所属关系。

①大多数表示有生命的人或物的单数名词，在其后加“’s”。

eg：Sam's brother is playing computer games.
萨姆的弟弟正在打电脑游戏。

②以-s结尾的表示有生命的人或物的复数名词，只在s后加“’”。

eg：Today is September 10th, Teachers' Day.
今天是九月十日，教师节。

③不以-s结尾的复数名词，在其后加“’s”。

eg：June 1st is Children's Day.
六月一日是儿童节。

【考题在线1】 Tomorrow is _____. The students want to buy some flowers for their teachers. （钦州）

A. Teacher Day
B. Teacher's Day
C. Teachers' Day
D. the Teachers Day

点拨：本题用**语法判断法**。考查名词所有格。教师节是所有教师的节日，因此用复数形式的所有格。


方法真题练：语法判断法

④表示几个人共同拥有，只在最后一个词后加“’s”。

eg：This is Mike, Daniel and Lily's classroom.
这是迈克、丹尼尔和莉莉的教室。

【考题在线2】 The woman in a hat is _____ aunt. （北部湾）

A. Jack and John
B. Jack's and John
C. Jack's and John's
D. Jack and John's

点拨：考查名词的所有格用法。句意：这位戴帽子的女士是杰克和约翰的婶婶。说明这位女士是他们共同的婶婶，表示共同所有直接在最后一个名词后加’s。

⑤表示每个人各自拥有在每个名词后加“’s”。

eg：Sandy's and Millie's bags are green.
桑迪和米莉的书包是绿色的。

【考题在线3】 _____ fathers can't go to the class meeting because they are busy. （威海）

A. Jack and Mike's
B. Jack's and Mike's
C. Jack and Mike
D. Jack's and Mike

点拨：考查名词所有格的用法。句意为：杰克和迈克的爸爸不能去开班会，因为他们很忙。如果表示两个人共同的父亲，最后一个人名用所有格形式；如果表示各自的父亲，那么每一个人名都要用所有格形式。根据fathers可知，此处指杰克和迈克各自的父亲。

⑥一个被名词所有格修饰的词，如果前面已经提到，后面往往可以省略，避免重复。

eg：This is not my desk. It's Lily's (desk).
这不是我的书桌。它是莉莉的(书桌)。

【考题在线4】 —_____ bookcase is this?
—It must be _____. （安顺）

A. Who's; Tom
B. Who's; Tom'
C. Whose; Tom's
D. Whose; Tom

点拨：考查特殊疑问词和名词所有格的用法。who“谁”；whose“谁的”，起到形容词性物主代词的作用，其后可以跟名词。句意为：“这是谁的书架？”“它一定是汤姆的。”本题中Tom's可代指汤姆的书架。

⑦在表示商店，家宅等地点时，名词所有格后面常常不出现它所修饰的名词。

eg：Many people are waiting at the doctor's.
许多人正在诊所里等着。

⑧’s还可用在表示时间、距离、国家、城市等的名词之后构成所有格。

eg：It's about twenty minutes' walk.
大约步行二十分钟的路程。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线5】—How far is it from Chongqing to Guiyang?
—It's about two _____ ride by high-speed train. (重庆B)
A. hour
B. hour's
C. hours
D. hours'
点拨:考查名词所有格。句意:——重庆到贵阳距离多远?——坐高铁大概两个小时的车程。应该用复数名词所有格。

(2)of形式的所有格
of形式的所有格是用来表示无生命事物名词的所属关系,常用"of+名词"来表示。
eg:This is the best of all choices.
这是所有选择中最好的一个。

(3)双重所有格。's结构和of结构一起构成双重所有格。
eg:Mr Li is a friend of my father's.
李先生是我父亲的一位朋友。
[难点]表示有生命的人或事物的名词的所有格也可以用of形式的所有格来表示,特别是在名词有较多或较长的定语时,常用of表示所有关系。
eg:It's the dog of the eight-year-old girl.
它是那个八岁女孩的狗。

考点2:物主代词

考向一:物主代词可分为形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。形容词性物主代词后面一定要接名词;名词性物主代词独立使用,无需后接名词。物主代词的分类:

人称	单数		复数	
	形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词	形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词
第一人称	my	mine	our	ours
第二人称	your	yours	your	yours
第三人称	his, her, its	his, hers, its	their	theirs

特色土方法

形容词性物主代词变名词性物主代词口诀:
一变、二同、四s
一变:my—mine
二同:his—his its—its
四s:your—yours
her—hers
our—ours
their—theirs

考向二:[重点]物主代词的用法点拨

(1)形容词性物主代词不能单独使用,一般位于名词前,作定语。
eg:Is this your car?
这是你的小汽车吗?

【考题在线6】There are many good teachers in _____ school. (武威)
A. we B. him
C. our D. themselves
点拨:句意:在我们学校有很多好老师。"我们的学校"要用形容词性物主代词our修饰名词school。

(2)名词性物主代词相当于名词,在意义上相当于"形容词性物主代词+名词"。名词性物主代词在句子中可作主语、宾语、表语等。
eg:This is my bike. Hers is there.
这是我的自行车,她的在那儿。

【考题在线7】—Hi, Anna. Are these your sister's pencils?
—Oh, no. They're not _____. (黄石)
A. her B. him
C. hers D. his
点拨:句意:——嗨,安娜。这些是你姐姐的铅笔吗?——哦,不是的。它们不是她的。空格后没有名词,故应填名词性物主代词。由sister's知应为hers。

考题在线答案
1.C 2.D 3.B 4.C 5.D 6.C 7.C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见237页）

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Oh dear! My iPhone doesn't work. Would you please lend me _____ (you)? （泰州）
2. Betty and Kitty are twin sisters. _____ (they) mother often dresses them in colorful clothes.
3. Their house is just like our house, but _____ (we) has a bigger balcony. （徐州）
4. Who gives _____ (he) the English book?
5. _____ (she) mother is ill. She will take _____ (she) to hospital.
6. Do you buy any presents for your father on _____ (father) Day?
7. This bedroom is for my father and mother. It's my _____ (parent).
8. I'll come back in three _____ (day) time.
9. Thanks for all the _____ (member) hard work! More and more people have learned how to keep kids from danger now. （南京）
10. The books on the shelf are that _____ (visit). （扬州）

二、单项选择

11. —Excuse me! Is this _____ new house?
—Yes, it's _____. The parents of them bought it last September. （安顺）
A. Lucy and Lily's; theirs
B. Lucy's and Lily's; them
C. Lucy's and Lily's ; theirs
D. Lucy and Lily's; them

12. We usually have a seven _____ holiday every National Day. （盘锦）
A. days　　B. day'
C. day's　　D. days'

13. —Is this your dictionary, Jean?
—No, it's not mine. It's _____. （河池）
A. she
B. her
C. hers
D. herself

14. My friend Jenny often helps _____ with _____ English. （宜宾）
A. I; me
B. me; my
C. my; me
D. I; my

15. The online shop sells _____ shoes at a very low price. （天水）
A. child and men's
B. children and men's
C. children's and men
D. children's and men's

16. —Do you like watching ping-pong matches?
—Yes, and _____ favorite ping-pong player is Ma Long. （重庆）
A. we　　B. us　　C. our　　D. ours

17. —Is that _____ model plane?
—Yes, it's _____. My sister sent it to me. （南充）
A. your; my　　B. your; mine
C. you; me　　D. yours; mine

18. —I can't find my eraser. May I use _____?
—Of course. （福州）
A. you　　B. your　　C. yours

19. Paul went to the bookstore with some friends of _____. （临沂）
A. he　　B. him
C. himself　　D. his

20. —What's your _____ favourite subject?
—_____ favourite subject is English. （江苏大丰实验初中月考）
A. sister; Her　　B. sister's; Her
C. sister; She　　D. sister's; She

三、根据汉语完成句子

21. 你们的教室比他们的大。
_____ classroom is bigger than _____.

22. ——你去哪儿？
——我去我叔叔家。
—Where are you going?
—I'm going to _____ _____.

23. 从我家到学校大约有步行五分钟的路程。
It's about _____ _____ _____ from my home to my school.

24. 这是我家的一张照片。
This is _____ _____ _____ _____ _____.

25. 他是我妈妈的一名学生。
He is _____ _____ _____ _____ _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A A day at the Palace Museum

A1 The exchange students want to visit the Palace Museum. They are reading a poster about it. Here is the poster.

The shows at the Palace Museum

Come to the Palace Museum! There are many things to see here. Don't miss them.

Taihe Palace — the golden throne

Baohe Palace —**works of art**[1]

Huangji Palace — Chinese paintings

… and **many more**[2]

You can learn all about China's history at the museum!

A2 Neil is writing down information about the Palace Museum. Read the poster in Part A1 and complete part of the table below.

Time	Place	Things to see
	Taihe Palace	the golden throne
	Zhonghe Palace	
	Baohe Palace	
	Huangji Palace	
	Fengxian Palace	

A3 The exchange students are at the Palace Museum. Listen to the tour guide's introduction to the Palace Museum. Then complete the table in Part A2.

课文听力A3音频及材料

A4 Neil is making some notes, but there are some mistakes in them. Listen to the guide again. Help Neil underline the mistakes and write the correct answers in the blanks.

1 See the golden throne in Taihe Palace at 10 p. m.

_____

2 Go to Zhonghe Palace at 10:13 a. m. _____

3 Go to Huangji Palace to see works of art at 11 a. m.

_____

4 See Chinese paintings in Baohe Palace at 1 p. m.

_____

5 See clocks and lamps in Fengxian Palace at 2:30 p. m. _____

综合技能

A 在故宫的一天

A1 交换生想去参观故宫。他们正在阅读关于故宫的一张海报。下面是海报。

在故宫的展览

来故宫吧！这儿有许多东西可以看。不要错过它们。

太和殿——金銮宝座

保和殿——艺术品

皇极殿——中国画

……以及更多的

你在博物馆里可以了解关于中国历史的全部！

A2 尼尔正在写有关故宫的信息。读A1部分的海报，完成下面表格的一部分。

时间	地点	要看的东西
	太和殿	金銮宝座
	中和殿	
	保和殿	
	皇极殿	
	奉先殿	

A3 交换生正在故宫。听导游对故宫的介绍。然后完成A2部分的表格。

A4 尼尔正在做一些笔记，但是在他的笔记中有一些错误。再听一遍导游的介绍。帮助尼尔在错误的内容下面画线并把正确的答案写在空格处。

1 在下午10：00看太和殿的金銮宝座。_____

2 在上午10：13去中和殿。_____

3 在上午11：00去皇极殿看艺术品。

_____

4 在下午1：00看保和殿的中国画。

_____

5 在下午2：30看奉先殿的钟和灯。

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B Speak up: What time shall we meet?

Simon is inviting Neil to Beihai Park. Work in pairs and make plans for a visit. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Simon: Would you like to go to Beihai Park tomorrow?
Neil: OK. What can we do there?
Simon: We can **row**[3] a boat on the lake.
Neil: That's great! What time shall we meet?
Simon: Let's meet in front of your hotel at 8:30 tomorrow morning.
Neil: That's fine. **How far**[4] is it from the hotel?
Simon: It's about 40 minutes by bus.
Neil: OK. We'll have a good time there!

Study skills

Stress in sentences

When we speak English, we often stress important words, e.g. nouns, main verbs, adjectives and adverbs. We do not usually stress less important words, e.g. articles, prepositions, pronouns or conjunctions.

My **aunt** is a **teacher** in a **middle school**.
Mr Lin is going to **visit** the **USA next month.**
However, the words are not equally important. We can stress some of the words to show that they are more important information.
Mr Li owns a four-bedroom flat. (It is Mr Li that owns a four-bedroom flat.)
Mr Li **owns** a four-bedroom flat. (He does not rent the flat from others.)
Mr Li owns a **four-bedroom** flat. (It is a four-bedroom flat, not another kind of flat.)
Mr Li owns a four-bedroom **flat**. (It is a flat, not a house.)

A Listen to the following conversation. Pay attention to the stressed words.

课文朗读A

Millie: Where are you going, Daniel?
Daniel: I'm going to the bookshop.
Millie: What are you going to buy?
Daniel: My pen is broken. I want to buy a new one.
Millie: I need some exercise books. Can I go with you?
Daniel: Sure.

B Read the sentences below. Stress the different words according to the meanings you want to express.

1 I **want**[5] to buy a CD at the bookshop.
a I am talking about what I want to do, not what I do not want to do.
b I am talking about a bookshop, not another kind of shop.
c I am talking about a CD, not something else.

B 大声说：我们什么时候见面呢？
西蒙正在邀请尼尔去北海公园。两人一组制订参观计划。用下面的会话作为示例。
西蒙：明天你想去北海公园吗？
尼尔：好的。我们可以在那儿做什么呢？
西蒙：我们可以在湖上划船。
尼尔：好极了！我们什么时候见面呢？
西蒙：我们明天上午八点半在你的宾馆前见面吧。
尼尔：好的。它离宾馆有多远？
西蒙：乘公共汽车大约40分钟。
尼尔：好的。我们将在那儿玩个痛快！

学习技能

句子的重音

当我们讲英语时，我们经常重读重要的单词，如：名词、主要的动词、形容词和副词。我们通常不重读次要的单词，如：冠词、介词、代词或连词。
我婶婶是一所中学的教师。
林先生将在下个月访问美国。
然而，单词不都是同等重要的。我们可以重读一些单词来表明它们是比较重要的信息。
李先生拥有一套四个卧室的公寓。（是李先生拥有一套四个卧室的公寓。）
李先生拥有一套四个卧室的公寓。（他不是从别人那儿租来的公寓。）
李先生拥有一套四个卧室的公寓。（它是一套四个卧室的公寓，不是另一种公寓。）
李先生拥有一套四个卧室的公寓。（它是一套公寓，不是一座房子。）

A 听下面的对话。注意重读的单词。
米莉：丹尼尔，你要去哪儿？
丹尼尔：我要去书店。
米莉：你要买什么？
丹尼尔：我的钢笔坏了。我想买一支新的。
米莉：我需要一些练习本。我可以和你一起去吗？
丹尼尔：当然可以。

B 读下面的句子。根据你想表达的意思重读不同的单词。
1 我想在书店买一张CD。
a 我在谈论我想做什么，而不是我不想做的。
b 我在谈论书店，而不是其他类型的商店。
c 我在谈论一张CD，而不是其他什么东西。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2 Daniel sometimes watches TV on Sunday morning.
a I am talking about watching TV, not another activity.
b I am talking about Daniel, not another student in the class.
c I am talking about Sunday morning, not another morning.

2 丹尼尔有时在周日上午看电视。
a 我在谈论看电视，而不是另一种活动。
b 我在谈论丹尼尔，而不是班上的另一个学生。
c 我在谈论周日上午，而不是别的上午。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶works of art 艺术品

eg: His father enjoys **works of art**.
他的父亲喜爱艺术品。

考向：短语 works of art 中 work 是可数名词，意为“著作；作品”，复数为 works。

eg: the works of Shakespeare 莎士比亚的著作

拓展 work 还可表示：

不可数名词，“工作”	He is looking for **work** now. 他现在正在找工作。
不及物动词，“工作，干活”	She **works** in a factory. 她在一家工厂工作。

【考题在线 1】There are lots of fine _____ of _____ there.
A. work; art　　B. works; art
C. work; arts　　D. works; arts

点拨：works of art 艺术品，work 作“作品”讲时，是可数名词，art 作“艺术，美术”讲时，是不可数名词，故本题选 B。

❷many more 更多

eg: There are **many more** cars on the road at the weekend. 周末，路上的车更多。

考向：[辨析] many more 与 much more

词条	用法		示例
many more	两者都表示“更多”，都可修饰名词。	后接可数名词复数，有时省略名词。many more 不能修饰形容词和副词。	We need **many more** people to do the work and the work will cost **much more** money too. 我们需要更多的人来做这项工作，这项工作也将花费更多的钱。
much more		后接不可数名词，也可省略名词。much more 后跟多音节形容词和副词，表示“更加”。	

❸row /rəʊ/ *vt.* 划（船）

eg: I don't know how to **row** a boat.
我不知道怎样划船。

考向一：动词 row 常用短语：row a boat“划船”。

考向二：row 还可作名词，意为“排；行；列”。

eg: My friend, Jack, sits in the second **row**.
我的朋友杰克坐在第二排。

❹how far 意为“多远”，用于对距离进行提问

eg: —**How far** is it from here to the park?
从这里到那个公园有多远？
—It is two kilometers. 两千米远。

考向：[辨析] how far, how long 与 how soon

how far	“多远”，对距离提问	**How far** is it from Beijing to Shanghai? 北京到上海有多远？
how long	“多长时间”，用“For ...”或“Since ...”回答	—**How long** have you lived here? 你在这儿住了多长时间？ —Since I was born. 自从我出生以来。
how soon	“多久”，多用于将来时，用“in + 一段时间”回答	—**How soon** will they come back? 他们要过多久才回来？ —They'll come back in two weeks. 他们两周之后回来。

【考题在线 2】—_____ is it from the Children's Palace to Nanjing South Railway Station, Tom?
—About 10 minutes' ride by bus. （南京）
A. How soon　　B. How long
C. How far　　D. How much

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——从少年宫到南京南火车站有多远，汤姆？——乘坐公交车大概10分钟车程。How soon 多久，用于将来时，回答用 in + 一段时间；How long 多长，对时间或长度提问；How far 多远，对距离提问；How much 多少，对不可数名词或价格提问。根据答句“About 10 minutes' ride by bus.”可知问句是对距离提问。

⑤**want** /wɒnt/ *v.* 要，想要

eg：I **want** to be a policeman in the future.
将来我想成为一名警察。

考向：与 would like 同义，其后可接名词、代词、动词不定式等。其固定搭配有：

①want sth. 想要某物

eg：They want good jobs. 他们想要好的工作。

②want to do sth. 想（要）做某事

eg：I want to go to Kunming for my holiday.
我想要去昆明度假。

③want sb. to do sth. 想要某人做某事，其否定形式为 want sb. not to do sth. 。

eg：His wife wants him to repair their son's bicycle. 他的妻子想要他修理儿子的自行车。

【考题在线3】I would like to go for a walk this afternoon.（改为同义句）I _____ _____ _____ for a walk this afternoon.

点拨：would like to do sth. 相当于 want to do sth. 。

考题在线答案
1. B　2. C　3. want to go

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Task

My hometown

A **John, one of the exchange students, wants to make a video about his hometown. He is making notes before writing the script. Read his notes below.**

Hometown
about one hundred families
raise cows
grow wheat
know each other
friendly
buses to the town centre

Things to do
smell the flowers
hear the birds sing
row a boat on the lake
go shopping in the town centre

My house
on a farm
two floors
flowers and trees around
near a lake

任务

我的家乡

A 约翰，交换生之一，想制作一个关于他的家乡的录像。写稿子前他在做笔记。读下面他的笔记。

家乡
大约一百户家庭
饲养奶牛
种植小麦
相互了解
友好的
去镇中心的公共汽车

可做的事
闻花香
听鸟儿唱歌
在湖上划船
在镇中心购物

我的房子
在农场
两层
周围有花和树
靠近湖

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Useful expressions
It has ....
There is/are ....
I like ....
Some ..., and others ....
It is a wonderful ....

B You also want to prepare a video presentation on your hometown. Think about what you can see and do in your hometown. Then make some notes.

C Read John's script about his hometown.


课文朗读C

Hello, I'm John. **I'm going to show you around**[1] **my hometown.**[2]
Look! This is my house. It is on a farm. It has two floors. Most people here live in houses like this. There are many flowers and trees around my house. Every day, I can **smell**[3] the flowers and **hear the birds sing**[4]. There is a lake near my house. Sometimes we row a boat there.
There are about one hundred families in our town. Some families **raise**[5] cows, and **others**[6] grow wheat. People here know each other. They are all **friendly**[7]. There are buses to the town centre every day. Usually my mother **drives**[8] us there to do the shopping.
We enjoy our life here. **I think it is a wonderful place to live.**[9] I hope you can come and visit soon!

D Use your notes to write a script for your video presentation. Use John's script as a model. Then read your script to your classmates.

Self-assessment

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about Sunshine Town.		
2 use the new words to talk about my hometown.		
3 use the correct possessives to refer to people or things.		
4 stress the right words in a sentence.		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

有用的表达
它有……
有……
我喜欢……
一些……,其余的……
它是一个精彩的……

B 你也想准备一段视频介绍你的家乡。想一想在你的家乡你能看到什么,能做什么。然后做一些笔记。

C 读约翰关于他家乡的稿子。

大家好,我是约翰。我将带你们参观我的家乡。
瞧!这是我的房子。它在一个农场上,有两层。这里的大部分人住在像这样的房子里。我家周围有许多花和树。每天我都能闻到花香,听到鸟鸣。我的房子附近有一个湖。有时我们在那儿划船。
我们镇上大约有一百户人家。一些家庭饲养奶牛,其余的人家种植小麦。这儿的人们相互认识。他们都非常友好。每天都有去镇中心的公共汽车。通常我妈妈开车带我们去那儿购物。

我们喜欢这儿的生活。我认为这是一个居住的好地方。我希望你不久能来参观!

D 用你的笔记为你的视频展示写一份稿子。用约翰的稿子作为范例。然后把你的稿子读给你的同班同学听。

自我评估

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论阳光镇。		
2 用新单词谈论我的家乡。		
3 用正确的属有词指代人或物。		
4 恰当地重读句中的单词。		

结果:极好! 好! 一般!
我需要花费更多的时间在_____。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶show sb. around…带领某人参观……

eg：She'll **show me around** her new house.
她将带我参观她的新房子。

考向一：show“引，带，领”，其后常接人作宾语。

eg：Let me **show** you to your seat.
让我带你到你的座位去吧。

考向二：around 作介词，意为“围绕”；还可作副词，意为“大约”，此时相当于 about。

eg：It's **around/about** eight o'clock now.
现在大约八点钟。

[辨析] around 与 round

相同点	around 和 round 都可作介词，意义基本相同。	He put his arms **around/round** her. 他搂着她。
不同点	round 还可作形容词，意为“圆形的”，around 无此用法。	The clock is **round**. 这个钟表是圆的。

❷主旨大意法：此句是全文的主旨句，起到总领全文的作用，以下文章各方面的内容的展开就是此句的具体说明。我们在写介绍类文章的时候，要注意可以先总写，然后按内容或步骤进行详细说明介绍。

❸smell /smel/ *vt.* 闻到，嗅

eg：She likes **smelling** the flowers. 她喜欢闻花。

考向：smell 还可作连系动词，意为“闻起来”，后接形容词作表语。

eg：The dinner **smells** good.
这饭菜闻起来很香。

【考题在线 1】 The cheesecake _____ so good that I can't wait to eat it. （温州）
A. tastes　B. feels　C. sounds　D. smells

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：奶酪蛋糕闻起来如此香以至于我迫不及待地要吃它。taste 尝起来；feel 摸起来；sound 听起来；smell 闻起来。根据后面迫不及待地要吃它，可知道只是闻起来香，还没有吃，所以不能用 taste。

❹hear sb. / sth. do sth. 听见某人/ 某物做某事

eg：You can **hear** the birds **sing** in the park.
你可以在公园里听鸟儿唱歌。

考向：一些感官动词，如 see，watch，hear 等，后可接 do sth.，也可接 doing sth. 作宾语补足语。但两者含义不同。

hear sb. / sth. do sth.	表示“听见某人/ 某物做了某事”，强调动作的全过程。
hear sb. / sth. doing sth.	表示“听见某人/某物正在做某事”，强调动作正在进行。

速记小筏

一语辨异：I **heard** him **singing** in the classroom when I read the book, and I often **hear** him **sing** in the classroom after class. 我读书的时候听见他正在教室里唱歌。我经常听见他课下在教室里唱歌。

❺raise /reɪz/ *v.* 饲养

eg：He is a farmer, and **raises** horses.
他是农民，他养马。

考向一：raise 还有“举起；抬起；提起”的意思。

eg：This box is too heavy. I can't **raise** it.
这个盒子太重了，我举不起来。

考向二：[辨析] raise 与 rise

raise	及物动词，意为“举起”	**Raise** your hands. 举起手来。
rise	不及物动词，意为“升起”	The sun **rises** in the east. 太阳从东方升起。

❻other /ˈʌðə(r)/ *adj.* 其他的；另外的

eg：He likes helping **other** people.
他喜欢帮助别人。

考向一：other 作形容词，在句中作定语，放在被修饰词前。

eg：He will give me **other** books tomorrow.
明天他将给我其他几本书。

知识微课：other

考向二：当 other 与表示数量的词一起作定语时，other 放在其后，表示在原有的数量上增加。

eg：There are four **other** new students in the classroom. 在教室里有另外 4 名新来的同学。

考向三：[辨析] other，the other 与 another

other	作形容词时，意为“别的，其他的”，其后常跟复数名词。作代词时，其复数形式为 others。	There are **other** people in the room. 还有其他人在房间里。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

the other	作代词时，通常指两者中的“另一个”。one... the other...意为“(两个中的)一个……另一个……”，其复数形式为 the others。	There are two apples in the bag. One is red; **the other** is green. 包里有两个苹果。一个是红色的，另一个是绿色的。
another	泛指三者或三者以上的同类事物中的“另一个”，强调“再，又”。	I got **another** of those calls yesterday. 昨天我又接了一个那样的电话。

【考题在线 2】Catherine has two cousins. One is quiet, and _____ is noisy.

A. another B. the other

C. other D. others

点拨：用词语应用法。句意：凯瑟琳有两个表兄。一个是安静的，另一个是吵闹的。两者中的一个用 one，另一个用 the other。

【考题在线 3】Both of the T-shirts are too small for me. Please show me _____ one. (another, the other) (贵阳)

点拨：句意为：这两件 T 恤衫对我来说都太小了。请给我看另一件吧。三个或三个以上中的另一个用 another。

7 friendly /ˈfrendli/ *adj.* 友好的

eg: Our teachers are **friendly** to us.
我们的老师对我们很友好。

考向一：形容词 friendly 的同义词是 kind，常用词组：be friendly to sb. 意为“对某人友好”，指对别人态度好、热情，相当于 be kind to sb.；be friendly with sb. 意为“与某人友好”，指的是两者的关系。

eg: My classmates **are** all **friendly to** me.
我的同班同学都对我很友好。
The classmates in our class **are friendly with** each other.
我们班上的同学相互之间的关系都很好。

【考题在线 4】—How are you getting along with your new classmates?
—Very well. They are all _____ me. (襄阳)

A. afraid of B. friendly to

C. angry with D. sorry for

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。be afraid of “害怕……”；be friendly to “对……友好”；be angry with “和……生气”；be sorry for “对……感到抱歉”。根据句意“——你和你的新同学们相处得怎么样？——非常好……。”可知“他们都对我很友好”。

考向二：friendly 是名词 friend 后加-ly 变成的形容词，而不是副词。

eg: We are talking in a **friendly** way.
我们在友好地交谈。

拓展 类似 friendly 以-ly 结尾的形容词有：lovely 可爱的 daily 日常的；每天的 motherly 母亲般的

8 drive /draɪv/ *vt. & vi.* 驾驶；驾车送(人)；开(车)

eg: Could you **drive** me to the station?
你可以开车送我去车站吗？

考向一：drive 作不及物动词时，常用于固定结构：drive to someplace“开车去某地”，相当于 go to someplace by car / in a car。

考向二：与 drive to ... 有相同结构的短语有：walk to ... = go to ... on foot 步行去某地；fly to ... = go to ... by air / plane 乘飞机去某地；ride a bike to ... = go to ... by bike / on a bike 骑车去某地。

考向三：drive 还可作及物动词，意为“驾驶；开”，后面直接跟宾语 bus，train 等交通工具，但中间必须要有冠词。

eg: It's hard for me to **drive** a bus.
对我来说驾驶公共汽车很难。

拓展 drive 的名词形式是 driver，意为“司机；驾驶员”。

eg: My father is a **driver**. 我爸爸是一名司机。

【考题在线 5】It's very dangerous to d_____ after you drink. (新疆)

点拨：句意为：喝酒后开车是很危险的。drive 为动词，意为“开车”。

9 归纳总结法：通过对上面的房子和生活的描述，表达了自己对家乡的热爱。

考题在线答案

1. D 2. B 3. another 4. B 5. drive

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

“三部曲法”写家乡介绍类作文

一、确定介绍对象

二、主要优势介绍

三、表达美好祝愿

易错点提示

“三部曲法”写家乡介绍类作文，要用到描述天气、景色、人文历史等的词汇、句式，注意主谓一致、动宾搭配等。

参考词汇和句式

单词	hometown, supermarket, underground, quiet, air, fresh, local, famous, theatre, friendly
短语	sunny and warm, be friendly to …, by the lake, learn more about, show sb. around
句式	You'll have a good time Let me show you around … There are lots of things to do … We're looking forward to …

典例

假设你是 Li Ming，以下是你的美国笔友 Tina 发给你的一封电子邮件，请你根据该邮件内容给 Tina 回一封邮件。

（衢州）

FROM：Tina
TO：Li Ming
SUBJECT：I am coming!
Hi, Li Ming,

How is everything? I'm very happy that the holidays are coming. I want to go to your hometown to visit you in September. Is this good? What's the weather like in your hometown? And what should I take with me?

I know Mid-Autumn Festival usually comes in September, and it is a very important festival for Chinese people. Can you tell me something about it? And how do you celebrate it? I'm looking forward to your reply.

Best wishes to your parents!

Yours,
Tina

要求：

1. 考生需按电子邮件格式来完成整个邮件；
2. 邮件中不能出现真实姓名、校名等相关信息；
3. 词数 90 ~ 120。

【范文欣赏】

Dear Tina,

I'm so glad you are coming to my hometown. Quzhou is really beautiful in September. It's sunny and hot in the day and a little cold at night. I think you can bring some skirts and T-shirts. Oh, don't forget to bring a pair of sunglasses.

You are lucky to have Mid-Autumn Festival with us. On that day, Chinese families usually get together and have a big dinner. Mooncakes are the special food for the festival. After dinner, people enjoy the bright moon outdoors. And children listen to the story of Chang'e.

I hope you'll come soon and wish you a good time here.

Yours,
Li Ming

【点评】

本文运用了“三部曲法”介绍了家乡衢州，并对 Tina 的即将来访表示欢迎和美好祝愿。

第一步：确定介绍对象（I'm so glad you are coming to my hometown. Quzhou …）

第二步：主要优势介绍（天气：sunny and hot in the day and a little cold at night；景色：beautiful；节日：Mid-Autumn Festival；食物：mooncakes）。

第三步：表达美好祝愿（I hope you'll come soon and wish you a good time here.）

添彩点：

1. It's sunny and hot in the day and …, You are lucky to … 等句式及时间状语 on that day …, after dinner 等的运用显示出作者在细节描述中灵活多变的语言运用技巧，使文章行文流畅，富于变化。

2. I'm so glad …, I think …, Don't forget to …, I hope … 等表达叮咛和愿望的句式体现了作者的真诚与友好。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见237页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. Do you live in a house _____ (像) this?
2. His father is a farmer, and he r_____ some cows on the farm.
3. My father d_____ me to school every morning.
4. We _____ (种植) flowers and vegetables in our garden.
5. There is a beautiful river in my _____ (家乡).

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Tom likes China because Chinese people are _____ (friend). (绥化)
7. There are about two _____ (hundred) families in our village.
8. There are about two hundred _____ (family) in our town.
9. The room is a wonderful place _____ (study) in.

三、用方框中所给词组的适当形式填空

enjoy one's life	by underground	show... around
live in	on a farm	drive ... to

10. My grandparents live _____ in the countryside.
11. Mr Wang will _____ you _____ our school.
12. The old woman _____ a building like a palace.
13. The boy _____ in the town by the sea.
14. Lucy goes to school _____ but Mike doesn't. His mother _____ him _____ school every day.

四、单项选择

15. Look! Our headmaster is _____ the visitors _____ our school.
    A. showing; around
    B. showing; over
    C. showing; at
    D. showing; as
16. My family has two dogs. One is white; _____ is black. (孝感)
    A. other B. another
    C. the other D. others
17. —How's it going?
    —Pretty good. All my new classmates _____ me.
    A. are angry with
    B. are friendly to
    C. are hard on
    D. are sorry for
18. I hope you _____ and visit our town soon.
    A. came B. can come
    C. to come D. comes
19. —Is Helen good at singing?
    —Yes, she is. We often hear her _____ in the morning.
    A. to sing B. sings
    C. sing D. to singing

五、根据课文内容及首字母提示完成短文

Sunshine Town is not far from the centre of Beijing. It's only 40 minutes from the centre of Beijing by u_____[20]. The air is f_____[21] here and you can see many trees, lakes and green hills. L_____[22] people like jogging in the park in the morning. There are many shops in the town. Most things are not e_____[23]. Do you like Chinese food? There are many r_____[24] here. You can choose any food you like. If you don't like C_____[25] food, there are some W_____[26] restaurants too. At night, you can go to the local theatre to e_____[27] Beijing opera. If you can't sing Beijing opera, the people there can t_____[28] you.

People in Sunshine Town are looking forward to m_____[29] friends from all over the world.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Finding your way

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①开门见山法(85,98 页)　②观察连词法(85 页) ③结尾祝愿法(86 页)　④抒发情怀法(98 页)
写作方法	①“TWG 法”写指示方向类作文(98 页)
解题方法	1 交际法(227,238 页)　2 词语应用法(82,89,227,237,238 页) 3 语法判断法(85,227 页)　4 寻找题眼法(227 页)　5 替代法(238 页) 6 前后呼应法(238,239 页)　7 推理判断法(227,239 页)　8 联系上下文法(227 页) 9 词义辨析法(80,81 页)　10 句式分析法(87,238 页)

学习目标梳理

话题	谈论去哪里和怎样去某地		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	follow *vt.* 跟随;仿效　north *n.*, *adj.* & *adv.* 北,北方 west *n.*, *adj.* & *adv.* 西,西方　south *n.*, *adj.* & *adv.* 南,南方 east *n.*, *adj.* & *adv.* 东,东方　trip *n.* 旅行,旅游 kilometre *n.* 千米,公里	have to 不得不　be sure 确信 go down 下去 be north of 在……北边 far away from 离……远 go up 上去
	Period 2	everybody *pron.* 每人,人人　straight *adv.* 径直地 bamboo *n.* 竹　along *prep.* 沿着,顺着　road *n.* 路,道路 king *n.* 国王　remember *vt.* 记得,记住 dangerous *adj.* 危险的　sound *n.* 声音　forest *n.* 森林 cross *vt.* 穿过,横过　funny *adj.* 好笑的,滑稽的 laugh *vi.* 笑,大笑　giraffe *n.* 长颈鹿　quite *adv.* 相当,非常 neck *n.* 脖子　leaf *n.* (树、菜)叶　bridge *n.* 桥 north-east *n.*, *adj.* & *adv.* 东北方 on *adv.* 向前移动,进行下去;(电灯等)开	in front of 在……前面 go on 向前走,继续 all day long 整天地 make sounds 发出声音 walk along 沿着……走 turn left 向左拐 make sb. laugh 使某人发笑 lie down 躺下 jump around 跳来跳去 cross the bridge 过桥
	Period 3	across *prep.* 穿过,横过　inside *prep.* 在……里面 above *prep.* 在……上面　below *prep.* 在……下面 sign *n.* 指示牌　over *prep.* 在……上面　bench *n.* 长椅 outside *prep.* 在……外面	go across 走过 on the left 在左边 look like 看起来像 in an open area 在室外
	Period 4	treasure *n.* 宝藏　traffic *n.* 交通,来往车辆 corner *n.* 拐角;角落　should *modal v.* 应该 past *prep.* 在另一边,到另一侧	traffic lights 红绿灯 walk past 经过 at the first crossing 在第一个交叉路口
	Period 5	prepare *vt.* 准备　plenty *pron.* 大量,充足 bank *n.* 银行	prepare …for… 为……准备…… plenty of 大量,足够 the way to 去……的路 be happy to do sth. 很高兴做某事

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

句型	1. Go straight on, and you'll find ...	一直往前走,你会找到……
	2. Walk along the road.	沿着这条路走。
	3. Turn left, and ...	向左转,然后……
	4. Take the second turning on the right.	在第二个拐角处向右拐。
	5. I am happy to invite you to ...	我很高兴邀请你们来……
	6. I am looking forward to seeing you at ...	我期盼在……见到你。
	7. This is the way to ...	这是去……的路。
语法	冠词和方位介词	

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ.课文原文及译文

Comic strip

Follow[1] me, Eddie.
Are you sure, Hobo?
There's a path **between**[2] the hills. Let's **go down**[3] here.
No, I can't.
Don't be afraid. Come with me.
Eddie, I think we **have to**[4] go up again.
Oh no!

课文朗读 Comic strip

Do you know the way?

The Class 1, Grade 7 students are learning how to give directions.

Task

Write an invitation letter and show your friends how to get to your home.

Welcome to the unit

Let's go on a trip!

A **The students are planning a class trip. Look at the map and the instructions below. Find the places they plan to visit. Then write the correct numbers in the boxes.**

Sunshine Zoo is **north**[5] of Sunshine Middle School.
Sunny Garden is west of the zoo.
Lake Park is south of Sunny Garden.
Sunshine Park is east of Lake Park.

north	south-east
north-west	east
west	north-east
south-west	
south	

连环漫画

跟我来,埃迪。
你确定吗,霍波?
小山之间有一条小路。 我们从这儿下去。

不,我不能。
别害怕。 跟我来。
埃迪,我想我们不得不再爬上去。
噢,不!

你知道路吗?

七年级一班的学生正在学习如何指路。

任务

写一封邀请信,告诉你的朋友如何到达你家。

单元导入

我们一起去旅游吧!

A 学生们正在计划一次班级旅行。 看下面的地图和说明。 找出他们计划参观的地方。 然后把正确的数字填到方框里。

阳光动物园在阳光中学的北面。
阳光花园在动物园西面。
湖泊公园在阳光花园南面。
阳光公园在湖泊公园的东面。

北	东南
西北	东
西	东北
西南	
南	

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Sunshine Zoo
Sunny Garden
Lake Park
Sunshine Park

Sunshine Middle School
Bus stop
Underground

B **Daniel and Simon are talking about the trip. Work in pairs and talk about a class trip you want to go on. Use the conversation below as a model.**

Daniel: Where are we going for our class **trip**⑥?
Simon: We're going to Sunshine Zoo.
Daniel: Where's the zoo? Is it far away from our school?
Simon: No. It's north of the school, about three kilometres away.
Daniel: How will we get there?
Simon: We'll get there by bus.

课文朗读B

阳光动物园
阳光花园
湖泊公园
阳光公园

阳光中学
公共汽车站
地铁

B 丹尼尔和西蒙正在谈论旅行。结对练习并讨论你想参加的班级旅行。用下面的会话作为示例。

丹尼尔：我们的班级旅行准备去哪儿？
西蒙：我们打算去阳光动物园。
丹尼尔：动物园在哪儿？离我们学校远吗？
西蒙：不远。它在我们学校北边，大约三公里。
丹尼尔：我们将如何到那儿呢？
西蒙：我们将乘公共汽车到达那里。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

①follow /ˈfɒləʊ/ *vt.* 跟随

eg: The dog **follows** its master every day.
这条狗每天跟着它的主人。

考向一：及物动词 follow 后面直接跟宾语，follow sb. = come with sb.，意为“跟着某人”。

eg: Please **follow** me, madam. 夫人，请跟我来。

考向二：follow 作及物动词时，还有“听从；遵循；理解；在……后发生”的意思。

eg: I can't **follow** you, because you speak too fast.
我听不懂你说的话，因为你说得太快了。
Spring **follows** winter. 冬去春来。

【考题在线 1】 I'm afraid I didn't _____ you. Could you repeat your words? （包头）
A. believe B. follow C. please D. satisfy

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：我恐怕我没 _____ 你。你能重复你的话吗？believe 相信；follow 明白，理解；please 使满意；satisfy 满足。根据后文大意“你能重复你的话吗？”可推知：我没听懂你的话，故用 follow 表示。

拓展 1. follower *n.* 追随者；崇拜者

eg: He is a faithful **follower** of Liu Xiang.
他是刘翔的忠实追随者。

2. following *adj.* 随后的，下列的

eg: Write down the answers of the **following** questions. 写出下列问题的答案。

②between / bɪˈtwiːn / *prep.* 在……中间

eg: I am sitting **between** my parents.
我坐在父母中间。

考向一：[重点] 介词 between 指两者之间，常用来表示方位或时间。固定结构：between … and …“在……和……之间”。between 后接名词或代词时应用其复数形式，且代词必须用宾格形式。

eg: He is **between** us. 他在我们两人之间。
They will have a meeting **between** 8 o'clock **and** 9 o'clock.
他们将在八点和九点之间召开会议。

【考题在线 2】 —Are you watching the football matches of the World Cup these days?
—Sometimes, and I'll watch the match _____ Japan and Poland tonight. （包头）
A. against B. about
C. through D. between

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：——这些天你在看世界杯足球赛吗？——有时看，我会看今晚日本和波兰的比赛。against 反对；about 关于；through 透过，通过；between 在……之间。分析句意可推知：这场比赛是日本和波兰之间进行的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向二：[辨析] between 与 among

between	指在两者之间。	A river is **between** two mountains. 一条河在两山之间。
among	指在三者或三者以上之间。	A tree is **among** the flowers. 一棵树在花当中。

【考题在线 3】—What do you often do _____ classes to relax yourselves?
—We often do eye exercises, listen to music or do some running around the school. （襄阳）
A. in B. among C. between D. through

点拨：本题用**词义辨析法**。in 在……里面；among 在三者或三者以上之间；between 在两者之间；through 通过。根据问句句意“课间你们经常干什么来放松自己？”可知答案。

方法真题练：词义辨析法

❸go down 下去；向下走

eg：Don't **go down** there. It's too dangerous.
别从那儿下去，太危险了。

考向一：固定词组 go down 常用来表示价格的下降，其中 down 为副词，意为“下降”，对应词为 up。

考向二：go down 还有“顺着……走，沿着……走”的意思，其中 down 为介词，意为“沿着，顺着”。近义词组为：go along 沿着……走；go up 沿着……走。

eg：**Go down** this street, and then turn right.
沿着这条街道走，然后向右拐。

[辨析] down, along 与 up 的区别
这三个词都有“沿着”的意思，其后一般接道路、河流等名词。

down	“沿着，顺着”，尤指朝着所对的方向。	Go **down** this road, and take the first turning on the left. 沿着这条路走，在第一个路口向左拐。
along	只表示“沿着”，不侧重方向。	We walked **along** the bank of the river. 我们沿着河岸走。
up	“沿着”，可指向……的较远处	We live just **up** the road, past the post office. 我们就住在路的前面，刚过邮局的地方。

❹have to 不得不

eg：My mum is out. I **have to** stay at home and look after my brother.
我妈妈出去了，我不得不呆在家照顾我的弟弟。

考向：[辨析] have to 与 must

have to	用以表示客观规定或他人的愿望，意为“不得不”，表示没有必要做某事时用 don't have to；有时态和数的变化。	She doesn't **have to** work on weekends. 她周末不必工作。
must	表示说话者的主观意愿，认为有必要或应该做某事，一般用在肯定句或疑问句中，其否定形式 mustn't，用于告诉某人不要做某事，表“禁止”；无时态和数的变化。	I **must** study hard. 我必须努力学习。Amy, you **mustn't** play football on the road. 埃米，你千万不要在马路上踢足球。

【考题在线 4】—Hi, class! You _____ come to school tomorrow.
—Wow, great news! （曲靖）
A. wasn't able to B. won't have to
C. shouldn't D. mustn't

点拨：本题用**辨析法**。句意：——嗨，同学们！你们明天不用来学校了。——哇，很棒的消息！由时间状语 tomorrow 可排除选项 A；won't have to 将不必；shouldn't 不应该；mustn't 禁止。

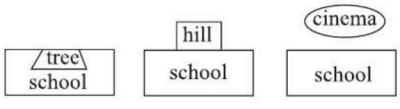
❺north /nɔːθ/ *n.*, *adj.* & *adv.* 北，北方

eg：A cold wind is coming from the **north**.
一股寒冷的北风正吹来。
There is a **north** window in our room.
我们房间里有一个朝北的窗户。

考向一：north 的固定搭配：North China 华北 North America 北美洲 the North Pole 北极

eg：Mexico is in the south of **North America**.
墨西哥在北美的南部。

考向二：[辨析] in the north of, on the north of 与 to the north of



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

in the north of	指在某地域或范围之内的北部。	The tree is **in the north of** the school. 那棵树在学校的北部。
on the north of	指与某一地域的边界相接的北方。	The hill is **on the north of** the school. 山在学校的北面。
to the north of	指在某一地域或范围之外的北方。	The cinema is **to the north of** the school. 电影院在学校的北方。

拓展 方位词归纳：

west *n.* 西；西方→western *adj.* 西方的；西部的
south *n.* 南；南方→southern *adj.* 南方的；南部的
east *n.* 东；东方→eastern *adj.* 东方的；东部的
north *n.* 北；北方→northern *adj.* 北方的；北部的
south-east *n.* 东南方
south-west *n.* 西南方
north-east *n.* 东北方
north-west *n.* 西北方

特色土方法

复合方向词巧记忆：
表示复合方向时，应先南北，后东西。

【考题在线5】—Where is North Korea?
—It lies _____ the northeast of China.（三明）
A. on　　B. to　　C. in　　D. at
点拨：本题用词语应用法。朝鲜和中国的东北接壤，介词用 on。

6 trip /trɪp/ *n.* 旅行；旅游

eg：She wants to go on a day **trip** to Hong Kong.
她想去香港进行一日游。

考向一：名词 trip 多指短途游玩或有目的的旅游。trip 的相关词组：a weekend trip 周末旅行　a bus trip 汽车旅行　a school trip 学校旅行　go on a trip to Shanghai 去上海旅行　a round trip 一次往返旅行

考向二：表示去旅行用 go on a trip，相当于 make / take / have a trip。

考题在线答案
1. B　2. D　3. C　4. B　5. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习

稳拿中考基础20分　☞（答案见237页）

一、请根据汉语提示，将下列句子补充完整

1. Look! Our library is _____（东） of the classroom building. It looks modern.（南京）
2. My new classmate comes from the _____（南方） and he likes eating rice.
3. Where are we going for our class _____（旅行）?
4. Mary _____（跟随） her mother into the room.
5. The garden is one hundred _____（公里） away from my home.

二、单项选择

6. Taiwan lies _____ the southeast of China and _____ the east of Fujian Province.
A. at；on　　B. in；to
C. on；to　　D. to；on

7. You _____ take me to the station. My brother's taking me.（江西）
A. can't　　B. mustn't
C. shouldn't　　D. don't have to

8. His grade in the exam put him _____ the top students in his class.
A. between　　B. over
C. among　　D. above

9. —_____ do you usually go to school, Mary?
—By bike.（北京）
A. When　　B. How　　C. Where　　D. Why

10. —What a fine day! Let's go fishing.
—_____. When shall we go?
A. Very well　　B. Good idea
C. Well done　　D. My pleasure

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 公园在学校的西边。
The park is _____ _____ the school.

12. 跟我来。我带你去那儿。
_____ _____. I'll take you there.

13. 邮局在旅馆和图书馆之间。
The post office is _____ the hotel _____ the library.

14. 从这儿下去，你就会到达那儿。
_____ _____ here and you can get there.

15. 我们下周将有一次班级旅行。
We'll _____ _____ _____ _____ next week.

（包头）【导学号：1037419】

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A A trip to the zoo

The students are in front of Sunshine Zoo. A tour guide is showing them a map and telling them how to get around the zoo. Here is her introduction.

课文朗读A

Hi, everybody[1]. Here we're in front of the South Gate.[2] Go straight[3] on, and you'll find[4] the Panda House.[5] Pandas are cute. They like to eat bamboo and lie down all day long. Every year, lots of visitors come here to see them.

Walk along the road. To the north of the Panda House, you'll find the lions. Lions are the kings of the animal world. **Remember[6]** that they're dangerous. Never go near them.

Turn left, and to the west of the Lions' Area, you'll find the World of Birds. Birds make beautiful **sounds[7]** when they sing. To the north of the World of Birds is the Monkeys' Forest. Monkeys are clever and funny. They jump around and make people **laugh[8]**.

Then turn right, and to the east of the Monkeys' Forest, you'll see the giraffes. They're **quite[9]** tall. Their long necks help them eat the leaves from trees. North-east of the giraffes there's a bridge. **Cross[10]** the bridge, and you'll see the elephants. Their large ears are like open fans.

Here you can see all kinds of animals. **Have a nice trip![11]**

B About the zoo

B1 Read the introduction on page 44 again. Write down the different animals in the correct position. Then complete the instructions and tell your partner about it.

birds	elephants	giraffes
lions	monkeys	pandas

The pandas are (1) north of the South Gate.
The lions are (2) _____ of the pandas.
The birds are (3) _____ of the lions.
The birds are (4) _____ of the monkeys.
The giraffes are (5) _____ of the monkeys.
The elephants are (6) _____ of the giraffes.
South Gate

阅读

A 去动物园的一次旅行

学生们在阳光动物园前面。一位导游正在给他们看一张地图，告诉他们如何到动物园各处。这是她的介绍。

大家好。我们现在在南门前。一直往前走，你们就会发现熊猫馆。熊猫很可爱。它们喜欢吃竹子，而且整天躺着。每年有许多游客来这儿看它们。

沿着这条路走。在熊猫馆的北面，你们将会找到狮子。狮子是动物之王。记住它们很危险。不要靠近它们。

向左拐，在狮子区域的西边，你们将会发现鸟的世界。鸟儿在唱歌时发出美妙的声音。在鸟世界的北边是猴子的森林。猴子聪明又滑稽。它们跳来跳去，使人们大笑。

然后向右转，你们会在猴子林的东边，看到长颈鹿。它们非常高。它们的长脖子帮助它们吃到树上的树叶。长颈鹿的东北边有一座桥。过了桥，你们就会看到大象。它们的大耳朵就像张开的扇子。

在这儿你们能看到各种各样的动物。旅途愉快！

B 关于动物园

B1 再读44页上的介绍。在正确的地方写出不同的动物。然后完成说明并告诉你的同伴。

鸟	大象	长颈鹿
狮子	猴子	熊猫

熊猫在南门的(1)北边。
狮子在熊猫的(2)_____。
鸟在狮子的(3)_____。
鸟在猴子的(4)_____。
长颈鹿在猴子的(5)_____。
大象在长颈鹿的(6)_____。
南门

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B2 **Here are some descriptions about Sunshine Zoo. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.**

1 The students start their visit from the North Gate. _____
2 Pandas do not like to lie down all day long. _____
3 Visitors cannot go near the lions. _____
4 The birds in the zoo are very quiet. _____
5 Monkeys are clever and funny. _____
6 To the north-east of the giraffes there is a hill. _____

B3 **Millie is making some notes about the animals in the zoo. Help her fill in each blank with the correct answer.**

Animal	Features
panda	(1) _____ (cute, clever), eat (2) _____ (bamboo, grass)
lion	(3) _____ (king, friend) of the animal world
bird	make beautiful (4) _____ (pictures, sounds)
monkey	(5) _____ (jump around, run fast) and make people (6) _____ (laugh, cry)
giraffe	quite (7) _____ (short, tall), long (8) _____ (neck, face)
elephant	(9) _____ (large, small) ears like open (10) _____ (umbrellas, fans)

B4 **Millie is telling her friend Wendy online about Sunshine Zoo. Complete their conversation with the information on page 44.**

Wendy: Hi, Millie. How was your trip to the zoo?
Millie: Not bad. There are lots of (1) _____ in the zoo.
Wendy: Are there any pandas?
Millie: Yes. Pandas are (2) _____. Every year, lots of (3) _____ come to see them.
Wendy: Are there any lions?
Millie: Yes, but they're (4) _____. We can't go near them.
Wendy: **There are also birds, aren't there?** [12]
Millie: Yes. I like to hear birds (5) _____. There are monkeys too.
Wendy: I like monkeys. They're clever and (6) _____.
Millie: Yes, they are. And there are also tall (7) _____. Their long necks help them eat the (8) _____ from trees.

B2 这儿是一些关于阳光动物园的描述。在正确的句子后写T，错误的句子后写F。

1 学生们从北门开始参观。 _____
2 熊猫不喜欢整天躺着。 _____
3 参观者不能靠近狮子。 _____
4 动物园里的鸟非常安静。 _____
5 猴子聪明又滑稽。 _____
6 在长颈鹿的东北边有一座小山。 _____

B3 米莉正在做一些关于动物园里动物的笔记。帮助她将正确的答案填在每个空格处。

动物	特征
熊猫	(1) _____ (可爱的，聪明的)，吃(2) _____ (竹子，草)
狮子	动物世界的(3) _____ (国王，朋友)
鸟	发出美妙的(4) _____ (图片，声音)
猴子	(5) _____ (到处乱跳，跑得快)，使人们(6) _____ (笑，哭)
长颈鹿	非常(7) _____ (矮的，高的)，长(8) _____ (脖子，脸)
大象	(9) _____ (大的，小的)耳朵像张开的(10) _____ (雨伞，扇子)

B4 米莉正在网上告诉她的朋友温迪关于阳光动物园的信息。用44页上的信息完成她们的会话。

温迪：你好，米莉。你去动物园的旅行怎么样？
米莉：不错。动物园里有许多(1) _____。
温迪：有熊猫吗？
米莉：有。熊猫是(2) _____。每年，许多(3) _____来看它们。
温迪：有狮子吗？
米莉：有，但是它们(4) _____。我们不能靠近它们。
温迪：也有鸟，是吗？
米莉：是的。我喜欢听鸟儿(5) _____。还有猴子。
温迪：我喜欢猴子。它们聪明又(6) _____。
米莉：是的，他们是。还有高的(7) _____。它们的长脖子帮助它们吃到树上的(8) _____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶everybody /ˈevribɒdi/ *pron.* 每人，人人

eg：**Everybody** knows he sings well.
大家都知道他唱歌唱得好。

考向：everybody 相当于 everyone，用作主语时，谓语动词应用第三人称单数形式。

eg：**Everybody** is here today. 今天大家都到了。
Not **everybody** likes the film.
并不是每个人都喜欢这部电影。

❷开门见山法：本句在整篇文章中起统领下文的作用。先介绍自己的所在位置，然后分别介绍动物园里的每一种动物所在地。

❸straight /streɪt/ *adv.* 径直地

straight 作副词，常和动词 go，walk 等连用。

eg：Go **straight** along the street and you'll find the theatre on your right. 沿着这条街一直走，在你的右边你会找到那座剧院。

考向一：straight 还可作形容词，意为“直的，笔直的”，可作定语或表语。

eg：This is a **straight** line. 这是一条直线。

考向二：[易错点] straight 也可作副词。在英语中形容词和副词词形相同的词有：
high *adj.* 高的—high *adv.* 高
deep *adj.* 深的—deep *adv.* 深深地

❹find /faɪnd/ *v.* 找到

eg：You can **find** your mother in the library.
你会在图书馆里找到你妈妈。

考向：[辨析] find，find out 与 look for 三者都有“找”之意，其区别是：

find	通常指找到或发现具体的东西，强调的是找的结果。	He can't **find** his bike. 他找不到他的自行车了。
find out	多指通过调查、询问之后“查明，弄明白”，通常含有“经过困难和曲折”的含义。	Please **find out** when the train leaves. 请查一下火车什么时候离站。
look for	指有目的地找，强调“寻找”这一动作。	I can't find my pen. I'm **looking for** it everywhere. 我找不到我的钢笔了，我正在到处找它。

【考题在线 1】I can't _____ my pen. Did you _____ it? （铜仁）
A. find；look at　　B. look at；see
C. look for；look at　　D. find；see

❺观察连词法：此句为“祈使句 + and + 陈述句”结构，祈使句表条件，and 连接结果，强调有什么条件就会有什么结果。此句相当于一个含条件状语从句的复合句。

❻remember /rɪˈmembə(r) / *vt.* 记得，记住

eg：I'm sorry. I don't **remember** your name.
对不起，我不记得你的名字了。

考向一：及物动词 remember 后面可接下列形式作宾语：

remember + 名词/代词，表示“记得……”。	The story is amazing, so I can remember it. 这个故事很令人吃惊，因此我能记住它。
remember to do sth.，表示“记着要做某事（事情还没有做）”。	Please remember to turn off the lights when you leave. 当你离开的时候请记着关灯。
remember doing sth.，表示“记得做过某事（事情已经做了）”。	I don't remember telling you that. 我不记得告诉过你那件事。
remember + 从句，意为“记得……”。	I remembered that there was a big tree behind our school. 我记得我们学校后面有一棵大树。

【考题在线 2】Remember _____ off the lights when you leave the room, please. （绥化）
A. to turn　　B. turning　　C. turn
点拨：本题用**语法判断法**。考查非谓语动词。句意：你离开房间时，请记得关灯。remember to do sth. 记得去做某事，这件事情还没有做；remember doing sth. 记得做过某事，这件事情已经做过。

考向二：remember 的反义词为 forget，意为“忘记”，其用法与 remember 一样。

❼sound /saʊnd/ *n.* 声音

eg：We can't hear any **sound**.
我们一点声音都听不到。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向：[辨析] sound，noise 与 voice

sound	作“声音，响声”讲时，可以指人或动物发出的声音，或物体碰撞的声音。这个词的使用范围很大。大自然的任何“声音”都可以用 sound。常见短语：make a sound 发出声音
noise	意为“噪音，喧闹声”，常指不悦耳、不和谐的嘈杂声。
voice	一般指人的声音，说话声、唱歌声都可用 voice。

eg：Light travels faster than **sound**.
光比声音传播得快。
Don't make any **noise**! 别吵闹！
The girl has a beautiful **voice**.
那女孩嗓音很美。

⑧**laugh** /lɑːf/ *vi.* 笑，大笑

eg：His joke made everybody **laugh**.
他的笑话使大家都笑了。

考向：laugh 的常用搭配有：laugh at 嘲笑

eg：Don't **laugh at** him. 别嘲笑他。

【考题在线 3】I think it's not polite to laugh _____ others.
A. in　　B. at　　C. over　　D. of
点拨：本题考查 laugh 的固定搭配，laugh at 意为“嘲笑”。

让生活充满笑声，活出旷达人生

笑声，是人愉悦时的情感流露。让生活充满笑声，是达观的生活态度（life attitude），更是高超的生活智慧。正所谓庸人自扰，智者无忧。高尔基说：“只有爱笑的人，生活才能过得更美好。”那就让我们忘掉烦恼，丢弃忧伤，胸怀宽广，知足常乐。

【素养行动】常笑多笑，笑出幸福，笑出美好，笑出灿烂的生活！

【素养行动结果】一笑解千愁，这就是生活的智慧。让生活充满笑声，就会让世界充满笑声！

⑨**quite** /kwaɪt/ *adv.* 相当，非常

eg：He is **quite** smart. 他非常聪明。

考向：[辨析] quite 与 very

二者都是程度副词，用于修饰形容词或副词，但语气和用法不同。

quite	“相当”，若有 a/an 时要置于 a/an 之前，结构：quite + a（an）+形容词 + 名词；修饰动词时放在动词之前。	It is **quite** a cold day. 这是相当冷的一天。 He **quite** likes maths. 他很喜欢数学。
very	修饰形容词时，若有 a/an，要置于 a/an 之后，意为“非常，很”，结构：a + very + 形容词 + 名词。	It's a **very** good idea. 这是一个非常好的主意。
	very 与 much 合在一起修饰动词，一般位于句末。	He likes maths **very** much. 他很喜欢数学。

⑩**cross** /krɒs/ *vt.* 穿过，横过

eg：Can you **cross** the river without any help?
在没有帮助的情况下你能过河吗？

考向：cross 作及物动词，指从一个平面通过，常用于过路、过河、过桥等，即：cross the road/river/bridge 过马路/河/桥。

eg：The old lady is **crossing** the road.
那位老太太正在过马路。

拓展 1. cross　*n.* 十字形记号；交叉记号

eg：The **cross** on the map shows where our house is. 地图上的十字形记号显示我们的房子在哪里。

2. crossing　*n.* 十字路口，人行横道

eg：Turn left at the next **crossing**.
在下个十字路口左转。

3. across　*prep.* 穿过

eg：The old man walked **across** the road carefully.
那个老人小心翼翼地穿过马路。

⑪**结尾祝愿法**：我们在写此类文章时，在结尾通常加上一两句表示祝愿的话语。

⑫**There are also birds, aren't there?** 也有鸟，是吗？

考向一：该句为反意疑问句，由陈述句加附加问句构成，征询对前面陈述句所陈述事情的意见，或者希望事实得到证实。其结构一般为“前肯定，后否定”或“前否定，后肯定”。

eg：You like sports, don't you?
你喜欢运动，是不是？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线4】There is something wrong with the radio.(改为反意疑问句)
There is something wrong with the radio, _____ _____? (白银)

点拨:本题用句式分析法。反意疑问句句式为"前肯定,后否定"。

考向二:对于"前否定,后肯定"结构的回答,要按照事情本身的情况去回答。翻译时 yes 译为"不",no 译为"是"。

eg:—You didn't attend the meeting, did you?
你没参加会议,是吧?
—No, I didn't. / Yes, I did.
是的,我没参加。/ 不,我参加了。

【考题在线5】—Sam didn't go to school yesterday, did he?
—_____. He was ill yesterday. (宜宾)
A. Yes, he did B. No, he did
C. No, he didn't D. Yes, he didn't

点拨:本题用句式分析法。考查反意疑问句的用法。由答语后句"昨天他生病了。"可知,Sam 昨天没有来上学,事实是否定的,应用否定回答。

考题在线答案
1. D 2. A 3. B 4. isn't there 5. C

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见238页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. We would like _____ (每个人) to bring their own food.
2. Walk _____ (径直地) on, and you'll find the museum on your right.
3. The students in the village go on a ropeway to _____ (穿过) the river to school. (孝感改编)
4. This story is very interesting. It makes all of us _____ (大笑).
5. I like to sit on a _____ (竹) chair in the hot summer.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Monkeys eat meat, _____ (树叶), fruit and even eggs. (广安)
7. This deep river is _____ (danger) for swimmers.
8. I couldn't help laughing loudly when I heard such a _____ (fun) story. (乐山改编)
9. Chinese scientists have successfully cloned (克隆) two _____ (monkey). They are named Zhong Zhong and Hua Hua. (临沂)
10. I enjoy listening to music. It can make me _____ (feel) happy.

三、单项选择

11. Water is important to _____, so there are many water festivals around the world.
A. everyone B. nobody
C. somebody D. something
12. I like taking a walk _____ the river after dinner. (盘锦)
A. above B. on C. under D. along
13. My sister _____ her cat yesterday, but she didn't _____ it. (巴中)
A. found; look for B. looked; found
C. looked for; find
14. —Remember _____ to my daughter's dance show next Friday.
—Of course I will. I'll never forget _____ her dance for the first time last year. (青岛)
A. to come; to see B. coming; to see
C. to come; seeing D. coming; seeing
15. —It's Father's Day, _____?
—Yes. Let's buy a gift for Dad. (温州)
A. isn't it B. doesn't it
C. isn't he D. doesn't he

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 当你穿过马路时,你会发现一个超市。
When you _____ _____ _____, you'll _____ a supermarket.
17. 一直往前走,然后向左拐进入格林大街。
Go _____ _____. Then _____ _____ _____ Green Street.
18. 当鸟儿唱歌时,它们发出美妙的声音。
Birds _____ _____ _____ when they sing.
19. 熊猫喜欢吃竹子,整天躺着。
Pandas like to eat bamboo and _____ _____ _____ _____ _____.
20. 猴子总是跳来跳去,使人们大笑。
Monkeys always _____ _____. They _____ people _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Using a, an and the

We use a or an when we mention a person or thing for the first time. We use the before a noun when the person or thing is mentioned again, or when we are talking about a specific person or thing.

Look! Here is a panda.
The panda is eating bamboo.

Fun in the zoo

Millie and Daniel are talking about the animals in the zoo. Complete their conversation with a, an or the.

Millie: Let's go to the Panda House first.

Daniel: Here we are. I can see (1) _____ panda there. It's lying on the grass.

Millie: How cute! I really love pandas. Look! There's (2) _____ baby panda. It's so small.

Daniel: Yes. (3) _____ baby panda doesn't look like its mother.

Millie: Now let's go to see some lions.

Daniel: Are (4) _____ lions in (5) _____ open area?

Millie: No, they aren't. They're in (6) _____ very big cage.

Daniel: I see.

(Half an hour later)

Daniel: Millie, here's (7) _____ bridge. What can you see **across**[1] it?

Millie: Oh, (8) _____ elephant is standing over there.

Daniel: Let's go across (9) _____ bridge and see (10) _____ elephant.

B Prepositions of place

We use prepositions of place to say where things or people are.

TIP

Prepositions of place

above at behind
below beside between
in in front of inside
next to on **outside**[2] over under

The flowers are in front of the shop.
The trees are behind the shop.
The shopkeeper is inside the shop.

语法

A 使用 a, an 和 the

我们在第一次提到一个人或物时用 a 或 an。当某人或某物被再次提到或者当我们谈论一个特定的人或物时，我们在名词前用 the。

瞧！这儿有一只熊猫。
那只熊猫在吃竹子。

在动物园的乐趣

米莉和丹尼尔正在谈论动物园里的动物。

用 a, an 或 the 完成他们的会话。

米莉：咱们先去熊猫馆吧。

丹尼尔：我们到了。我能看到(1) _____熊猫在那边。它正躺在草地上。

米莉：多可爱啊！我非常喜欢熊猫。瞧！有(2) _____小熊猫。它是那么小。

丹尼尔：是的。(3) _____小熊猫看上去不像它的妈妈。

米莉：现在咱们去看一些狮子吧。

丹尼尔：(4) _____狮子是在(5) _____露天场地吗？

米莉：不，不是的。它们在(6) _____非常大的笼子里。

丹尼尔：我明白了。

(半小时后)

丹尼尔：米莉，这儿是(7) _____桥。你能看到它对面有什么？

米莉：哦，(8) _____大象正站在那边。

丹尼尔：咱们走过(9) _____桥去看(10) _____大象。

B 地点介词

我们用地点介词来说事物或人所在的地方。

提示

地点介词

在……上方 在……处 在……后面
在……下方 在……旁边 在……之间
在……里面 在……前面 在……里面
在……旁边 在……上 在……外面
在……上方 在……下方

花在商店的前面。
树在商店的后面。
店主在商店里面。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The boy is outside the shop.
The food is **above**③ the drinks.
The drinks are below the food.
The sign is over the bench.
The dog is under the bench.

男孩在商店外面。
食物在饮料的上方。
饮料在食物的下方。
标志在长凳的上方。
狗在长凳的下方。

In the park

Sandy goes to the park every weekend. Look at the picture below and complete her description with the correct prepositions of place.

There's a beautiful lake in the park. Look! Two boys are rowing a boat (1)_____ the lake. (2)_____ the lake there's a football field. Some boys are playing football (3)_____ it. (4)_____ the football field, there are two trees. On the left, a bird is singing(5)_____ one tree. On the right, two boys are sitting (6)_____ the other tree. (7)_____ the two trees, three girls are chatting (8)_____ the bench.

在公园里

桑迪每周末去公园。看下面的图片并用正确的地点介词完成她的描述。

公园里有一个漂亮的湖。瞧！两个男孩正在湖(1)_____划船。湖(2)_____有一个足球场。一些男孩正在它(3)_____踢足球。足球场的(4)_____有两棵树。在左边，一只鸟正在一棵树(5)_____唱歌。在右边，两个男孩正坐在另一棵树(6)_____。在两棵树(7)_____，三个女孩正在长凳(8)_____聊天。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶across /əˈkrɒs/ ***prep.*** 穿过，横过；在……对面

eg: He is going to fly **across** the Atlantic.
他准备飞越大西洋。

考向一：cross 意为“穿过，横过”，相当于 go across。

eg: You should **go across** the bridge and then turn left. = You should **cross** the bridge and then turn left. 你应该先过桥，然后左拐。

【考题在线 1】根据汉语意思填单词
You must look at the traffic lights before you go _____(穿过) the road.

考向二：[辨析] across 与 through

across	指从物体的表面穿过，可与 street, bridge 等搭配。
through	指从立体空间内穿过，可与 forest, city, window, door 等搭配。

速记小筏

一语辨异：The young man walked **across** the road, but he didn't go **through** the park. 那个年轻人穿过了马路，但没有穿过那个公园。

【考题在线 2】—Bill, did you see Tom?
—Yes, he just parked his car here and then hurried _____ the street.
(连云港)
A. through B. over C. past D. across

点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——比尔，你看见汤姆了吗？——是的，他刚才把他的车停在这儿然后急忙穿过街道。through“穿过”，表示从内部穿过；over“在……上面”；past“经过”；across“穿过”，强调从物体表面穿过。“穿过大街”强调从一端到另一端，用 across 表示。

❷outside /ˌaʊtˈsaɪd/ ***prep.*** 在……外面

eg: Don't stand **outside** the room.
不要站在房间外面。

考向一：介词 outside 的反义词是 inside，意为“在……里面”。

考向二：outside 还可作副词，意为“在外面”。

eg: His mother is waiting **outside**.
他的妈妈正在外面等。

【考题在线 3】Don't stand _____ (在……外面) the classroom. Please come in.

❸above /əˈbʌv/ ***prep.*** 在……上面，其反义词为 **below**“在……下面”。

eg: There is a map **above** the blackboard.
黑板的上方有一张地图。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向：[辨析] on，over 与 above

on	“在……之上”，物体与物体表面相接触，一件东西在另一件之上。	There is a book **on** the desk. 书桌上有一本书。
over	介词，表示在垂直正上方，不接触表面，其反义词为 under。	The lamp is **over** the table. 灯在桌子上方。
above	介词，其反义词是 below。表示在上方或位置高出某物体，但不一定在垂直上方。	His office is **above** ours. 他的办公室在我们的上面。

【考题在线 4】 _____（在……上面）the blackboard, there is a picture.

【考题在线 5】 In cold winter, the temperature in Harbin often remains _____ zero all day.

A. above　　B. below

C. over　　D. under

点拨：below zero 在零度以下，属固定用法。要表达在零度以上应该用 above。由句意可知答案。

考题在线答案

1. across　2. D　3. outside　4. Above　5. B

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

考点 1：冠词 a/an/the

冠词分不定冠词 a（an）和定冠词 the 两种。



考向一：不定冠词的用法

不定冠词有 a 和 an 两种形式，a 用于以辅音音素开头的词前，an 用于以元音音素开头的词前。其用法有：

用法	举例
泛指人或事物的某一类别，以区别于其他种类。	A plane is a machine that can fly. 飞机是一种能飞的机器。
首次提到某个单数可数名词。	There's a bird in the tree. 树上有只鸟。
表示“数量”，但数的概念没有 one 强烈。	I have a sister. 我有一个妹妹。
用于固定短语中。	a little（一点儿）；wait a minute（等一会儿）

速记小筏

不定冠词的用法（顺口溜）

冠词 a，an 两种帽，许多名词都需要。
开头读音若是元，要把 an 帽来挑选。
辅音起首戴 a 帽，记住规律莫乱套。

【考题在线 1】 —I'm thirsty, Mom.

—Here is _____ bottle of water for you.　（淮安）

A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

点拨：句意：——我很渴，妈妈。——这儿有瓶水给你。a bottle of 一瓶……，bottle 是以辅音音素开头的单词，故用 a。

【考题在线 2】 —Is that _____ book?

—No, it's _____ old dictionary.（新疆）

A. a; the　　B. a; an

C. an; a　　D. the; an

点拨：句中的单数名词 book 与 dictionary 都表泛指，前面应用不定冠词修饰；book 以辅音音素开头，前面应用不定冠词 a；old 以元音音素开头，前面应用不定冠词 an。

考向二：定冠词的用法

用法	举例
特指某些人或物。	The children are coming. 孩子们就要来了。
用于上文提到过的事物或双方都知道的事物。	Mr Li works in a factory. The factory is far from his home. 李先生在一家工厂上班，那家工厂离他家很远。
用于世界上独一无二的事物前。	The moon goes around the earth. 月亮绕着地球转。
用于序数词或形容词最高级前。	Who is the youngest girl in your class? 谁是你们班最小的女孩？
用于姓氏复数名词前，表示……一家人或……夫妇。	The Greens are going for a picnic next Sunday. 格林一家下个星期天打算去野餐。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

用于乐器名称前或方位名词之前。	play the guitar 弹吉他
用于固定搭配中。	in the morning(在上午); at the end of (在……的尽头)

速记小筏

定冠词 the 的用法(顺口溜)

特指双方熟悉,上文已经提及;
世上独一无二,方位名词乐器;
某些专有名词,外加复数姓氏;
序数词最高级,习惯用语要特记。

【考题在线 3】There is no living thing on _____ moon. (福州)

A. the B. a C. 不填

点拨:世界上独一无二的事物前需要加定冠词 the。

【考题在线 4】We should have _____ breakfast every day to keep healthy. (青岛)

A. a B. an C. / D. the

点拨:句意:我们应该每天吃早餐来保持健康。通常在表示"三餐"的名词前不用冠词。

考向三:不用冠词的情况:

用法	举例
不可数名词和复数名词表泛指。	Vegetables are good for our health. 蔬菜有益于我们的健康。
人名、地名、(非缩写的)国家名、物质名词、抽象名词前。	Mary comes from New York. 玛丽来自纽约。
可数名词前有物主代词、指示代词、不定代词或名词所有格等修饰。	Lily's bedroom is bigger than mine. 莉莉的卧室比我的大。
某些节日、季节、月份、星期、三餐、(与 play 连用时的)球类和棋类、学科名词前。	March 8th is Women's Day. 三月八号是妇女节。
称呼语或表示头衔的名词前。	What's the matter with you, Granny? 你怎么了,奶奶?
与 by 连用的表示交通工具的名词前。	by car/bus/train/plane 乘坐小汽车/公共汽车/火车/飞机
用于固定短语。	on foot(步行); go to bed(去睡觉)

速记小筏

零冠词的用法(顺口溜):

下列情况不用冠,名词之前代词限。
复数名词表泛指,球类学科和三餐。
专有名词不可数,星期月份季节前。
交通手段和节日,习语称谓和头衔。

【考题在线 5】—People can't live without _____ water.

—Yes, I think so. (十堰)

A. a B. an C. the D. 不填

点拨:表泛指时不可数名词前不用冠词。

【考题在线 6】—What do you usually have for _____ breakfast, Peter?

—A fried egg, three pieces of bread and a glass of milk. (南京)

A. a B. an C. the D. /

点拨:三餐之前不用加冠词。

考点 2:方位介词

考向一:方位介词用来表示地点、方位和位移。介词是一种虚词,不能单独使用,它必须与后面的名词或代词结合构成介词短语在句中充当句子成分。方位介词短语常作句子的表语、状语和定语。

考向二:用法点拨

1. 常用的方位介词可分为以下几组:

方位介词	意义用法	例句
at, in	at 的后面一般接小地点,而 in 的后面则接大地点。	I often stay at home at the weekend. 周末我常呆在家里。 When will you arrive in Shanghai? 你将什么时间到达上海?
between, among	between 一般指在两者之间,among 表示在三者或三者以上之间。	I sit between Daniel and Amy. 我坐在丹尼尔和埃米中间。 Look! Mr Li is standing among his students. 看!李老师正站在他的学生中间。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

beside, next to, near	beside 指“在……旁边”，next to 表示“紧挨着，紧靠着”，near “在……附近”。	Come and sit beside me. 过来坐在我的旁边。 The pretty girl is standing next to the window. 那个漂亮的女孩正站在窗户旁边。 Do you live near here? 你住在这附近吗？
above, below, over, under, on	above 指“在……上方”，反义词是 below。over “在……正上方（垂直）”，under “在……正下方”。而 on 指的是“在……（物体）的上面”，指相互接触。	There's a bridge over the river. 河上有座桥。 Shall I write my answer below or above the line? 我应该把答案写在线下方还是线上方？ There are some apples on the table. 桌上有些苹果。
inside, outside	inside 指在……里面，其反义词是 outside。	Inside the box was a gold watch. 盒子里装着一只金表。 When shall we meet outside the school? 我们什么时间在校外见面？
in front of, behind	in front of 意为“在……前面”，表示有一定距离的前面，也可理解为在物体范围外的前面，其反义词是 behind。	There's a park in front of the house. 在那所房子的前面有一个公园。 Who sits behind you? 谁坐在你后面？

【考题在线 7】 All roads lead to Rome. The roads are just _____ your feet. （株洲改编）

A. under　B. in　C. on　D. beside

点拨：句意：条条大路通罗马，路就在你脚下。under 在……下面；in 在……里面；on 在……上面；beside 在……旁边，根据句意应该选 under。

2. 方位介词短语的功能

①作表语

作表语时，介词短语常位于系动词（主要是 be 动词）之后，用来说明主语的方位。

eg: We are in the classroom.
我们在教室里。
The big tree is in front of the house.
那棵大树在房子的前面。

对作表语的方位介词短语提问时要用 where。

eg: The bike is behind the tree.
那辆自行车在树的后面。
提问：
Where is the bike?
自行车在哪里？

②作状语

作状语时，介词短语可放在句首或句末，用来表示主语动作发生的地点。

eg: The girls are singing under the tree.
女孩子们正在树下唱歌。

对作状语的方位介词短语提问要用 where。

eg: We often read in the reading room.
我们经常在阅览室读书。

提问：
Where do you often read?
你们经常在哪里读书？

③作定语

方位介词短语还可放在名词后，限定、修饰名词，作名词的后置定语。

eg: The boy in front of Millie is my brother.
米莉前面的男孩是我弟弟。

对作定语的方位介词短语提问时要用 which，后接方位介词短语所修饰的名词。

eg: The girl next to me is Sandy.
我旁边的女孩是桑迪。

提问：
Which girl is Sandy?
哪个女孩是桑迪？

【考题在线 8】 Did you read your favourite books _____ April 23? It was World Book Day.

A. for　B. at　C. on　D. in

考题在线答案
1. A　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. D　6. D　7. A　8. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见238页)

单项选择

1. It's such _____ lovely panda that we all love it. (岳阳)
A. / B. a C. an

2. —Will you go to _____ school-leavers' party tomorrow?
—Certainly. I'm going with my parents. (温州)
A. a B. an
C. the D. /

3. I believe that _____ apple a day keeps the doctor away. (重庆B)
A. a B. an
C. the D. /

4. —Jane, I found _____ umbrella. Is it yours?
—No, it's Mike's. Mine is _____ third one on the shelf. (黔南)
A. a; an B. an; the
C. the; a D. a; the

5. Among all traditional Chinese arts, Nancy likes _____ Beijing opera best because it is really _____ fun. (泰州)
A. /; a B. /; /
C. the; a D. the; /

6. Mike has _____ basketball. He likes playing _____ basketball very much.
A. a; / B. /; /
C. a; a D. /; a

7. Mr. White has _____ 11-year-old boy. He is very handsome.
A. an B. a
C. / D. the

8. —How long does it take us to go to your hometown from here?
—It takes us _____ hour to go to my hometown by _____ train. (齐齐哈尔)
A. an; a B. an; /
C. an; the

9. The teenagers had _____ good time in the summer camp in their sister school. (上海)
A. a B. an
C. the D. /

10. _____ Greens are preparing for the coming Thanksgiving Day. (广东)
A. / B. A
C. An D. The

11. Jim lives _____ a small village and the air there is very fresh.
A. on B. in
C. under D. from

12. Nora opened the box. To her surprise, _____ it was a gold watch. (苏州)
A. outside B. inside
C. beside D. behind

13. —We'd better not read _____ the sun.
—I agree. It's bad for our eyes. (泉州)
A. in B. with
C. under

14. Jim sits behind me, so I sit _____ him.
A. under
B. in front of
C. in the front of
D. beside

15. —Is your father home?
—No, he's working late _____ the office. (北京)
A. on B. at
C. of D. to

16. —Excuse me, is there a computer room in your school?
—Yes. It's _____ the fifth floor. (重庆B)
A. on B. in
C. at D. to

17. Linda is standing _____ me.
A. next B. beside
C. inside D. in

18. Cambridge is a small city _____ the east of England. (天津)
A. between B. with
C. in D. under

19. I can't see Lucy because she is _____ the tree. (成都改编)
A. in front of B. behind
C. next to D. beside

20. Walk _____ this street, and turn right _____ the second crossing. Then you'll find the bank.
A. past; on B. along; at
C. cross; to D. to; to

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Finding treasure

A1 The students are going on a treasure hunt. Mr Wu is teaching them some simple instructions first. Listen to his instructions and tick (√) the correct boxes.

课文听力A1 音频及材料

A2 Simon and Daniel are in the same group. Listen to the instructions. Help them put these sentences in the correct order. Write the numbers 1 – 6 in the boxes.

□a **Walk past**[1] the house, turn left and walk along the path next to the river.

□b Walk along the path, and you'll see a house on your left.

□c When you're at the big tree, turn left and walk to the bridge.

课文听力A2 音频及材料

□d Cross the bridge, turn right and walk straight on.

□e The treasure is under the ground in front of the third tree on the left.

□f **Take the second turning on the right.**[2]

A3 Listen to the instructions again and draw the route on the map. Mark on the map where the treasure is.

You are here.

B Speak up: How do I get there?

Millie is giving Daniel directions to Sunny Garden. Work in pairs and tell your partner how to get to a place. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Millie: Hi, Daniel. There's an English Corner at Sunny Garden this Saturday afternoon. Would you like to come?

Daniel: Yes, I'd love to. **How do I get there?**[3]

Millie: You can walk there from your building. Go out and turn left. Walk straight on, and you'll see the traffic lights.

Daniel: Which way should I go at the traffic lights?

Millie: Just cross the road. Walk past the supermarket and turn left at the first crossing. Then you'll see Sunny Garden at the corner of the street.

Daniel: Thanks, Millie. See you there.

Study skills

Falling tone and rising tone

When we speak, we drop our tone at the end of a

综合技能

A 寻宝

A1 学生们正在进行寻宝。 首先，吴老师正在教他们一些简单的指令。 听他的指令，在正确的方框中打对号(√)。

A2 西蒙和丹尼尔在同一个组。 听指令。帮助他们把这些句子按正确的顺序排列。 在方框中写上数字1—6。

□a 步行经过房子，向左拐并沿着河边的小路走。

□b 沿着这条小路走，你会在你的左边看到一个房子。

□c 当你在大树处时，向左拐并步行到桥。

□d 穿过桥，向右拐，向前直走。

□e 宝藏在左边第三棵树的前面的地下。

□f 在第二个转弯处向右拐。

A3 再听一遍指令，在地图上画出路线。 在地图上有宝藏的地方做个记号。

你在这儿。

B 大声说：我如何到那儿？

米莉正在给丹尼尔指出去阳光花园的路。 结对练习，告诉你的同伴如何到达一个地方。用下面的对话作为示例。

米莉：你好，丹尼尔。 这周六下午阳光花园有一个英语角。 你想来吗？

丹尼尔：是的，我想去。 我怎么到那儿？

米莉：你可以从你住的大楼步行去那儿。 出来往左拐。 一直往前走，你会看到交通灯。

丹尼尔：到了交通灯那儿我该走哪条路？

米莉：只过马路。 走过超市并在第一个十字路口往左拐。 然后你会看到阳光花园在街道的角落。

丹尼尔：谢谢，米莉。 到那儿见。

学习技能

降调与升调

我们说话时，陈述句的末尾我们用降调。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

statement.

1 There is a path between the hills.

2 Pandas are cute.

When we ask a yes/no question, our tone rises at the end of the question.

1 Are there any lions?

2 Is the zoo far away from our school?

When we ask a wh- question, our tone usually falls at the end of the question.

1 What can you see across the bridge?

2 How do I get there?

We make our tone rise at the end of a sentence to show surprise.

Simon: **The zoo is about three kilometres away from our school.** ④

Daniel: Three kilometres?

Read the conversation below. Put a falling arrow (↘) or a rising arrow (↗) at the end of each sentence. Then practise it with your partner.

Millie: Hi, Sandy. Tomorrow is Saturday. Would you like to go and see a film?

Sandy: Yes, I'd like to. Which cinema do you want to go to?

Millie: The one at Sunshine Shopping Mall.

Sandy: Sunshine Shopping Mall?

Millie: Sure. We can go shopping there too.

Sandy: Good idea. When shall we meet?

Millie: Is 2 p. m. OK?

Sandy: All right. See you then.

课文朗读 Study skills

1 小山之间有一条小路。

2 熊猫是可爱的。

当我们问一个一般疑问句时，我们在这个问句末尾用升调。

1 有狮子吗？

2 动物园离我们学校远吗？

当我们读特殊疑问句时，我们通常在问题末尾读降调。

1 你能看到桥对面有什么？

2 我怎么到那儿？

在我们感到惊讶时，我们在句子末尾用升调。

西蒙：动物园离我们学校大约三公里远。

丹尼尔：三公里？

读下面的会话。 在每个句子的末尾加上降调(↘)或升调(↗)。 然后和你的同伴一起练习。

米莉：你好，桑迪。 明天是周六。 你想去看电影吗？

桑迪：是的，我想去。 你想去哪个电影院？

米莉：阳光购物中心的那个。

桑迪：阳光购物中心？

米莉：是的。 我们还可以去那儿购物。

桑迪：好主意。 我们什么时候见面？

米莉：下午两点，好吗？

桑迪：好的。 到时见。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶walk past 经过

eg: I **walk past** the Xinhua Bookstore on my way to school. 我在上学的路上经过新华书店。

考向：动词短语 walk past 相当于动词 pass。

eg: I bought some flowers when I **walked past** the flower store. = I bought some flowers when I **passed** the flower store.
我路过花店时买了一些花。

[辨析] past 与 pass

past	介词，“在另一边、到另一侧”，其前需加动词。	He went **past** the hospital just now. 刚才他经过那家医院。
pass	动词，“经过；走过”，指从人或物面前或旁边经过。	Soon their car **passed** ours. 他们的车很快超过了我们的车。

❷Take the second turning on the right. 在第二个拐弯处向右拐。

考向一：此句为祈使句，结构为“Take + the + 序数词 + turning on the left/right.”意为“在第……个拐弯处向左/右拐。”相当于“Turn left/right at the + 序数词 + turning.”。

eg: Walk along the street, and take the second turning on the right.
= Walk along the street, and turn right at the second turning.
沿着这条街走，在第二个拐弯处向右拐。

考向二：turn left/right 意为“向左/右拐”。若其后跟 into 短语，则表示“向左/右拐进……”。

eg: Turn right into People's Road.
向右拐进人民路。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③How do I get there? 我怎么到达那儿呢?

考向:[重点]这是一句典型的问路用语。问路时常用 excuse me 或 please 开头,表示礼貌。

eg: Excuse me, how can I get to the nearest bank? 打扰下,我怎么能到达最近的银行?

拓展 归纳常用的问路句型:

(1) Can/Could you tell me the way to ..., please?
(2) Which is the way to ..., please?
(3) Where is ...?
(4) How can I get to ...?
(5) Is there a/an ...near here?
(6) Do you know the way to ..., please?
(7) I want to go to ...Do you know the way?
(8) I'm looking for ...Can you tell me where it is?

④The zoo is about three kilometres away from our school. 动物园离我们学校大约有三公里远。

考向:表示一处离另一处的距离有多种表达方式:

a. It's + 距离 + from A to B. 意为"A 距离 B……"

eg: It's about eight miles from our school to the city.
从我们学校到那座城市大约有 8 英里远。

b. A + be + 距离 + from + B. 意为"A 距离 B……"

eg: The city is about eight miles from our school.
那座城市离我们学校大约有 8 英里远。

【注意】far 为不确定概念,仅表示"远",不能和表示具体距离的数字连用。

eg: The city is far away from here.
那座城市离这儿很远。

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见 238 页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. Take the first _____ (转弯处) on the right.
2. Xiao Liu put his umbrella in the _____ (角落) of the room. (北部湾)
3. Does he walk _____ (经过) the supermarket every day?
4. There is a policewoman at the _____ (红绿灯).

二、同义句转换

5. Take the second turning on the right.
Turn _____ _____ _____ _____ _____.
6. Can you tell me how I can get to the house?
Can you tell me _____ _____ _____ _____ the house?
7. Don't stop walking until you see my house.
_____ _____ _____ until you see my house.
8. Cross the bridge and turn right.
_____ _____ the bridge and turn right.

三、从方框中选出能填入下列空白处的正确选项

A: Excuse me. _____[9]
B: No, there isn't. The nearest one is about 5 kilometers away. _____[10]
A: Which bus shall I take, please?
B: The No. 32 bus. _____[11]
A: Does the bus stop in front of the hospital?
B: _____[12] It stops in front of a post office. _____[13] You'll find the hospital. It's between a park and a school.
A: Thanks a lot.
B: You're welcome.

A. The bus stop is along the road on the left.
B. Go down that road, and turn right at the traffic lights.
C. Is there a hospital near here?
D. No, it doesn't.
E. You can take a bus there.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

An invitation letter

A Suzy, one of the Class 1, Grade 7 students, is going to invite her friends to her birthday party at home. Read her invitation.

课文朗读A

Dear friends,

I am going to have a birthday party at home this weekend. I would like to invite you to the party. ❶ It will start at 2 p. m. on Sunday, 21 April. My parents will **prepare**❷ **plenty**❸ of food and drinks for us. We will also play some games.

I am looking forward to seeing you at the party. ❹

Yours,

Suzy

B Suzy wants to show her friends how to get to her home in her letter. Help her complete the directions according to the map.

My home	Bank	Underground
Winter Road	Autumn Street	
Orange Street		
Exit A	Exit B	

This is the way to my home. Take the (1) _____. Get out at Exit A. Turn (2) _____ and walk straight on to the traffic lights. Then cross Autumn Street and turn (3) _____. Walk across Orange Street. You will see a bank in front of you. My home is (4) _____ the bank.

C Write an invitation letter to your friends and give them directions to your home. Use Suzy's letter and directions as a model.

Useful expressions

I am going to have a Christmas/birthday ... party.
I am happy to invite you to....
It will start at noon/one o'clock/2:30 p. m. on....
We will have a big dinner at/in....
We will meet near/in front of/at/in....
I am looking forward to seeing you at....

Self-assessment

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about Sunshine Zoo.		
2 use the new words to give directions.		

任务

一封邀请函

A 苏西，七年级一班的一名学生，准备邀请她的朋友们参加她在家举行的生日聚会。读她的邀请函。

亲爱的朋友们，
这周末我打算在家举行生日聚会。我想邀请你们来参加聚会。聚会将在四月二十一日，周日下午两点开始。我的父母将为我们准备足够的食物和饮料。我们还将玩一些游戏。
我期盼在聚会上见到你们。

你的，
苏西

B 苏西在信里告诉她的朋友们怎样到达她家。根据地图帮助她完成指向。

我的家	银行	地铁
冬天路	秋天大街	
橘色大街		
出口A	出口B	

这是去我家的路。乘(1)_____。从出口A出来。向(2)_____拐，一直走到交通灯处。然后穿过秋天大街，向(3)_____拐。走过橘色大街。你会看见你的前面有个银行。我家在银行的(4)_____。

C 给你的朋友们写一封邀请函，给他们指出到你家的路。用苏西的信和指引作为示例。

有用的表达方式
我打算举行圣诞/生日……聚会。
我很高兴邀请你们来……
它将……在中午/一点钟/下午两点半开始。
我们将在/在……举行大宴会。
我们将在……附近/在……前面/在……/在……里见面。
我期盼在……见到你。

自我评估

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论阳光动物园。		
2 用新的单词指出路线。		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 use correct articles to talk about nouns. use correct prepositions to talk about places.		
4 use falling tone or rising tone for different sentences.		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

3 用正确的冠词谈论名词。 用正确的介词谈论地点。		
4 在不同的句中使用降调或升调。		

结果：极好！ 好！ 不错！

我需要花费更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**开门见山法**：这两句是整个邀请信的中心句，一开始就直接表明了作者写信的目的，以下内容的展开是围绕这两句进行的有关内容的说明。我们在写信件类文章的时候，要注意在开头应当直接表示写作的目的，下面可就具体内容进行详细说明。

❷**prepare** /prɪˈpeə(r)/ *v.* **准备**

eg: She is **preparing** for anything to happen.
她正准备好应付一切。

考向：prepare 的用法有：

prepare sth. for sb. 为某人准备某物	His mother is preparing a meal for us. 他妈妈正在为我们准备饭菜。
prepare sth. 准备某事	We need to prepare our lessons. 我们需要准备功课。
prepare for sth. 为某事做准备	You should prepare for the trip. 你应该为旅行做准备。
prepare to do sth. 准备做某事	I am preparing to leave. 我正在准备离开。

❸**plenty** /ˈplenti/ *pron.* **大量，充足**

eg: There is **plenty** of rain in the south in spring.
春天南方雨水充足。

考向：常用搭配：plenty of 许多，大量，既可以修饰可数名词，也可以修饰不可数名词。修饰名词作主语时，谓语动词的数与后面的名词保持一致。

eg: There is **plenty** of time left.
还剩有大量的时间。

【注意】plenty of 多用于肯定句中，在否定句中用 much 或 many 代替，疑问句中用 enough 代替。

【考题在线】我的花园里有大量的蔬菜，但没有许多的花。
There are _____ vegetables in my garden, but there aren't _____ flowers.

❹**抒发情怀法**：在信的结尾表明了自己的态度，希望大家能来参加聚会。我们在写此类文章时经常用这样的方法来表明自己的态度。

考题在线答案
plenty of; many

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

"TWG 法"写指示方向类作文

T 指记住关键词 turn 和 take：turn right, turn left, take ...bus, take the ...turning(on the right/left)

W 指记住关键词 walk：walk along ..., walk past ..., walk across ...

G 指记住关键词 go：go along/up/down/past/across

易错点提示

1. 在地图上要分清左右。
2. 介词不能单独作谓语。

参考词汇和句式

单词	along, opposite, street, middle, from, up, down, invite, party, cross, turning
短语	in front of, the way to, go across, go/walk along, turn right/left, get off, take the second turning, on the left/right
句式	Walk along ...until ... You can see a ... on your left/right. Walk past ... and take the second turning on the left.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

典例

假如你是Simon，下个星期天就是你的生日，你想邀请你的朋友们来参加你的生日聚会。请按照下面的提示写邀请函告知他们如何参加。90词左右。

要点包括：

1. 生日聚会将在下个星期天中午12:00在家中（花园大厦505室）举办。
2. 路线：乘坐1路公共汽车到南路即可。沿着南路一直走到红绿灯处，然后过马路，经过市场后在第二个路口左转弯，将看见花园大厦，正好在超市旁边。
3. 期盼朋友们参加聚会。

【范文欣赏】

Dear friends,

I am happy to invite you to my birthday party. I will have the party at home at 12:00 next Sunday.

Here is the way to my home. Take the No. 1 bus and get off the bus at South Road. Walk along South Road until you reach the traffic lights. Then go across the road. Walk past the market and take the second turning on the left. You'll see Garden Building. It's right beside the supermarket. I live in Flat 505. I hope you can come. I'm looking forward to seeing you at my party.

Yours faithfully,
Simon

【点评】

本文运用"TWG法"指示方向。

T：take the No. 1 bus, take the second turning on the left ...

W：walk along ...until, walk past ...

G：go across the road

添彩点：

本文能根据不同的地理位置，正确选用不同的动词短语take the ...turning, walk along/past ...等对行进方向发出明确指示，语言简明扼要，表述简单明了。



"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见239页)

一、根据提示完成句子

1. Where is the _____ (出口) of the shopping mall?
2. Could you tell me the way to the _____ (银行)?
3. Before travelling, my mother often _____ (准备) everything well. (宿迁)
4. You still have _____ (充足) of time for your homework.
5. I would like to _____ (邀请) Tom and Lucy to come to my party, too.

二、根据汉语完成句子

6. 我们将在这周六举行野餐。
   We will _____ _____ _____ this Saturday.
7. 你能为我准备一些书吗？
   Can you _____ some books _____ _____?
8. 这是去我家的路。
   This is _____ _____ _____ my home.
9. 听到这个好消息，玛丽很高兴。
   Mary _____ _____ _____ _____ the good news.
10. 我们正期盼有一天能够游览长城。
    We are _____ _____ _____ _____ the Great Wall some day.

三、根据课文内容及首字母提示完成短文

Hi, everybody. Today we are going to v_____[11] Sunshine Zoo. Here we're in f_____[12] of the South Gate. Go s_____[13] on, and you'll find the Panda House. Walk a_____[14] the road. To the n_____[15] of the Panda House, you'll find the lions. Turn l_____[16], and to the w_____[17] of the Lions' Area, you'll find the World of Birds. Then turn r_____[18] and to the e_____[19] of the Monkeys' Forest, you'll see the giraffes.

Here you can see all kinds of a_____[20]. Have a nice trip!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Project 1

课文原文及译文

A tourist guide

Some of the exchange students want to visit your hometown. They will stay for three days. Prepare a guide to your hometown for them.

A Planning schedules

Work in groups of four. First, plan some schedules. Use the table below or design your own. There should be different schedules for students with different interests. For example, some students might be interested in outdoor sports or going to parks. Others might want to go shopping or visit museums.

Day 1	Day 2	Day 3
8 a. m. —Arrive		
		9 a. m. —Leave

B Preparing the guide to your hometown

Next, each member of the group will work on a different section of the guide.

1 General information: Think of some general information about your hometown. The following questions may help you.

· When is the best time of year to visit your hometown?
· What is special about your hometown?

旅游指南

一些交换生想参观你的家乡。他们将呆三天。为他们准备一份你家乡的指南。

A 日程安排

四人一组合作。首先，计划一些日程安排。用下面的表或者自己设计。不同兴趣爱好的学生应该有不同的日程安排。例如，一些学生可能对户外运动或去公园感兴趣。其他的或许想购物或参观博物馆。

第一天	第二天	第三天
上午八点——到达		
		上午九点——离开

B 准备你家乡的指南

接下来，小组每个成员将完成指南的不同部分。

1 一般信息：想一些关于你家乡的一般信息。下面的问题可能会帮助你。

· 一年中什么时候是参观你家乡的最好时节？
· 你家乡什么地方特别？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

- What time do the shops open?
- What should visitors bring with them? Warm clothes? Umbrellas?

2 Places to stay: Find out about the different hotels in your hometown. Get some information from the Internet.
- Where are the hotels?
- How can people get there?
- Which is the best hotel for visitors?

3 Places to visit: Think about some interesting places to visit in your hometown. Discuss how to get there and what to see and do there.
- What are the interesting places to visit?
- Where are the places?
- How can people get there? How long does it take?
- What can visitors see or do there?

4 Pictures and maps: Find pictures, maps and postcards of your hometown. Use them to make your guide more interesting.

Finally, put the different sections together. Start a new page for each section. Make the front cover attractive and interesting.

- 商店什么时候开门?
- 参观者应该带什么? 暖和的衣服? 雨伞?

2 住的地方: 找出你家乡不同的宾馆。从网上收集一些信息。

- 宾馆在哪儿?
- 人们如何到达那里?
- 对参观者来说哪个是最好的宾馆?

3 参观的地方: 想一些你家乡可参观的、有趣的地方。讨论如何到达那儿,在那儿看什么,做什么。
- 哪些是可参观的、有趣的地方?
- 这些地方在哪儿?
- 人们如何到达那儿? 要花多长时间?
- 参观者在那儿能看到或做什么?

4 图片和地图: 找一些你家乡的图片,地图和明信片。用它们使你的指南更加有趣。

最后,把不同的部分放在一起。使每个部分另起一页。使封面有吸引力,并且有趣。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 Amazing things

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①时间导入法(109 页)　②交代结局法(113 页)
写作方法	①“总分总法”写令人惊异的人/事/物(122 页)
解题方法	1 交际法(104 页)　2 替代法(105 页)　3 词义猜测法(239 页) 4 寻找题眼法(122,228,239 页)　5 联系上下文法(228,239 页) 6 语境判断法(239 页)　7 词语应用法(228,239 页)　8 词义辨析法(239 页)

学习目标梳理

话题	谈论世界上各种令人惊奇的事		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	same *adj.* 同一的,相同的　birth *n.* 出生,诞生　earth *n.* 地球　back *n.* 后部;背部　fat *n.* 脂肪　fact *n.* 事实	with their eyes open 眼睛睁着　stop doing sth. 停止做某事　the same size 同样大小　in the back of 在……后部　from birth 从出生起
	Period 2	as *adv.* 和……一样　usual *adj.* 通常的,平常的　suddenly *adv.* 突然　anybody *pron.* 任何人　nobody *pron.* 没有人,无人　reply *vi.* & *n.* 答复,回答　strange *adj.* 奇怪的　happen *vi.* 发生　himself *pron.* 他自己　pick *vt.* 拾起　later *adv.* 随后,后来　somebody *pron.* 某人,有人　quickly *adv.* 迅速地,飞快地　surprised *adj.* 吃惊的,惊讶的　search *vt.* & *vi.* 搜查,搜寻,搜索　leave *vt.* 离开;使处于某种状态　everything *pron.* 每件事,每样事物,一切　wonder *vi.* & *vt.* 琢磨,想知道;感到诧异　carefully *adv.* 仔细地,认真地;小心地　weak *adj.* 虚弱的,无力的;弱的	as usual 照例;像往常一样 sit down 坐下 turn around 转身;(使)翻转 on one's/the way 在……路上 say to oneself 自言自语 pick up 拿起,举起 run away 逃离,跑开 take ...to ... 带……到…… the animal centre 动物中心 sound like 听起来像 go back to 回到…… later that day 那天晚些时候
	Period 3	ago *adv.* 以前	the day before yesterday 前天 have a great time 玩得愉快 take photos 照相 a long time ago 很久以前 live on the earth 生活在地球上
	Period 4	snake *n.* 蛇　ant *n.* 蚂蚁　dry *adj.* 干的;干燥的　chalk *n.* 粉笔　without *prep.* 没有　little *pron.* & *det.* 不多的,少数的	be afraid of 害怕　hear of 听说,知道 at the same time 同时 the other day 那天,前几天 not ...any more 再也不,不再
	Period 5	sandwich *n.* 三明治　by *prep.* 不迟于,在……之前　use *n.* 使用,利用;用途	as ...as 像……一样　at least 至少 all over the world 遍及全世界 ask for 请求;要　a piece of ... 一片……　stop for meals 停下来吃饭 in use 在使用中

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

句型	1. Do you know any fun facts about ...? 你知道有关……的有趣的事实吗? 2. Isn't that amazing? 难道那不令人吃惊吗? 3. One Sunday morning, Millie and Amy went to ...一个周日的早上,米莉和埃米去…… 4. On their way home, they ...在其回家的路上,她们…… 5. I was surprised to ...我很惊讶地…… 6. We live in a wonderful world with ...我们生活在一个充满……的美好世界里。
语法	一般过去时(一)

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

课文朗读 Comic strip

1 Hey, Hobo. Look at that. What is it?
2 It's a UFO, Hobo.
Come on[1], Eddie. It's just a plane. I saw one yesterday.
3 No. It's a UFO. Look at its bright lights. They're only the lights on the plane.
4 It's not a plane. Look, it's too small.

Imagine that!
The world is full of amazing things. The Sunshine Middle School students are learning about some of them.
Task
Write an article about amazing things.

Welcome to the unit

Fun facts

A Your friend is showing you a book about some unusual things. Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and match them with the sentences.

a Fish sleep **with their eyes open**[2].
b Our eyes are the **same**[3] size from **birth**[4], but our nose and ears never **stop growing**[5].
c The Sun is about 1,300,000 times larger than the Earth.
d There are no bones in the back of elephants' feet—only fat.

B Kitty and Amy are talking about the fun facts in Part A. Work in pairs and talk about this topic with the words in the box. Use the conversation below as a model.

amazing	cool	funny
great	interesting	wonderful

连环漫画

1 嘿,霍波。 看那个东西。 它是什么?
2 它是不明飞行物,霍波。
得了吧,埃迪。 那只是一架飞机。 昨天我看见了一架。
3 不。 它是不明飞行物。 看它那明亮的光。
那只是飞机上的灯。
4 它不是飞机。 看,它太小了。

想象一下!
世界上充满了令人惊奇的东西。 阳光中学的学生们正在了解它们当中的一部分。
任务
写一篇有关令人惊讶的事的文章。

单元导入

有趣的事实

A 你的朋友正在给你看一本有关一些不寻常的事的书。 结对练习。 看图片并与句子搭配起来。

a 鱼睁着眼睛睡觉。
b 我们的眼睛和出生时一样大,但是我们的鼻子和耳朵从没有停止生长。
c 太阳的体积大约是地球的一百三十万倍。
d 大象的脚后跟没有骨头——只有脂肪。

B 基蒂和埃米正在谈论 A 部分有趣的事实。结对练习并用方框里的单词谈论这个话题。 用下面的会话作为示例。

令人惊讶的	凉爽的 有趣的
伟大的	有趣的 精彩的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Kitty: Do you know any fun **facts**[6] about the world, Amy?
Amy: Yes. The Sun is about 1,300,000 times larger than the Earth.
Kitty: That's interesting! What about fish, Amy?
Amy: Fish sleep with their eyes open.
Kitty: Oh, really?
Amy: Yes. **Isn't that amazing**?[7]

课文朗读B

基蒂：埃米，你知道有关世界上一些有趣的事实吗？
埃米：是的。太阳的体积大约是地球的一百三十万倍。
基蒂：那很有趣！埃米，鱼呢？
埃米：鱼睁着眼睛睡觉。
基蒂：哦，真的吗？
埃米：是的。难道那不令人吃惊吗？

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶come on 得了吧

考向一：come on 意为“得啦；行啦；够啦”，常表示知道某人所说的话不正确。

eg: Kate, **come on**—you know that isn't true!
凯特，行啦，你知道那不是真的！

考向二：come on 还可表示：

come on	“来吧”，表示请求、鼓励、劝说等。	**Come on**, Tom. You can do it. 来吧，汤姆。你能行的。
	“快点”，用来催促别人快走（做）。	**Come on**! It's getting dark. 快点！天要黑了。
	“加油”，用于体育竞赛等场合鼓励队员。	“**Come on! Come on!**” shouted the audience again and again. “加油！加油！”观众一再地喊。

【考题在线 1】—I am too tired to walk any farther, Jack.
—_____, Daniel. You can do it. （泰安）
A. No hurry　　B. No problem
C. That's all　　D. Come on
点拨：本题用交际法。no hurry“不着急”；no problem“没问题”；that's all“就这样”；come on“赶快，加油”。根据“杰克，我累得再也走不动了。”及“你可以做到的。”可知选 D。

❷with their eyes open 眼睛睁着

考向一：此短语是“with + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”的复合结构，open 是形容词，作宾语补足语；with 在这里表示一种行为方式。此短语在句中作伴随状语。

eg: Peter likes sleeping **with the window open**.
彼得喜欢开着窗户睡觉。

【考题在线 2】—Why do you always sleep _____?
—Because I'm afraid of the dark. （烟台）
A. by yourself
B. with the door open
C. with the window open
D. with the light on
点拨：根据句意“——你为什么总是_____睡觉？——因为我怕黑。”with the light on 在句中作伴随状语。

考向二：[难点] with 为介词，常见用法见下表：

表示“和”，后跟代词或名词。	Come with me, please. 请跟我来。
表示“带有，含有”。	a house with a small garden 带有一个小花园的房子
表示“使用某种工具”。	Please cut the apple with the knife. 请用刀切开这个苹果。
用于某些固定搭配。	with the help of 在……的帮助下

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线3】 —Kelly, who's the girl _____ glasses in the photo?
—It's me. I used to wear glasses and have long hair.
A. by B. of
C. on D. with

3same /seɪm/ *adj.* 同一的,相同的

eg: Tom and I are good friends, and we are in the **same** class.
我和汤姆是好朋友,我们在同一个班。

考向一: same 的反义词是 different,意为"不一样的,不同的"。same 前一般加定冠词 the,且 same 后的名词常用单数形式,而 different 后的名词则常用复数形式。

eg: They are in the **same** grade but in different classes.
他们在同一年级,但在不同的班里。

【考题在线4】 They are in different teams. (改为同义句) (白银)
They aren't in _____ _____ team.
点拨:本题用替代法。different 相当于 not the same。

考向二:常用搭配有:
the same as ...和……一样;
look the same 看起来一样;
the same size 一样的尺寸

4birth /bɜːθ/ *n.* 出生,诞生

eg: Mark has been blind from **birth**.
马克先天失明。

考向:常用短语有:
the day of one's birth
某人出生的日子;
give birth to 生孩子,产仔;
from birth 从出生起

拓展 birthday 生日;
birthplace 出生地

培养"中外文化差异"素养

中国人过生日是十分讲究的。在习俗(custom)中,中国人过生日吃面条(noodles)和鸡蛋。近些年来,生日蛋糕也必不可少,通常是在吃完饭后寿星许愿(make a wish)吹蜡烛,切蛋糕,大家齐唱生日快乐歌并分享蛋糕。

在多数英语国家,一般是在生日 Party 上有人捧出点燃生日蜡烛的生日蛋糕时大家齐声歌唱(一般要关灯,保持房间黑暗)。生日蛋糕一般是一种装饰得非常漂亮的蛋糕,而且在端上来的时候上面要插上与寿星年龄一样多的蜡烛。寿星要默默地许个愿望,然后吹灭蜡烛。

【素养行动】记住家人和朋友的生日,用心给他们准备一份生日礼物(birthday gift)吧。

【素养行动结果】感恩(be grateful)父母,感恩亲人和朋友。

5stop doing sth. 停止做某事

eg: Class begins. **Stop talking**.
上课了。停止讲话。

考向:[辨析] stop doing sth. 与 stop to do sth.

知识微课: stop的用法

stop doing sth. 停止正在做的事	He **stopped talking** with me. 他停止和我说话了。
stop to do sth. 停下来做另一件事	He **stopped to talk** to me. 他停下来和我说话。

【考题在线5】 Please stop _____ and go out for a walk. Remember _____ warm clothes. (黔南)
A. to study; wearing
B. studying; to wear
C. to study; to wear
D. studying; wearing
点拨:句意:别学习了,去外面散散步吧,记得穿上暖和的衣服。stop doing sth. 停止正在做的事情;stop to do sth. 停止去做另一件事情;remember doing sth. 记得已经做过某事;remember to do sth. 记得去做某事。

【考题在线6】 We are too tired. Let's stop _____ a rest.
A. to have
B. have
C. having
D. to having

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

6 fact /fækt/ *n.* 事实

eg:Facts speak louder than words.
事实胜于雄辩。

考向:常用短语:in fact 事实上,实际上。

eg:In fact, he is older than me.
事实上,他比我大。

【考题在线 7】 Though many children get Mr. Guo's help, _____(事实上),his family is not rich enough. (包头)

7 Isn't that amazing?
难道那不令人吃惊吗?

考向一:此句为否定式的一般疑问句,意为"难道不……吗?",常用于反问。

eg: Aren't they good friends?
难道他们不是好朋友吗?

考向二:[易错点]否定式的一般疑问句句型的回答,若肯定所述的事实,用 Yes 回答;若否定所述的事实,用 No 回答。

eg:—Isn't the story funny?
难道这个故事不好笑吗?
—Yes, it is.
不,它好笑。("好笑"为肯定含义。)
—No, it isn't.
对,它不好笑。("不好笑"为否定含义。)

考题在线答案
1. D 2. D 3. D 4. the same
5. B 6. A 7. in fact

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见239页)

一、根据句意及所给提示完成句子

1. The baby panda weighs about 100 grams at _____(出生).
2. Your coat is of the _____ (同样的) size as mine.
3. Jack knows many fun f_____ about the world.
4. There are a lot of _____ (amaze) things in the world.
5. Stop _____(talk), please. Let's begin our meeting. (吉林)

二、单项选择

6. —Look! There is _____ UFO over there.
—Come on, dear! It's just _____ amazing model plane.
A. an; an
B. an; a
C. a; a
D. a; an

7. My grandma likes sleeping _____ the window _____.
A. with; opened
B. by; opened
C. with; open
D. by; open

8. The box is twice _____than that one.
A. large
B. larger
C. largest

9. —I'm afraid there is a ghost in the tree, Daddy!
—_____. That's nothing but a bird.
A. Be careful
B. Come on
C. That's OK
D. You're welcome

10. —Isn't that a funny thing?
—_____. I like it very much.
【导学号:1037419】
A. Yes, it is
B. Yes, it isn't
C. No, it isn't
D. No, it is

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

课文朗读A

A The ghost in the park

Last Sunday, Millie and Amy went to Sunshine Park. Something strange happened there. They told Daniel their story and Daniel put the story on his blog. Here is the story.

The ghost in the park

One Sunday morning, Millie and Amy went to Sunshine Park. ① **As usual** ②, they sat down under a big tree.

Suddenly, they **heard** ③ a whisper from the bushes behind the tree. They **turned around** ④ but saw nothing. "Is anybody there?" Millie asked. Nobody **replied** ⑤. "That's **strange** ⑥," the two girls were very afraid. They **left** ⑦ the park quickly. **On their way** ⑧ home, they met Andy.

"What **happened** ⑨?" Andy asked.

"There's a ghost in the park!" Millie said. Then she told Andy everything. "What is it?" Andy wondered. He went to the park, stood beside the tree and listened **carefully** ⑩. Then he heard the whisper! He **searched** ⑪ the bushes.

"Here it is," Andy **said to himself** ⑫. He found a little cat in the bushes. It was very weak. When it miaowed, it sounded like a whisper.

Andy **picked** ⑬ up the little cat and went to find Millie and Amy.

"This is the ghost in the park," Andy said. Millie and Amy were very **surprised** ⑭—it was a little cat! **Later** ⑮ **that day, they took the little cat to the animal centre.** ⑯

B Talking about the "ghost"

B1 Here are some words in the story about the "ghost" in the park. Find the meaning of each word by circling the correct letter.

1 *As usual* means _____.

a the first time

阅读

A 公园里的鬼

上个星期天，米莉和埃米去了阳光公园。在那儿发生了一些奇怪的事。她们告诉了丹尼尔她们的故事，丹尼尔把故事放在了他的博客上。下面就是这个故事。

公园里的鬼

一个星期天的早晨，米莉和埃米去了阳光公园。像往常一样，她们坐在了一棵大树下。

突然，她们听到从树后的灌木丛中传来的低语声。她们转过身去，但什么也没看到。"有人吗？"米莉问。没人回答。"很奇怪，"两个女孩感到很害怕。她们迅速地离开了公园。在回家的路上，她们遇见了安迪。

"发生了什么事？"安迪问。

"公园里有鬼！"米莉说。然后她把一切都告诉了安迪。"它是什么呢？"安迪感到疑惑。他去了公园，站在树的旁边仔细听。然后他听到了低语声！他搜查了灌木丛。

"它在这儿，"安迪自言自语道。他在灌木丛中发现了一只小猫。它很虚弱。当它喵喵叫的时候，听起来就像低语声。

安迪抱起小猫去找米莉和埃米。

"这就是公园里的鬼，"安迪说。米莉和埃米很惊讶——它是一只小猫！那天晚些时候，他们把小猫送到了动物中心。

B 谈论"鬼"

B1 这是公园里的有关"鬼"的故事中的一些单词。找出每个单词的意思，把正确的字母圈出来。

1 像往常一样意思是_____。

a 第一次

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

b as they often do
c seldom

2 To *reply* means _____.
a to think
b to say something again
c to say or write something as an answer

3 To *leave* means _____.
a to find out
b to look for
c to go away

4 If you *wonder*, you _____.
a want to know something
b feel great
c say something happily

5 To *search* means _____.
a to find something
b to shout at something
c to look carefully for something

6 *Weak* means _____.
a clever
b small
c not strong

B2 **Millie wrote some sentences about what happened, but they are not in the correct order. Help her put the sentences in the correct order. Write the numbers 1—7 in the boxes.**

□a We ran away quickly.
□b Andy found a little cat in the bushes.
□c We sat under a big tree in the park.
□d Suddenly, we heard a whisper.
□e We turned around but saw nothing.
□f Andy went to the park.
□g I told Andy about the strange sound.

B3 **Millie is telling her friend Wendy on the phone about what happened in the park, but Wendy cannot hear her clearly. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.**

1 I was afraid when I heard the whisper. _____
2 The whisper came from a big tree. _____

b 就像他们经常做的
c 很少

2 回复意思是_____。
a 思考
b 再说一遍
c 说或写某事作为回答

3 离开意思是_____。
a 查明
b 寻找
c 走开

4 如果你想知道，你_____。
a 想知道某事
b 感觉好极了
c 高兴地说某事

5 搜查意思是_____。
a 找到某物
b 对某物大声喊
c 仔细寻找某物

6 虚弱意思是_____。
a 聪明
b 小
c 不强壮

B2 米莉写了一些有关发生的事的句子，但它们的顺序不正确。帮她把下面的句子用正确的顺序排列。把数字 1—7 填在方框中。

□a 我们迅速地逃走了。
□b 安迪在灌木丛中发现了一只小猫。
□c 我们坐在公园里的一棵大树下。
□d 突然，我们听到了低语声。
□e 我们转过身去但什么也没看到。
□f 安迪去了公园。
□g 我告诉了安迪关于奇怪的声音的事。

B3 米莉正在电话里告诉她的朋友温迪有关公园里发生的事，但是温迪听不清楚她说的话。如果句子正确写 T，如果错误写 F。

1 当我听到低语声时，我害怕。_____
2 低语声是从一棵大树那儿传来的。_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 We went back to the park with Andy. _____
4 Somebody helped Andy find the "ghost". ____
5 Andy found a little cat in the bushes. _____
6 Andy gave the little cat to Amy. _____

B4 **Henry, Andy's friend, is asking Andy about the "ghost". Help Andy answer his questions.**

Henry: What did Millie and Amy hear?
Andy: They heard a (1) _____. They were very (2) _____ and left the park quickly.
Henry: What did you find?
Andy: I found a little cat in the (3) _____.
Henry: Why did the little cat sound like a ghost?
Andy: It was very (4) _____, so when it (5) _____, it sounded like a whisper.
Henry: Where's the little cat now?
Andy: We took it to the (6) _____ centre.

3 我们和安迪一起回到了公园。 _____
4 有人帮助安迪找到了"鬼"。 _____
5 安迪在灌木丛中发现了一只小猫。 _____
6 安迪把小猫给了埃米。 _____

B4 安迪的朋友亨利正在问安迪有关"鬼"的事。帮助安迪回答他的问题。

亨利:米莉和埃米听到了什么?
安迪:她们听到了(1) _____。她们非常(2) _____并迅速地离开了公园。
亨利:你发现了什么?
安迪:我在(3) _____里发现了一只小猫。
亨利:为什么小猫的叫声听起来像鬼?
安迪:它非常(4) _____,因此当它(5) _____,它听起来像低语声。
亨利:现在小猫在哪儿?
安迪:我们把它送到了(6) _____中心。

课文结构梳理

Millie and Amy	went to Sunshine Park one Sunday morning.
	_____[1] down under a big tree.
	heard a whisper from the bushes behind the tree.
	_____[2] around but saw nothing.
	were afraid so they _____[3] the park quickly.
	met Andy and told him everything.
	_____[4] the little cat to the animal centre.

答案:1. sat 2. turned 3. left 4. took

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶时间导入法:此句中的"One Sunday morning"意为"一个星期天的早上",one 表示"某个,某一个",后面可接表示时间的词,多用在叙述过去发生的事情的句子前。我们在讲故事或写过去发生的事的文章的时候,要注意可用"one + 时间词"作为故事的开头。句子的后半部分交代了人物和地点。

❷as usual 像往常一样

eg: **As usual**, he goes to work by bike.
像往常一样,他骑着自行车去上班了。

考向一:形容词 usual 的反义词为 unusual,意为"不寻常的,不平常的"。由于 unusual 是以元音音素开头的词,作单数可数名词的定语,表泛指时,前面需用不定冠词 an。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

eg: What an **unusual** day!
多么不平常的一天!

【考题在线 1】—Did you hear anything _____ (usual) in the next door?
—No, I was chatting online with friends. (龙东)

考向二: usual 的副词为 usually,意为"通常"。
eg: He **usually** goes to the park on Saturday morning.
他通常星期六早晨去公园。

3 hear /hɪə(r)/ *v.* 听见,听说
考向一: hear of 意为"听说",相当于 hear about,后接名词或代词。hear from sb. "收到某人的来信"。
eg: Do you **hear of /about** the story?
你听说过这个故事吗?
I **heard from** her two days ago.
两天前我收到了她的来信。
考向二: [辨析] hear, listen 与 sound 见 Unit 1 Period 2 知识点 10。

4 turn around 转身
eg: **Turn around** and let me look at your back.
转过去,让我看看你的后背。
考向: turn around 意为"转过身",表示将身体转向和原来朝向相反的位置,但是没有走动;turn back 意为"原路返回,往回走",表示先转身,然后往回走了一段距离。动词词组 turn around 中 around 为副词,也可用 turn round。

拓展 与 turn 相关的短语:
turn on 打开(水、电等);
turn off 关闭(水、电等);
turn up 调大声音;
turn down 调小声音;
turn out 结果是;
turn into 变成

【考题在线 2】—The baby is sleeping. Please _____ the radio.
—Sorry, I'll do it right now. (泸州)
A. turn up
B. turn down
C. turn on
D. turn over

点拨: 句意:——婴儿在睡觉。请把收音机的声音调小一点。——对不起,我现在就做。turn up 声音开大;turn down 声音开小;turn on 打开;turn over 换台。根据"The baby is sleeping"可知应该选 turn down。

5 reply /rɪ'plaɪ/ *v.* 回答,答复
eg: She didn't know how to **reply**.
她不知道要怎样回答。
考向: [辨析] reply 与 answer

answer	多用于"回答问题(answer the question)"或"接电话(answer the telephone)"等。	Can you **answer** my question? 你能回答我的问题吗?
reply	比 answer 正式,一般指经过思考、有针对性的回答。reply 作不及物动词使用时,不能直接接宾语,要加 to,即 reply to = answer。	He never **replied** to any of my letters. 他从来没给我回过信。

魔法记忆
一语辨异: We are very busy. We have to not only **answer** the calls, but also **reply** to the letters. 我们非常忙碌。我们不仅要接电话,还得回信。

6 strange /streɪndʒ/ *adj.* 奇怪的
eg: His idea is **strange**. 他的想法是奇怪的。
考向一: strange 作形容词,还可意为"陌生的;生疏的;不熟悉的"。
eg: When he woke up, he found himself in a **strange** place.
他醒来时,发现自己在一个陌生的地方。
考向二: stranger 意为"陌生人"。
eg: Are you afraid of **strangers**?
你害怕陌生人吗?

【考题在线 3】Tom is a boy full of _____ (奇怪) ideas.

7 leave /liːv/ *v.* 离开
eg: When does the train **leave**?
火车什么时候离开?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考向一：[辨析] leave 与 leave for

leave + 地点	表示“离开某地”。	He will **leave** Beijing tomorrow. 他明天要离开北京。
leave for + 地点	表示“前往某地”。	Sandy will **leave for** Beijing tonight. 桑迪今晚将前往北京。

考向二：“leave sth. + 地点状语”意为“把某物落在某地”。

eg: My mother often leaves her bag in her office.
我妈妈经常把她的包落在她的办公室里。

考向三：[辨析] leave 与 forget

leave	指因粗心而没带某物或把某物落在某处，其后往往有一个地点状语。	I **left** my keys at home. 我把钥匙落在家里了。
forget	指大脑不能记起或回忆不起过去的人、事物或事情，其反义词为 remember。	I **forgot** his name. 我忘记了他的名字。

【考题在线 4】—I can't find my English textbook.
—Is it possible that you _____ it at home? （白银）
A. lost B. saw
C. left D. gave

点拨：句意：——我找不到我的英语书了。——有可能你把它忘在家了吗？把某物忘在某地，用 leave，过去式 left。其他选项 lose，lost 丢失，see，saw 看见，give，gave 给，都不符合句意。

8 on one's way 在路上；在途中

eg: **On my way**, I saw the accident.
在路上，我看到了那场事故。

考向一：固定结构 on one's way 中若有形容词性物主代词，形容词性物主代词要和主语保持一致。如果不强调某人时，也可用 on the way。

考向二：on one's way 后面可跟“to + 地点名词”，即：on one's way to + 地点名词，意为“在某人去……的路上”。若固定结构“on one's way to”后接的不是地点名词，而是 here，there，home 等地点副词时，要省略介词 to。

eg: **On her way to** school, she bought some flowers.
她在去学校的路上买了一些花。
Tom hurt his leg **on his way home**.
汤姆在回家的路上伤了腿。

9 happen /ˈhæpən/ *vi.* **发生**

eg: What **happened** to him last week?
上周他发生了什么事？

考向一：不及物动词 happen 特别指那些偶然的或不能预见的事“发生”。
常用结构：
a. sth. happen(s) to sb.，意为“某事发生在某人身上”。

eg: It's the best thing that has ever **happened to me**.
这是我所遇到的最好的事。

b. happen to do sth. 恰巧做某事

eg: **I happened to meet** my history teacher in the street yesterday.
昨天在街上我碰巧遇见了我的历史老师。

考向二：[辨析] happen 与 take place

happen	用来强调某事发生的偶然性。	A car accident **happened** in that street last night. 昨晚那条街上发生了一起车祸。
take place	“发生”，表示事先有安排或有准备。	A sports meeting **took place** in our school last week. 上周我们学校举办了运动会。

10 carefully /ˈkeəfəli/ *adv.* **仔细地，认真地；小心地**

eg: Please listen **carefully**.
请仔细地听。

考向：副词 carefully 常用来修饰行为动词或动词短语。其名词为 care，意为“小心；谨慎”；形容词为 careful，意为“小心的；谨慎的”，反义词为 careless，意为“粗心的”。

eg: He is holding the ladder with **care**.
他正小心地扶着梯子。
Be **careful** when you cross the road.
你过马路时要小心。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 5】 Please check your paper _____ (care) after you finish it. We hope you can get good grades.

⑪search /sɜːtʃ/ *v.* 搜查，搜寻，搜索

eg：They **searched** the room but found nothing.
他们搜查了房间，但什么也没找到。

考向一：既可作及物动词也可作不及物动词，作及物动词时其宾语可以是地点或人，表示“搜查某地或搜某人的身”。

eg：The policemen **searched** the woods for the lost child.
警察搜查树林寻找那名失踪的孩子。

考向二：search for 指“搜寻、搜索某人或某物”，相当于 look for。

eg：The policemen are **searching for/looking for** the thief.
警察正在搜寻/寻找小偷。

⑫say to oneself 自言自语，心中暗想

eg：“Where is my book?” Peter says to himself.
“我的书在哪儿?”彼得自言自语道。

考向：固定短语 say to oneself 中 oneself 为反身代词。反身代词是表示“我自己”、“你自己”、“他自己”等的词。反身代词具体如下：

单数	myself 我自己　yourself 你自己 himself 他自己　herself 她自己 itself 它自己
复数	ourselves 我们自己 yourselves 你们自己 themselves 他们自己

拓展 常见的带反身代词的固定短语：
hurt oneself 伤着自己
kill oneself 自杀
help oneself 随便吃；随便用
teach oneself 自学
enjoy oneself 过得愉快
by oneself 单独地；独自地

【考题在线 6】 Jessie cooked a meal for her big family by _____ (she) on New Year's Eve. （上海）

⑬pick /pɪk/ *vt.* 拾起；挑选

eg：When I buy tomatoes, I always **pick** the red ones.
我买西红柿时总是挑红色的。

考向：常用搭配：pick up 拿起，举起，pick up 为动词加副词形式，当宾语为代词时应放在中间；当宾语为名词时，既可放中间也可放后面。

eg：Look, the book is on the ground. Please **pick it up**.
瞧，书在地上，请把它捡起来。

⑭surprised /sə'praɪzd/ *adj.* 吃惊的，惊讶的

eg：I'm very **surprised** to see you here.
我万万没想到能在这儿碰见你。

考向一：形容词 surprised 常用来形容人的感受，常用结构：be surprised at“对……感到惊讶”；be surprised to do sth.“做某事很惊讶”；be surprised that ...“(对某个事实或事件)感到惊讶”。

考向二：[辨析] surprised 与 surprising

surprised	常用来表达人的感受，意为“惊讶的”，主语通常是人。	We are **surprised** to hear the news. 听到这个消息我们感到惊讶。
surprising	常用来表达事物的特点，意为“令人惊讶的”，主语通常是事或物。	Is there anything **surprising** about it? 关于它有什么令人吃惊的吗?

魔法记忆

一语辨异：We are **surprised** at the **surprising** news. 我们对这个令人吃惊的消息感到惊讶。

考向三：surprised 的名词为 surprise，意为“惊奇；惊讶”。固定结构：to one's surprise“使某人惊讶的是”；in surprise“惊奇地”。

eg：**To my surprise**, the plan succeeded.
使我吃惊的是，这个计划成功了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

拓展 英语中以-ed形式结尾的词通常用作表语，常用来形容人的感觉；而以-ing形式结尾的词通常既可用作表语，也可用作定语，常用来修饰事或物。

eg：interested—interesting
excited—exciting
bored—boring
tired—tiring

【考题在线7】 Everyone was _____ (surprise) to see her at the party last night. (北部湾)

⑮**later** /ˈleɪtə(r)/ *adv.* 后来，以后
eg：I'll come and see you **later**.
我以后再来看你。
考向：副词later常作时间状语，可单独使用。通常用于一般将来时或一般过去时。
eg：The weather report says there will be rain **later**.
天气预报说过些时候将会下雨。
He found his mother two hours **later**.
两个小时后他找到了他的妈妈。

⑯**交代结局法**：这是写叙事文章时常用的方法。在文章的最后交代一下事情的结局。

考题在线答案
1. unusual 2. B 3. strange 4. C 5. carefully
6. herself 7. surprised

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见239页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. She is s_____ for her pen in the classroom now, but she can't find it.
2. There is little time left. We have to walk q_____ to get there on time. (淄博)
3. _____ (突然), two young men came out of that room.
4. The accident _____ (发生) when I was young.
5. There is something _____ (奇怪的) in the garden.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. "Oh, I want to be as successful as my father," Simon said to _____ (he).
7. I will finish my homework _____ (late) today.
8. The headmaster _____ (reply) to me after I wrote to him about my problems yesterday.
9. I was _____ (surprise) to see Jack here.
10. Doing homework _____ (careful) is a good habit and it helps a lot. (长春)

三、单项选择

11. —Why do you like watching QJ TV News?
—Because I want to know _____ around Qujing. (曲靖)
A. what's happening
B. why will it happen
C. who's happening
D. when we will happen

12. Can you help me _____ the pen? It's under your chair.
A. ask for
B. look for
C. pick up
D. put up

13. —Sir, _____ called you just now. I told him to phone again 20 minutes later.
—OK. Thanks, Nancy.
A. somebody B. nobody
C. anyone D. everyone

14. The policemen are _____ the lost child.
A. searching for
B. search
C. looking
D. watch

15. On the way _____ the mountain village, we found the local houses different from ours.
A. to B. by
C. at D. on

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

Simple past tense（ I ）

We use the simple past tense to talk about things in the past.

A month ago, Millie and Amy went to Sunshine Park.
Last Sunday, they went to the park again.

TIP

We often use these time expressions when we talk about the past.
ago just now yesterday the day before yesterday
yesterday morning/afternoon/evening
last night/week/month/year

We form the simple past tense by adding -ed to regular verbs.

Most verbs	+ ed	walk→walked
Verbs ending in -e	+ d	live→lived
Verbs ending in a consonant + y	− y + ied	cry→cried
Short verbs ending in a vowel + a consonant	double the consonant + ed	stop→stopped

TIP

Verbs ending in a vowel + y form the simple past tense by adding -ed. stay→stayed

We form the simple past tense of irregular verbs differently. We do not add -ed.

No change	cost→cost
	put→put
Change the vowel	write→wrote
	know→knew
Change the consonant	make→made
	spend→spent
Change the vowel(s) and the consonant(s)	leave→left
	teach→taught
Others	is→was
	am→was
	are→were
	have→had

TIP

Turn to pages 106 and 107 for more changes of irregular verbs.

语法

一般过去时（ I ）

我们使用一般过去时谈论过去的事情。

一个月前，米莉和埃米去了阳光公园。
上周日，她们又去了那个公园。

提示

当我们谈论过去的时候我们经常用这些时间表达方式。
以前 刚才 昨天 前天
昨天早上/下午/晚上
昨晚/上周/上个月/去年

我们通过在规则动词后加-ed 构成一般过去时。

大多数动词	+ ed	walk→walked
以 e 结尾的动词	+ d	live→lived
以辅音字母 + y 结尾的动词	− y + ied	cry→cried
以一个元音字母 + 一个辅音字母结尾的简短动词	双写辅音字母 + ed	stop→stopped

提示

以元音字母 + y 结尾的动词通过加-ed 构成一般过去时。 stay→stayed

我们用不同的形式来构成不规则动词的过去式。我们不加-ed。

保持不变	cost→cost
	put→put
元音有变化	write→wrote
	know→knew
辅音有变化	make→made
	spend→spent
元音和辅音均有变化	leave→left
	teach→taught
其他	is→was
	am→was
	are→were
	have→had

提示

翻到106 和107 页查看更多不规则动词的变化。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Talking about the past

A Millie wants to practise using the simple past tense. Help her write the simple past tense of the verbs below.

1 start __ 2 love __ 3 play __ 4 plan __
5 reply __ 6 say __ 7 meet __ 8 hear __
9 leave __ 10 tell __ 11 stand __ 12 bring __

B The students visited the Fun World Museum. Here is Millie's diary entry. Help her complete it with the simple past tense of the verbs in brackets.

This morning, we (1) _____ (go) to the Fun World Museum. When we (2) _____ (get) to the museum, there (3) _____ (be) a lot of people there. We (4) _____ (spend) three hours in the museum. I (5) _____ (take) a lot of photos. Some of us (6) _____ (buy) cards of the animals there. We (7) _____ (come) back to school at 1 p.m. We (8) _____ (have) a great time!

C Daniel did not go to the Fun World Museum. Millie is telling him about the visit. Help Millie complete the conversation.

Millie: We (1) _____ (go) to the Fun World Museum the day before yesterday, Daniel. It (2) _____ (be) so interesting!
Daniel: Really? Tell me all about it.
Millie: OK. We (3) _____ (see) a small monkey, only 11 centimetres tall!
Daniel: That's amazing! **What else**?❶
Millie: We also (4) _____ (**learn**) **about**❷ some strange birds like dodos. They (5) _____ (live) on the earth a long time ago.
Daniel: That's cool!

谈论过去

A 米莉想练习使用一般过去时。帮助她写出下面动词的过去式。

1 开始__ 2 喜爱__ 3 玩__
4 计划__ 5 回答__ 6 说__
7 见面__ 8 听到__ 9 离开__
10 告诉__ 11 站__ 12 带来__

B 昨天学生们参观了趣味世界博物馆。这是米莉的日记记录。帮助她用括号中动词的过去式完成它。

今天早上,我们(1) _____(去)趣味世界博物馆。当我们(2) _____(到达)博物馆时,那儿(3) _____(有)许多人。我们在博物馆里(4) _____(度过)三个小时。我(5) _____(照)许多照片。我们中一些人在那儿(6) _____(买)动物卡片。我们下午1点(7) _____(回)到学校。我们(8) _____(有)很愉快!

C 丹尼尔没有去趣味世界博物馆。米莉正在告诉他关于参观的事。帮助米莉完成会话。

米莉:丹尼尔,我们前天(1) _____(去)趣味世界博物馆了。它(2) _____(是)那么有趣!
丹尼尔:真的吗?把关于它的一切都告诉我。
米莉:好的。我们(3) _____(看见)一只小猴子,只有11厘米高!
丹尼尔:那太令人惊讶了!其他还有什么?
米莉:我们还(4) _____(了解)一些奇怪的鸟,就像渡渡鸟。它们很久以前(5) _____(生活)在地球上。
丹尼尔:太酷了!

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**What else**? 其他还有什么?

考向一:else 可与不定代词、疑问代词或疑问副词连用,并且后置。

eg: **What else** did you do yesterday evening?
昨天晚上你还做了什么?

考向二:[辨析] else 与 other

二者均可意为"其他的",但用法上有如下区别:

else	用于被修饰词之后。	Where **else** did you go? 你还去了其他什么地方?
other	用于被修饰的复数名词之前。	What **other** animals do you like? 你还喜欢其他什么动物?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 1】你还想买其他什么东西吗？
_____ _____ do you want to buy?
点拨："其他什么东西"英文为 what else 或 what other things，因题中只有两个空，故填 What else。

②learn about 意为"得知，了解，获悉"

eg：I **learnt about** this car two years ago.
两年前我获悉了这辆车的情况。

考向：learn 的常用搭配：

a. learn to do sth. 学做某事

eg：You can **learn to swim** in summer.
你可以在夏天学习游泳。

b. learn from sb. 向某人学习

eg：We should **learn from** the heroes.
我们应该向英雄学习。

c. learn …by heart/oneself 记住，背诵/自学

eg：You had better **learn** it **by heart**.
你最好熟记它。

【考题在线 2】根据汉语意思完成句子。
获悉这个消息后我深感遗憾。
I'm deeply sorry to _____ _____ the news.

考题在线答案

1. What else　2. learn about

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

一般过去时（一）

考点 1：一般过去时表示过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态。我们用行为动词的过去式表示过去的动作，用 be 动词的过去式来表示过去的状态。

考向一：使用一般过去时的情况：

（1）带有确定的表过去的时间状语时，要用一般过去时。如：yesterday，yesterday morning，two days ago，last year，the other day，in 1999，just now 等。

eg：Did you have a party the other day?
前几天你们举办聚会了吗？

（2）表示过去连续发生的动作时，用一般过去时。这种情况通常没有表过去的时间状语，而通过上下文来体现。

eg：First I finished my homework. Then I played the piano. Next I watered the plants. After that，I watched a film on TV with my father. 首先我完成了家庭作业，然后我弹了钢琴，紧接着给植物浇水。在那以后，我和我的父亲在电视上看了一部电影。

（3）表示过去一段时间内经常或反复发生的动作，常与 always，never 连用。

eg：Mrs Green always carried an umbrella last month.
格林太太上个月老是带着一把伞。

考向二：一般过去时的结构

（1）主语 + 动词的过去式 + 其他。

eg：He talked with Mr Wu just now.
刚才他和吴老师谈话了。

否定形式：主语 + didn't + 动词原形 + 其他。

eg：She didn't come to school yesterday.
她昨天没有来上学。

（2）主语 + was/were + 其他。

eg：He was at home just now.
他刚才在家。

否定形式：主语 + was/were + not + 其他。

eg：Tom was not happy yesterday.
汤姆昨天不开心。

考点 2：[重点] 动词的过去式的变化：

（1）动词过去式的规则变化

规则	例词
一般情况下在动词原形后直接加-ed	stay—stayed talk—talked
以不发音的字母 e 结尾的动词，直接加-d	love—loved hope—hoped
以"辅音字母 + y"结尾的动词变 y 为 i，再加-ed	study—studied carry—carried
以重读闭音节结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的动词，要双写结尾的辅音字母再加-ed	stop—stopped plan—planned

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(2)动词过去式的不规则变化:

规则	例词
保持不变	cut—cut put—put read—read
变化元音	write—wrote know—knew
变化辅音	make—made spend—spent
辅音和元音都变化	leave—left teach—taught
其他情况	is—was are—were have—had

【考题在线1】Dad _____ (bring) them to our house and Mum soon had a lunch ready for them. (扬州)

考点3 行为动词过去式的后缀-ed的读音:

(1)清辅音/p//k//f//s//ʃ/等后,ed要读/t/。

eg:worked finished

(2)元音或浊辅音/b//g//v//z//m//l/等后,ed要读/d/。

eg:lived called

(3)在/t/或/d/后,ed要读/ɪd/。

eg:started needed

魔法记忆

英语中行为动词的过去式读音规则:清后/t/,元浊/d/,/t//d/后面读/ɪd/。

【考题在线2】Mike _____ (visit) his grandparents in the countryside last week.

考题在线答案

1. brought 2. visited

Ⅳ.随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见239页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. I _____ (see) him yesterday morning.
2. I _____ (buy) the coat when I was on holiday in Beijing.
3. She _____ (is) born in 1992.
4. My brother _____ (study) English five years ago.
5. Nancy _____ (pick) some oranges on the farm last week.

二、用方框中所给动词的适当形式填空

drink, take, go, leave, stop

6. Yesterday morning we _____ to Moon Town by bus.
7. I _____ a cup of tea just now.
8. We _____ a bus home yesterday afternoon.
9. The girl _____ to have a rest after she did some homework.
10. This morning, I _____ home without breakfast because I got up late.

三、单项选择

11. —How was the volleyball game yesterday?
—Oh, it was fantastic! We _____ so much fun. (昆明)
A. have B. had
C. are having D. will have

12. Tina and her parents _____ to England for sightseeing last summer.
A. go B. went
C. will go D. goes

13. David is a tennis player. He _____ to play tennis when he was six years old. (北京)
A. begins
B. will begin
C. began
D. has begun

14. Last Sunday my aunt _____ at home with me. We were watching TV all day.
A. was B. were
C. is D. are

15. —Hi, Jack. Nice to meet you here in Taizhou!
—Me too. But I _____ you were in Shanghai.
A. think
B. thought
C. am thinking
D. will think

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Talking about animals

A1 Mr Wu is showing Suzy some pictures of animals. Listen to their conversation and put the pictures in the correct order. Write the numbers 1 – 4 in the boxes.

课文听力A1 音频及材料

a ☐ b ☐ c ☐ d ☐
giraffe snake camel ant

A2 Suzy is afraid of animals. Mr Wu wants to help her. He is telling her some interesting things about animals. Listen to their conversation and help Suzy complete her notes.

课文听力A2 音频及材料

a giraffe—has a very long neck only (1) _____ bones in its long neck

a snake—lives on the ground, in trees or in water eats little or nothing for (2) _____ in cold winter

camels—live in very dry places can live **without**[1] (3) _____ for a long time

ants—can (4) _____ things well

A3 Suzy is not afraid of animals now. She is writing a thank-you letter to Mr Wu. Help her finish the letter. Use the notes in Part A2 on page 63 to help you.

Dear Mr Wu,

Thank you for your help.

I know more about animals now. Some animals are really interesting.

The giraffe has a very long neck, but I was surprised to know that there are (1) _____ in it. It is also amazing that a snake (2) _____ in cold winter. Camels live in very dry places, and it is interesting that they (3) _____ for a long time. I also know that we need to keep our house clean—ants (4) _____.

Now I **am not afraid of**[2] animals **any more**[3]. I would like to learn more about them.

Suzy

B Speak up: That's really amazing!

The students are talking about amazing things in the world. Work in groups and talk about some amazing things you know. Use the conversation below as a model.

Amy: Do you know about any amazing things, Simon?

综合技能

A 谈论动物

A1 吴老师正在给苏西看一些动物的图片。听他们的对话，并把图片按正确的顺序排列。在方框中写数字1 – 4。

a ☐ b ☐ c ☐ d ☐
长颈鹿 蛇 骆驼 蚂蚁

A2 苏西害怕动物。吴老师想帮助她。他正在给她讲有关动物的一些有趣的事。听他们的会话并帮助苏西完成她的笔记。

长颈鹿——有很长的脖子
长脖子上只有(1) _____ 骨头

蛇——生活在地上，树上或水里
在寒冷的冬天吃得很少或不吃(2) _____

骆驼——生活在很干燥的地方
没有(3) _____ 能生活很长时间

蚂蚁——能很好地(4) _____ 事

A3 现在苏西不害怕动物了。她正在给吴老师写一封感谢信。帮助她完成这封信。用63页上A2部分的笔记来帮助你。

亲爱的吴老师：

谢谢你的帮助。

现在我对动物了解更多了。有些动物真的很有趣。

长颈鹿长着长长的脖子，但是了解到它的脖子里长着(1) _____ 我很惊讶。蛇在寒冷的冬天(2) _____ 也很令人惊奇。骆驼生活在非常干燥的地方，它们能长时间(3) _____，这很有趣。我还了解到我们需要保持房屋清洁——蚂蚁(4) _____。

现在我不再害怕动物了。我想更多地了解它们。

苏西

B 大声说：那真是令人惊讶！

学生们正在讨论世界上令人惊讶的事。分组练习，谈谈你所知道的一些令人惊讶的事。用下面的对话作为示例。

埃米：西蒙，你知道一些令人惊讶的事吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Simon: Yes. I heard of a young man. He travelled around over 80 countries by bicycle.
Amy: That's cool! What amazing things do you know, Millie?
Millie: I read about a man the other day. He can write with one hand and draw with the other at the same time.
Simon: That's really amazing! What about you, Peter? Do you know any amazing things?
Peter: I learnt about an artist. He can draw 3-D pictures with chalk.
Simon: That's really great!

课文朗读B

西蒙:是的。我听说了一位年轻人。他骑自行车周游了80多个国家。
埃米:棒极了!米莉,你知道什么令人惊讶的事吗?
米莉:我前几天读过关于一个人的文章。他能同时用一只手写字,另一只手绘画。

西蒙:那真是太令人惊讶了!彼得,你呢?你知道什么令人惊讶的事吗?
彼得:我了解到一位艺术家。他能用粉笔画立体画。
西蒙:那真是太棒了!

Study skills

Pronouncing the -ed ending

Many verbs in the simple past tense end in the letters -ed. There are three different ways of pronouncing this ending: /t/, /d/ and /ɪd/.

A How do you pronounce the following endings? Listen carefully and repeat these words.

课文朗读A

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
1 danced	5 played	9 hated
2 helped	6 lived	10 needed
3 talked	7 answered	11 visited
4 shopped	8 carried	12 shouted

B How do you pronounce the endings of these words? Listen carefully and write /t/, /d/ or /ɪd/ in the blanks.

课文朗读B

1 listened /d/ 2 liked _____
3 wanted _____ 4 hoped _____ 5 started _____
6 chatted _____ 7 finished _____ 8 passed _____
9 stopped _____ 10 raised _____
11 walked _____ 12 turned _____

C Millie and Kitty met Sandy outside a museum. Listen to their conversation. Pay attention to the different pronunciations of the -ed ending.

课文朗读C

Millie: Sandy, you're late. The museum closed just a minute ago.
Sandy: Sorry. My grandma visited us this afternoon, so I stayed at home and talked to her.
Kitty: That's OK.
Sandy: I hope you enjoyed your day. What did you do?
Millie: We watched a short film. It showed a lot of amazing things in the world.
Kitty: Then we played some amazing games. It was fun! We're going to come here again next weekend.
Sandy: Let me come with you then!

学习技能

-ed 结尾的发音

在一般过去时中,许多动词以字母-ed结尾。这种结尾有三种不同的发音:/t/,/d/和/ɪd/。

A 你如何发下面这些词尾的音?仔细听并重复这些单词。

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
1 跳舞	5 玩	9 讨厌
2 帮助	6 居住	10 需要
3 谈话	7 回答	11 参观
4 购物	8 搬运	12 喊

B 你如何发这些单词的结尾的音?仔细听并在空格处写下/t/,/d/或/ɪd/。

1 听 /d/ 2 喜欢 _____
3 想要 _____ 4 希望 _____
5 开始 _____ 6 聊天 _____
7 完成 _____ 8 传递 _____
9 停止 _____ 10 募集 _____
11 步行 _____ 12 翻转 _____

C 米莉和基蒂在博物馆外面遇见了桑迪。听他们的对话。注意-ed结尾的不同发音。

米莉:桑迪,你迟到了。博物馆刚在一分钟前关门了。
桑迪:对不起。今天下午我祖母来看望我们,因此我呆在家里和她聊聊天。
基蒂:没关系。
桑迪:我希望你们玩得高兴。你们做了些什么呢?
米莉:我们看了一部短片。它展示了许多世界上令人惊奇的东西。
基蒂:然后我们做了一些令人惊讶的游戏。非常有趣!我们计划下周末再来这儿。
桑迪:到那时让我和你们一起来!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶without / wɪˈðaʊt / *prep*. 无，没有

考向一：介词 without 后接名词、代词或动名词等。

eg：He left **without** saying goodbye.
他不辞而别。

考向二：[难点] without 短语还表示一种条件，意为“如果没有……”，可与 if 引导的条件状语从句相互转换。

eg：I can't finish it without your help.
= I can't finish it if you don't help me.
你不帮忙的话，我就完不成它。

【考题在线 1】Fish can't live _____ water.
A. with　　B. in
C. without　　D. of

❷be afraid of 害怕……

考向：相当于 be scared of。afraid 是形容词，只作表语，与 be/feel 连用。常用结构：

结构	例句
be afraid of sth./doing sth. 害怕某物/做某事	I am afraid of dogs. 我怕狗。
be afraid to do sth. 不敢做某事	I'm afraid to go out at night. 我不敢晚上出去。
be afraid that … 害怕……	I'm afraid that you have to stay at home. 恐怕你不得不呆在家。
be afraid so/not 恐怕是/不	—Do you have to go now? 现在你必须要走吗？ —I'm afraid so. 恐怕是的。

【考题在线 2】—Mum, I don't have anybody to play with. Can I have a pet?
— _____ Our apartment is too small.
A. Why not?
B. I hope so.
C. Anything else?
D. I'm afraid not.

❸not …any more 不再……，再也不……

eg：I'm **not** late for school **any more**.
我上学再也不迟到了。

考向一：not …any more 中的 any more 常位于句末，相当于 no more，着重强调数量或程度的不再增加，表示“再也没有更多（大）的数量（程度）”。

考向二：no more 常位于句中，用于 be 动词之后，行为动词之前。

eg：Amy isn't my friend any more. = Amy is no more my friend.
埃米不再是我的朋友了。

考题在线答案
1. C　2. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞（答案见 239 页）

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. John could dance well _____（没有）music.（南充）
2. He is writing on the blackboard with a piece of _____（粉笔）.
3. A s_____ lives on the ground, in trees or in water.
4. _____（骆驼）eat grass and they don't often drink water.
5. There is _____（不多的）milk in the glass.

二、根据汉语提示完成句子

6. 他们同时完成了家庭作业。
They finished the homework _____ _____ _____.
7. 他再也不玩电脑游戏了。
He _____ play computer games _____ _____.
8. 我的堂妹害怕狗。
My cousin _____ _____ _____ dogs.
9. 前几天我看到了我的一位朋友。
I saw a friend of mine _____ _____ _____.
10. 听说这件奇怪的事情我们都很惊讶。
We were all _____ _____ _____ _____ this strange thing.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

Amazing things

A Simon is planning to write an article about amazing things. He collected some information. Here are his notes.

Sandwich[1]

- got its name from a man called John Montagu, the Fourth Earl of Sandwich
- loved playing cards very much
- did not want to stop for meals
- put meat between two pieces of bread
- others wanted to eat the same food
- later became popular **all over the world**[2]

TV

- the first TV show in the UK in 1926
- by 1935, about 2,000 TVs in use
- in China, in 1987, about 29 TVs per 100 families, but now most families have at least one TV
- now TVs can be **as large as**[3] 152 inches

B Simon wrote something amazing about sandwiches. Here is his article.

We live in a wonderful world with a lot of amazing things.

Many people like sandwiches, but do you know anything about this kind of food?

课文朗读B

Sandwich got its name from a man called John Montagu, the Fourth Earl of Sandwich. The man loved playing cards with his friends very much. He did not want to stop for meals, so he put meat between two pieces of bread. Soon others wanted to eat the same food, so they asked for a "sandwich".

Later the food became popular all over the world. Isn't that amazing?

C You want to write about something amazing. Prepare notes on it. You can also use the notes about TV on page 66. Then write your article.

Self-assessment

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about the "ghost" story.		
2 use the new words to talk about amazing things in the world.		

任务

令人惊讶的事

A 西蒙正在计划写一篇关于令人惊讶的事的文章。他收集了一些信息。这是他的笔记。

三明治

- 名字来源于一个叫约翰·蒙塔古,三明治伯爵四世的人
- 非常喜欢打牌
- 不想停下来吃饭
- 把肉夹在两片面包之间
- 其他人想吃同样的食物
- 后来在世界各地流行

电视

- 第一个电视节目在1926年在英国
- 到了1935年,大约有两千台电视在使用
- 1987年,在中国,每一百个家庭有约29台电视,但是现在大部分家庭至少有一台电视
- 现在电视有152英寸大

B 西蒙写了关于三明治的一些令人惊讶的事。这是他的文章。

我们生活在一个有着许多令人惊奇的事的美好世界里。

许多人喜欢三明治,但是你对这种食物了解吗?

三明治得名于一位名叫约翰·蒙塔古,三明治伯爵四世的人。这个人非常喜欢和他的朋友打牌。他不想停下来吃饭,因此他把肉夹在两片面包之间。不久其他人也想吃相同的食物,因此他们要了"三明治"。

后来这种食物在全世界流行了。难道那不令人惊讶吗?

C 你想写一些有关令人惊讶的事。准备有关的笔记。你也可以用66页上关于电视的笔记。然后写出你的文章。

自我评估

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论"鬼"故事。		
2 用生词谈论世界上的令人惊讶的事。		

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 use the correct forms of verbs to talk about activities in the past.		
4 pronounce the **-ed** ending correctly.		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

3 用动词的正确形式谈论过去的活动。		
4 正确发出-ed 结尾的音。		

结果：极好！好！不错！
我需要花费更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶sandwich /ˈsænwɪtʃ/ *n.* 三明治

eg: My favourite food is **sandwiches**.
我最喜欢的食物是三明治。

考向：sandwich 为可数名词，复数是sandwiches。

【考题在线 1】 —I feel very thirsty and hungry after a long walk.
—Would you like some _____ and _____? （凉山）
A. apple juice; sandwich
B. apples juice; sandwiches
C. apple juice; sandwiches

点拨：juice 为不可数名词，apple juice 意为“苹果汁”；sandwich 为可数名词。

❷all over the world 遍及全世界

eg: We have friends **all over the world**.
我们有世界各地的朋友。

考向：all over 意为“遍及”，其中 all over 还可以用 around 替代。

eg: all over the country = around the country
全国

【考题在线 2】 全世界人民热爱和平。（天津）
People _____ _____ the world love peace.

点拨：注意本题是两个空，故不用 in/around the world。

❸as large as 与……一样大

eg: His house is **as large as** theirs.
他的房子和他们的一样大。

考向：[重点] as... as... 意为“与……一样……”，当中加形容词或副词原级。否定形式为 not so...as...（= not as...as...）意为“不如……那样……”。

eg: She is not as strong as Kate.
她没有凯特那样强壮。

【考题在线 3】 Shenzhen is a modern city and it's as _____ as Hong Kong. （桂林）
A. busy B. busier C. the busiest

点拨：此题用**寻找题眼法**解题。as ... as 之间用原级。busy 为形容词原级；busier 为形容词比较级；the busiest 为形容词最高级。

方法真题练：寻找题眼法

特色土方法

同级比较：同级比较用原级，as ...as 永不离；若是 not so/as ...as，后强前弱不看齐。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. all over 3. A

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

“总分总法”写令人惊异的人/事/物

总：引出话题 分：分别描述
总：总结收尾

易错点提示

注意时态和主谓一致

参考词汇和句式

单词	same, birth, fact, strange, snake, afraid, interesting, important, kill, protect, like, weigh, long, tall, nature, amazing, friends

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

短语	as usual, poisonous and harmful, be afraid of, at the age of, be born
句式	Do you know any fun facts about ...? Isn't that amazing? I was surprised to ... We live in a wonderful world with ...

典例

根据提供的信息,写一段文字。题目为"The Tallest Man"。

参考信息

- a man in the USA
- born on 22nd February, 1918
- died on 15th July, 1940
- 2.72 meters tall
- weighed 222.71 kg when he was 21 and 199 kg when he died
- hands;32.4 cm long

【范文欣赏】

The Tallest Man

We live in a wonderful world with many amazing things. Do you know about the tallest man in the world?

The tallest man in history was from the USA. He was born on 22nd February, 1918 and died on 15th July, 1940. He was 2.72 meters tall. Even his hands were 32.4 cm long. At the age of 21, he weighed 222.71 kg. When he died, he was 199 kg.

Isn't it amazing? I'm sure you are surprised to know it, aren't you?

【点评】

本文运用了"总分总法"写令人惊异的人。第一段总起引出话题——the tallest man;第二段分别描述——his lifetime, height, hands, weight;第三段总结收尾——amazing, surprised。

添彩点:1. 作者运用了许多描述具体细节的数词,如be born on ..., died on ..., ...meters tall, ...cm long, weigh ...kg,使描述客观、准确。

2. 文章首段以疑问句进行提问,调动了读者的阅读兴趣;又以反意疑问句结尾,引发了读者的共鸣。



"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见239页)

一、根据提示完成句子

1. We ordered two _____ (sandwich) for breakfast yesterday.
2. I was very _____ (surprise) to see the ants moving in a line.
3. I have a good friend _____ (call) Tom.
4. Sandy can sing as _____ (good) as Wendy. (宿迁)
5. Amy watches TV every evening. But she _____ (not watch) TV last night.

二、根据汉语提示完成句子

6. 西蒙喜欢和他的朋友打牌。
   Simon likes _____ _____ with his friends.
7. 当你有困难的时候,你可以向你的朋友们求助。
   When you are in trouble, you can _____ _____ your friends' help.
8. 这台电脑两年前投入使用。
   This computer was _____ _____ two years ago.
9. 你至少要花半个小时才能到达那里。 (白银)
   It will take you _____ _____ half an hour to get there.
10. 在这次会议上,我们遇到了来自世界各地的朋友。
    We met friends from _____ _____ _____ _____ at the meeting.

三、用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空

One Sunday morning, Millie and Amy _____[11] (go) to Sunshine Park. They _____[12] (sit) down under a big tree as usual. Suddenly they _____[13] (hear) a whisper from the bushes. They _____[14] (turn) around but _____[15] (see) nothing. The two girls were very afraid. They _____[16] (leave) the park quickly. On their way home, they _____[17] (meet) Andy. Then Andy went to the park and _____[18] (search) the bushes. He _____[19] (find) a little cat in the bushes. He picked it up. Later that day, they _____[20] (take) the little cat to the animal centre.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 Outdoor fun

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①时间导入法(130 页)　②观察连词法(130,132 页)
写作方法	①"5W 法"写故事(143 页)
解题方法	1寻找题眼法(240 页)　2替代法(131,240 页)　3转化法(240 页) 4把握语境法(135,230 页)　5联系上下文法(229,230 页) 6词语应用法(127,229,230 页)　7语法判断法(141,230,240 页) 8交际法(126 页)　9词义辨析法(132,139,142,229,240 页)　10短语辨析法(135,230 页)

学习目标梳理

话题	户外活动的乐趣		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	hurry *vi.* 匆忙,急忙　that *adv.* 那么,那样 camping *n.* 野营　riding *n.* 骑马 skating *n.* 溜冰　ride *vt.* 骑(马、自行车等) outside *adv.* 在外面	hurry up 快点 go camping 去野营 go riding 去骑马
	Period 2	rabbit *n.* 兔,家兔　hole *n.* 洞 by *adv.* 经过　dear *excl.* 哎呀,天哪 watch *n.* 手表　fall *vi.* 落下,掉落;倒 hit *vt.* 击中,撞　herself *pron.* 她自己 alone *adj.* 单独,独自　low *adj.* 低的,矮的 locked *adj.* 锁上的　notice *vt.* 注意,察觉 into *prep.* 到……里面　side *n.* 侧,边 through *prep.* 通过,穿过　surprise *vt.* 使惊奇 by *prep.* 在……旁边,靠近 pass *vt.* & *vi.* 经过;通过	look up 向上看　pass by 路过 stand up 起立　get away 离开 all around 周围　go through 通过 run across 跑着穿过 jump down 跳下去 hit the ground 触地 put…into…把……放进…… on the other side 在另一边 take …out of… 从……中拿出…… run after 追赶;追逐
	Period 3		put up 搭,竖立 practise playing volleyball 练习打排球
	Period 4	wood *n.* 木头,木材 period *n.* 一段时间,时期 century *n.* 世纪,百年 excited *adj.* 激动的 become *linking v.* 开始变得,变成	from then on 从那时起 have a picnic 野餐 remember to do sth. 记得要做某事 make a bird out of wood 用木头制成鸟 become famous for 因……而变得著名
	Period 5	sweet *adj.* 甜的　decide *vt.* & *vi.* 决定 enter *vt.* 进入　towards *prep.* 向,朝 forget *vt.* & *vi.* 忘记　climb *vi.* & *vt.* 爬,攀登 fail *vi.* & *vt.* 失败　enough *adv.* 足够地,充分地 reach *vt.* 伸手(脚)够到;到达	a little 少许 enough to 足够…… too …to… 太……而不能…… climb up 攀爬 smaller and smaller 越来越小

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

句型	1. Hurry up, Eddie.	快点,埃迪。
	2. She looked up and saw … passing by.	她抬起头看到……正经过。
	3. Alice tried to go through …, but …	爱丽丝试图穿过……,但是……
	4. It's dangerous to …	……是危险的。
	5. Remember to …	记得……
	6. What do you like about…?	你喜欢……哪些方面?
	7. …was too small to….	……太小了以至于不能……
语法	一般过去时(二)	

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

1. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

Hurry[1] up, Eddie. I'm tired. This bag is too heavy.
Hobo, carry it for me.
OK.
You **complain**[2] **too much**[3]. The bag isn't that heavy.

课文朗读 Comic strip

Alice in Wonderland

The Class 1, Grade 7 students are talking about outdoor fun. Read a part of *Alice in Wonderland* with them.

Task

Write your own version of *Alice in Wonderland*.

Welcome to the unit

Outdoor activities

A Daniel and Amy found some pictures of outdoor activities. Help them write the correct letters in the boxes.

a camping	b cycling	c jogging
d riding	e skating	f swimming

B Daniel and Amy are talking about outdoor activities. Work in pairs and talk about the activities you would like to try. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Daniel: What outdoor activity would you like to try?
Amy: I want to go riding.
Daniel: Why?
Amy: I love horses and I really want to ride one. What about you?
Daniel: I want to go **camping**[4].
Amy: What do you like about camping?
Daniel: I like being outside, near beautiful lakes and hills.

连环漫画

快点,埃迪。 我累了。 这个包太重了。
霍波,替我拿一下吧。
好的。
你抱怨太多了。 这个包没那么重。

《爱丽丝漫游仙境》

七年级一班的学生正在谈论户外活动的乐趣。 和他们一起阅读《爱丽丝漫游仙境》中的一部分。

任务

写你自己版本的《爱丽丝漫游仙境》。

单元导入

户外活动

A 丹尼尔和埃米发现了一些户外活动的图片。 帮助他们在方框里填上正确的字母。

a 野营	b 骑自行车	c 慢跑
d 骑马	e 滑冰	f 游泳

B 丹尼尔和埃米正在谈论户外活动。 结对练习并讨论你想尝试的户外活动。 用下面的对话作为示例。

丹尼尔:你想尝试什么样的户外活动?

埃米:我想去骑马。
丹尼尔:为什么?
埃米:我喜欢马并且我真的想骑马。 你呢?

丹尼尔:我想去野营。
埃米:关于野营你喜欢什么呢?
丹尼尔:我喜欢呆在户外,紧临美丽的湖泊和山丘。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶hurry /ˈhʌri/ *vi.* 匆忙，急忙

eg：When she finished her work, she had to **hurry** home and look after her son.
她完成工作后就得赶紧回家照顾她儿子。

考向一：表示匆忙到某处去，其后直接接表示地点的副词或介词短语。

eg：She **hurried** home to tell them the news.
她匆忙地回家告诉他们这则消息。

考向二：固定搭配：

a. hurry up 意为“快点儿，赶快”

eg：**Hurry up**, or you will be late.
快点，否则你将迟到。

b. hurry to do sth. 意为“急忙做某事”

eg：I'm **hurrying to do** my homework.
我正在匆忙地做我的家庭作业。

拓展 hurry 还可作名词，意为“急忙，匆忙”，常用于 in a hurry 结构中。

eg：She dressed herself **in a hurry**.
她匆忙穿好衣服。

【考题在线 1】—It's six thirty! _____,
or you will be late.
—Oh, no!
A. Really
B. Hurry up
C. Sure
D. Of course

方法真题练：交际法

点拨：本题用交际法。由 you will be late 可知要快点。

❷complain /kəmˈpleɪn/ *vt.* & *vi.* 抱怨

eg：The American couple **complained** about the high cost of visiting Europe.
这对美国夫妇抱怨到欧洲旅行的花销太高。

考向：complain 的用法

用法及含义	示例
complain to sb.（about/of sth.）向某人抱怨（某事）	You can complain to your mother（about your old schoolbag）. 你可以向你的妈妈抱怨（你的旧书包）。
complain + that 引导的从句 抱怨……	Helen complained that the exam was too difficult. 海伦抱怨考试太难了。

【考题在线 2】More and more students _____ too much homework and they are really tired of it.（江西）
A. complain about
B. care about
C. learn about
D. hear about

点拨：care about 介意，关心；learn about 得知，获悉；hear about 听说；complain about too much homework 抱怨太多的家庭作业，符合题意。

❸too much 太多

知识微课：too much

eg：You worry **too much**.
你担心得太多了。

考向：[辨析] too much, too many 与 much too

too much 太多，过多	修饰不可数名词	too much rain 太多雨水
	指代不可数名词	have too much to do 要做的事太多
	相当于副词，修饰动词	worry too much 担心太多
too many 太多，过多	修饰可数名词复数	too many books 太多的书
much too 太	修饰形容词或副词	much too expensive 太贵了

魔法记忆

巧辨 too much, too many 与 much too：
too much 与 much too，
用法区别看后头；much 后名词不可数，
too 则可接形或副；
too many 要记住，
其后名词必复数。

【考题在线 3】—Would you like to go shopping with me today?
—I'm afraid I can't because I have _____ work to do.
A. too much
B. too many
C. much too
D. many too

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 4】My cousin is _____ heavy because he often eats _____ fast food. (安顺)

A. too much; too many
B. too many; too much
C. much too; too much
D. too much; much too

点拨:本题用词语应用法。句意:我的堂弟太重了因为他经常吃很多快餐。much too 修饰形容词或副词,但不修饰动词,too much 修饰不可数名词, too many 修饰复数名词。第一空修饰形容词 heavy 用 much too;第二空修饰不可数名词 fast food 用 too much。

❹**camping**/ˈkæmpɪŋ/ *n.* 野营

eg:I want to have a **camping** trip.
我想进行一次野营旅行。

考向:camping 为 camp 的名词形式,常见固定搭配:go camping 去野营

go + *v.* -ing 形式,表示进行某种活动,其他同类结构短语:
go cycling 去骑自行车
go skating 去滑冰
go swimming 去游泳
go skiing 去滑雪

eg:We **go camping** every summer.
我们每年夏天都去野营。

培养"走进自然,热爱生活"素养

说到露营,国内热衷于这项活动方式的并不多。在国外,露营是很普遍(common)、很受欢迎(popular)的家庭活动。大部分家庭会选择房车(caravan)旅行;另一种则主要为年轻人所喜爱,只带一些简单的吃用,随时随地就搭起一顶帐篷(tent)。露营总是能与日常平庸的家居生活拉开距离,能让人亲近大自然的草木土地,更能还原到人类已经退化的原始本色。露营经历往往更加刺激、让人难忘。

【素养行动】背起帐篷,与家人、朋友结伴,到野外找个合适的地方安营扎寨,体验一番露营生活,真正依偎在大自然的怀抱里。

【素养行动结果】融入自然(harmony with nature),与自然零距离接触。

考题在线答案
1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见240页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. Do you like _____ (户外的) activities?
2. Amy, don't h_____. There's still much time.
3. In China more and more people r_____ shared bikes to and from work. (济宁)
4. It is raining _____ (在外面). Why not take an umbrella with you?
5. The apples aren't _____ (那么) heavy. I can lift them up by myself.

二、按要求完成句子

6. Eddie wants to go riding. (改为同义句)
Eddie _____ _____ _____ go riding.
7. They are talking about going skating. (对画线部分提问)
_____ are they talking about?
8. If you don't hurry up, you'll be late for school. (改为同义句)
_____ _____, or you'll be late for school.
9. 汤姆,你抱怨太多,你应该更加努力学习。(完成句子)
Tom, you _____ _____ _____. You should study harder.
10. 关于野营,你喜欢什么?(完成句子)
_____ do you like _____ _____?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入　拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A Down the rabbit hole

Sandy is reading *Alice in Wonderland*. Read a part of the story below.

课文朗读A

Down the rabbit hole

One sunny day, Alice sat by a river with her sister. ❶Then she heard a sound. She looked up and saw a white rabbit **in a coat**❷ **passing by**❸.

"Oh dear! I'll be late!" said the rabbit. It took a watch out of its pocket **and**❹ looked at the time. How amazing! Alice stood up and ran across the field after the rabbit. The rabbit jumped down a big hole. Alice did not want to let the rabbit **get away**❺, so she jumped down the hole too.

Down, down, down. Alice **fell**❻ for a long time, and then she **hit**❼ the ground. She found herself **alone**❽ in a long, low hall. There were doors all around, but they were all **locked**❾. Alice saw a small key on a table, but it did not fit any of the doors.

Then Alice **noticed**❿ a small door and put the key into it. The door opened! She could see a lovely garden on the other side. Alice **tried**⓫ to go **through**⓬ the door, **but**⓭ she was too big.

B Finding a new world

B1 Sandy wants to find out how some of the words in the story can be used. Match two halves of the expressions to help her. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1 take a watch (line 4)_____
2 run (line 6)_____
3 jump (line 7)_____
4 find oneself alone (line 10)_____
5 go (line 16)_____

a down a hole　b out of its pocket
c through a door　d across a field
e in a long, low hall

阅读

A 掉进兔子洞

桑迪正在阅读《爱丽丝漫游仙境》。阅读下面故事中的一部分。

掉进兔子洞

在一个晴朗的日子，爱丽丝和她的姐姐坐在河边。然后她听到一个声音。她抬起头看到一只穿着大衣的白色的兔子正从她们身旁经过。

"啊，天哪！ 我要迟到了！"兔子说。 它从口袋里拿出一块表看了看时间。

多么令人惊奇啊！ 爱丽丝站起来，穿过田野去追赶兔子。 兔子跳进一个大洞。 爱丽丝不想让兔子跑掉，因此她也跳到洞里。

掉啊，掉啊，掉啊，爱丽丝向下掉了很长时间，然后她才落地。 她发现自己独自在一个又长又低的大厅里。 周围都是门，但是都是锁着的。 爱丽丝看到桌子上有一把小的钥匙，但它不能打开任何一扇门。

然后爱丽丝注意到一扇小门并且把钥匙插进去。门开了！ 她能看到在另一边有一个美丽的花园。 爱丽丝试图穿过那扇门，但是她的个子太大了。

B 寻找一个新的世界

B1 桑迪想查找出故事中的一些单词能被怎样使用。 匹配短语的两部分来帮助她。 在空白处写下正确的字母。

1 拿出一块表（第四行）_____
2 跑（第六行）_____
3 跳（第七行）_____
4 发现某人独自（第十行）_____
5 去（第十六行）_____

a 掉进一个洞里
b 从它的口袋里
c 穿过一扇门
d 穿过田野
e 在一个又长又低的大厅里

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B2 **Sandy wrote some sentences about the story, but they are not in the correct order. Help her put the sentences in the correct order. Write the numbers 1—8 in the boxes.**

□a Alice ran across the field after the rabbit.
□b The strange rabbit surprised Alice.
□c Alice sat by a river with her sister.
□d Alice opened a small door with the key.
□e Alice could see no one in the hall.
□f Alice found a small key on a table.
□g Alice jumped down the hole after the rabbit.
□h Alice saw a white rabbit passing by.

B3 **Simon made some notes about the story. Read his notes. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.**

1 It was a cloudy day. _____
2 Alice was playing with a rabbit. _____
3 The rabbit asked Alice the time. _____
4 The rabbit jumped down the hole first. _____
5 It took Alice a long time to hit the ground. _____
6 Alice talked to the rabbit in the hole. _____

B4 **Simon is asking Sandy about the story *Alice in Wonderland*. Complete their conversation with the words in the box.**

door	field	ground	hall	hole
key	pocket	rabbit	river	watch

Simon: What's the story about?
Sandy: It's about a girl. Her name is Alice. One day, she sat by a (1) _____ with her sister. Then she saw a white (2) _____.
Simon: What did the rabbit do?
Sandy: The rabbit took a (3) _____ out of its (4) _____ and looked at the time.
Simon: What happened next?
Sandy: The rabbit ran across a (5) _____. Alice ran after it. Then the rabbit and Alice both jumped into a (6) _____.
Simon: What happened after that?
Sandy: Alice hit the (7) _____. Then she found herself alone in a long, low (8) _____. She saw a (9) _____ on a table and used it to open a door.
Simon: Did she go through the (10) _____?
Sandy: No, she didn't. It was too small.

B2 桑迪写了一些关于这个故事的句子，但是没有按照正确的顺序排列。帮助她给句子正确排序。在方框中填入数字1—8。

□a 爱丽丝穿过田野去追赶兔子。
□b 那只奇怪的兔子令爱丽丝惊讶。
□c 爱丽丝和她的姐姐坐在河边。
□d 爱丽丝用钥匙打开一扇小门。
□e 在大厅里，爱丽丝一个人也看不到。
□f 爱丽丝在桌子上发现一把小钥匙。
□g 爱丽丝追随兔子跳进洞里。
□h 爱丽丝看到一只白色的兔子从身旁经过。

B3 西蒙做了一些关于这个故事的笔记。阅读他的笔记。正确的句子写“**T**”，错误的句子写“**F**”。

1 那是一个多云的日子。 _____
2 爱丽丝正在和一只兔子玩耍。 _____
3 兔子问爱丽丝时间。 _____
4 兔子先跳进洞里。 _____
5 爱丽丝花了很长时间落到地面。 _____
6 爱丽丝在洞里和兔子交谈。 _____

B4 西蒙正在询问桑迪关于《爱丽丝漫游仙境》的故事。用方框中的单词完成他们的对话。

门	田野	地面	大厅	洞
钥匙	口袋	兔子	河	表

西蒙：这个故事是关于什么的？
桑迪：它是关于一个女孩的。她的名字是爱丽丝。有一天，她和她的姐姐坐在(1) _____边。然后她看到一只白色的(2) _____。
西蒙：兔子做什么了？
桑迪：兔子从它的(4) _____里拿出一块(3) _____，看了看时间。
西蒙：接下来发生了什么？
桑迪：兔子穿过一片(5) _____。爱丽丝跟在它后面跑。然后兔子和爱丽丝都跳进一个(6) _____里。
西蒙：在那之后发生了什么？
桑迪：爱丽丝落到(7) _____。然后她发现自己独自在一个又长又低的(8) _____里。她在桌子上看到一把(9) _____，并且用它打开了一扇门。
西蒙：她穿过(10) _____了吗？
桑迪：不，她没有。它太小了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**时间导入法**：此句中 One sunny day 意为“晴朗的一天”，one 表示“某个，某一个”，后面可接表示时间的词，多用在叙述过去发生的事情的句子前。我们在讲故事时，多用此方式开头。句子的后半部分介绍人物和地点。

❷**in a coat 穿着外套**

考向：in 作介词，意为“穿着，戴着”，在句中作状语。“in + 颜色”表示穿什么颜色的衣服。

eg：Today Mrs Green is in a red coat.
今天，格林夫人穿着一件红色外套。

❸**pass by 经过**

eg：I see them **pass by** my house every day.
我看见他们每天从我家经过。

考向一：pass 后可接双宾语。即：pass sb. sth. = pass sth. to sb. 意为“把某物传（递）给某人”。

eg：Pass me the ball, please.
请把球传给我。

［易错点］passed 的同音词为 past。past *prep.* & *adv.* 超过，经过。

eg：When I walked **past** the cinema, I saw Jim.
当我走过电影院的时候，我看到了吉姆。

考向二：by 的用法

词性	含义	示例
adv.	经过	He hurried **by** without a word. 他匆匆地过去没有说一句话。
prep.	在……旁边	Tom is sitting **by** the window. 汤姆正坐在窗户旁边。
	通过	May I pay **by** cheque? 我能用支票付款吗？
	乘……	They went to Chongqing **by** ship. 他们乘船去了重庆。

【考题在线 1】随着时间的流逝，他忘记了那些不愉快的事情。（黄石）
As time _____, he forgot those unpleasant things.

❹**观察连词法**：and 意为“和；又”，表示前后顺承关系。该段落中 and 连接的两个动词短语在句中均作谓语。

❺**get away 逃脱，离开**

eg：I am afraid I can't **get away** from the meeting. 我恐怕难以从会议中抽身。

考向：短语 get away (from)，意为“离开”。同义短语为：be away (from)。

eg：How can we **get away from** the city?
我们怎样才能离开这个城市呢？
He has **been away from** school for a month.
他已经离开学校一个月了。

❻**fall /fɔːl/ *vi.* 落下，掉落，倒下**

eg：Don't **fall off** the bike. 不要从自行车上掉下去。

考向：fall 的第三人称单数形式为 falls；过去式为 fell；过去分词为 fallen。

常用短语为：fall behind 落在……后面
fall asleep 睡着，入睡
fall off 从……掉下来

【考题在线 2】—What happened to Marc?
—He fell _____ the bike _____ a snowy morning.（凉山州）
A. off; in　B. down; at　C. off; on

点拨：考查介词的用法。fall off the bike 表示“从自行车上摔下来”；“在具体某一天或某一天的早晨”，用介词 on。

❼**hit /hɪt/ *vt.* 击中，撞**

eg：A terrible snowstorm **hit** that small town last night. 昨天晚上，一场可怕的暴风雪袭击了那个小镇。

考向：hit 的第三人称单数形式为 hits；过去式、过去分词分别为 hit；hit。“打某人身体的某个部位”应用 hit + sb. + on/in + the + 具体部位。其中一般硬的或突出的部位前用 on，软的或中空的部位用 in。部位前的定冠词 the 不能用形容词性物主代词代替。

eg：hit sb. on the nose 打某人的鼻子
hit sb. in the face 打某人的脸
hit sb. in the eye 打某人的眼睛

❽**alone /əˈləʊn/ *adj.* 独自，单独**

eg：The old man was **alone** in the car.
这位老人独自在车里。

考向一：alone 作副词时意为“单独，独自”，相当于 by oneself 或 on one's own。

eg：The old man lives **alone**. = The old man lives **by himself**. = The old man lives **on his own**. 那位老人独自居住。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线3】It is very relaxing to listen to light music by oneself. （黔南）

A. together　　B. lonely

C. alone　　D. again

点拨：本题用替代法。句意：一个人听轻音乐是非常放松的。by oneself 独自，相当于alone。

考向二：[辨析] alone 与 lonely

alone	既可用作形容词也可作副词，指的是客观情况，不含感情色彩。	He was **alone** in the house. 他一个人在房子里。
lonely	只用作形容词，表示“孤独的；寂寞的”，带有浓厚的感情色彩，强调精神上的孤独。	We never feel **lonely** in Shang- hai. 在上海我们从来不感到孤独。

魔法记忆

一语辨异：The old man lived **alone** in a **lonely** village, but he didn't feel **lonely**. 那个老人独自居住在一个偏僻的村子里，但他并不感到孤独。

【考题在线4】—I know Old Joe lives _____.

—We are supposed to visit him from time to time. Then, he won't feel _____. （南充）

A. alone; alone

B. lonely; lonely

C. lonely; alone

D. alone; lonely

点拨：句意：——我知道老乔独自居住。——我们应该时常去看望他。那样他就不会感到孤独。alone 强调独自一人，lonely 指感情孤独。第一个空指独自一人用alone，第二个空指感情孤独用 lonely。

9 locked /lɒkt/ *adj.* 锁上的

eg：Can you open the **locked** door?

你能打开这扇锁着的门吗？

考向：可作表语或定语。locked 的动词形式为 lock，意为“锁上”；lock 也可作名词，意为“锁”。

eg：Did you **lock** the door? 你锁好门了吗？

On my way home, I bought a **lock**.

回家的路上，我买了一把锁。

10 notice /ˈnəʊtɪs/ *vt.* 注意，察觉

eg：Nobody could **notice** them.

没有人会注意到他们。

考向：短语 notice sb. doing sth. 注意到某人正在做某事（表示动作正在进行）；notice sb. do sth. 注意到某人做某事（表示全过程）。

eg：He didn't **notice** me **enter** the room.

他没注意到我走进了房间。

拓展 与 notice 用法相同的词有：watch, see, hear 等。

11 try /traɪ/ *v.* 试图，努力；试验

eg：We should **try** to study hard.

我们应该设法努力学习。

考向：[辨析] try to do sth. 与 try doing sth.

try to do sth.	努力做某事，强调付出努力但不一定成功。
try doing sth.	尝试做某事，含有看结果如何之意。

eg：Please **try to finish** the work in thirty minutes.

请尽量在30分钟之内完成这项工作。

Tom isn't here today. **Try calling** him.

汤姆今天没来，给他打电话试试看。

拓展 与 try 相关的词组：

try on 试穿　try one's luck 碰运气

try out 试验

try one's best（= do one's best）

尽某人最大的努力

12 through /θruː/ *prep.* 通过，穿过

eg：The sunlight comes in **through** the glass.

阳光透过玻璃进来。

考向一：through 常与 go, walk 等动词连用。

eg：The two hunters are walking **through** the forest.

那两个猎人正穿过森林。

考向二：[辨析] through, across, over 和 past

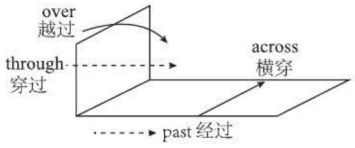
through	介词，“穿过，通过”，强调从某个立体空间内穿过。	There is a river **through** the city. 有一条河穿过这座城市。
across	介词，“横过”，强调从某个平面的一边到另一边。	Walk **across** the bridge, and you'll see a tree. 走过那座桥，你会看见一棵树。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

over	介词，“穿越，翻越”，强调从某物的正上面跨越。	The cat jumps **over** the wall to play every day. 每天这只猫跳过墙去玩。
past	介词，“经过”，强调从某建筑物的旁边经过。	He is walking **past** the post office. 他正从邮局旁边经过。

魔法记忆

图解助记：through，across，over 和 past



【考题在线 5】— Why is there a small hole beside the door, Jack?
—It is for my cat. She can get in or out _____ it.
A. across　　B. over
C. past　　D. through
点拨：本题用**词义辨析法**。across 从表面横过；over 越过；past 从旁边经过；through 从空间内部穿过。

⑬**观察连词法**：but 意为“但是”，表示前后转折关系。我们在写作过程中常用一些并列连词，使行文更加流畅，读起来朗朗上口。

考题在线答案
1. went by　2. C　3. C　4. D　5. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习　稳拿中考基础20分　☞(答案见240页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成句子
1. I like going to different places b_____ air.
2. Jim f_____ down from the tree yesterday.
3. The heavy snow h_____ our hometown last night.
4. Did you n_____ him wearing a red shirt today?
5. My son has a r_____ as a pet at home.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空
6. The weather report says it will be _____ (sun) in the following two days.　(荆门)
7. Alice saw a white dog _____ (pass) by.
8. Don't go _____ (cross) the road. It's too dangerous.
9. My uncle found all the doors of the hall were _____ (lock).
10. My father had two _____ (watch), so he gave me one.

三、选择适当的短语，并用其正确形式填空

take out of, get away, on the other side
go through, stand up

11. What can you see _____ of the lovely garden?
12. What did Jack _____ his pocket just now?
13. When the door bell rang, Millie _____ and went to open the door.
14. Please let the lovely horse _____ from the zoo.
15. It is interesting _____ the forest.

四、单项选择
16. A woman stood _____ the window, watching the children playing games in the garden.　(德州)
A. past　　B. through
C. across　　D. by
17. The moonlight is shining in _____ the window. Everything in the room looks so nice.
A. over　　B. across
C. through　　D. past
18. —Who is the space scientist from Beijing?
—The man _____ white over there. He's of medium height.　(宜昌)
A. with　　B. in
C. on　　D. for
19. Alice _____ and saw a beautiful kite in the sky.　【导学号：1037419】
A. looks out　　B. looked up
C. looked after　　D. looks up
20. My uncle Bob was _____ at home, but he didn't feel _____.
A. alone; alone
B. lonely; alone
C. lonely; lonely
D. alone; lonely

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

Simple past tense (Ⅱ)

We use the simple past tense to make positive and negative sentences like this:

I/ You/ We/They/ He/She/ It	heard	a sound.

I/ You/ We/ They/ He/ She/ It	did not hear	a sound.

I/He/ She/ It	was	at home	yesterday.
You/We/They	were		

I/He/ She/ It	was not	at home	yesterday.
You/We/They	were not		

We use the simple past tense to ask and answer questions like this:

Did	I/ you/ we/ they/ he/she/it	hear	a sound?

Yes,	I/ you/ we/ they/ he/she/it	did.
No,		did not.

Was	I/he/ she/ it	at home	yesterday?
Were	you/ we/ they		

Yes,	I/he/she/it	was.
	you/we/ they	were.

No,	I/he/she/it	was not.
	you/we/ they	were not.

TIP

did not = didn't
was not = wasn't
were not = weren't

语法

一般过去时(二)

我们用如下方式来表达一般过去时的肯定句和否定句:

我/你(们)/我们/他们/他/她/它	听到	一个声音。

我/你(们)/我们/他们/他/她/它	没有听到	一个声音。

我/他/她/它	是	在家	昨天。
你(们)/我们/他们	是		

我/他/她/它	不是	在家	昨天。
你(们)/我们/他们	不是		

我们像这样用一般过去时来提问和回答问题:

	我/你(们)/我们/他们/他/她/它	听到	声音了吗?

是的,	我/你(们)/我们/他们/他/她/它	听到了。
不,		没有听到。

	我/他/她/它	在家	昨天?
	你(们)/我们/他们		

是的,	我/他/她/它	在。
	你(们)/我们/他们	在。

不,	我/他/她/它	不在。
	你(们)/我们/他们	不在。

提示

did not = didn't
was not = wasn't
were not = weren't

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Weekend activities

A **Millie is writing about what she and her friends did last weekend. Help her complete her article with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.**

do	go	have	play
practise	read	stay	visit

Yesterday was Sunday. I (1) _____ the park and (2) _____ a good time. Simon did not (3) _____ football. He (4) _____ playing volleyball with his friend. Kitty likes shopping. She (5) _____ some shopping with her mum yesterday afternoon. Daniel did not (6) _____ out yesterday. He (7) _____ at home and (8) _____ some books.

B **Sandy is asking Simon about his camping trip with his family. Complete their conversation with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.**

Sandy: (1) _____ you and your family _____ (go) camping last week?

Simon: No, we (2) _____. We (3) _____ (go) camping last month.

Sandy: (4) _____ (be) it interesting?

Simon: Yes, it (5) _____.

Sandy: What (6) _____ you _____ (do) there?

Simon: We (7) _____ (**put**) **up** our tent near a lake. My cousin Annie and I (8) _____ (be) very happy. We also (9) _____ (row) a boat on the lake.

Sandy: (10) _____ you _____ (stay) outside all night?

Simon: Yes, we (11) _____. The camping trip (12) _____ (be) really wonderful.

周末活动

A 米莉正在写她和她的朋友们上周末做的事情。帮助她用方框中所给动词的正确形式完成她的文章。

做	去	有	玩
练习	读	呆	参观

昨天是星期天。我(1)_____公园，并且(2)_____得很愉快。西蒙没有(3)_____足球。他和他的朋友(4)_____打排球。基蒂喜欢购物。昨天下午，她和她的妈妈(5)_____。丹尼尔昨天没有(6)_____。他(7)_____在家并且(8)_____一些书。

B 桑迪正在询问西蒙关于他和他的家人的野营之旅。用括号内所给动词的正确形式完成他们的对话。

桑迪：上周你和你的家人(1)_____(去)野营了吗？

西蒙：不，我们(2)_____。我们上个月(3)_____野营了。

桑迪：它(4)_____(是)有趣的吗？

西蒙：是的，它(5)_____。

桑迪：你们在那儿(6)_____(做)什么了？

西蒙：我们在湖附近(7)_____(搭)我们的帐篷。我的堂妹安妮和我(8)_____(是)非常高兴的。我们还在湖上(9)_____(划)船。

桑迪：你们整晚(10)_____(呆)在外面吗？

西蒙：是的，我们(11)_____。野营之旅确实(12)_____(是)很棒。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

put up 张贴，挂起，举起，搭建

eg: I mean we have to **put up** the lights and Christmas balls.

我的意思是我们必须挂起这些灯和圣诞球。

考向：put 的相关短语：

put on 穿，戴	He **put on** a sweater and went out. 他穿上一件毛衣出去了。
put …away 把……收起来	**Put** your toys **away**. 把你的玩具收起来。
put down 放下；记下	**Put down** your name and address. 记下你的名字和地址。
put off 推迟，延期	What bad weather! The flight will be **put off** to 8 o'clock this evening. 多么糟糕的天气！航班将被推迟到今天晚上8点钟。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

put out 熄灭，扑灭	They **put out** the fire with the help of the firemen. 在消防员的帮助下，他们扑灭了火。

【考题在线1】—We can't _____ making a plan. Our teacher's birthday is only two weeks from now.
—Yes, I think so.
A. put on
B. put up
C. put out
D. put off

【考题在线2】—Could you please help me _____ the picture on the wall?
—OK, no problem. （德阳）
A. put up　　B. put on
C. put off　　D. put out

点拨：本题用**短语辨析法**。句意：——请问你能帮我在墙上挂一幅画吗？——好的，没问题。put up 张贴，挂起；put on 穿上，增重；put off 推迟；put out 扑灭，根据地点状语 on the wall 可知用 put up 和 picture 构成动宾短语，表示“挂起图画”。

考题在线答案
1. D　2. A

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

一般过去时（二）

考点1：行为动词的一般过去时的肯定句、否定句、一般疑问句及其肯、否定回答。

具体构成如下：

（1）肯定句：主语 + 动词（过去式）+ 其他.
eg：They had a picnic in the park last week.
上周他们在公园里野餐。

（2）否定句：主语 + did not + 动词（原形）+ 其他.（did not = didn't）
eg：We didn't have classes yesterday.
我们昨天没有课。

（3）一般疑问句：Did + 主语 + 动词（原形）+ 其他？
肯定回答：Yes，主语（或相应的人称代词）+ did.
否定回答：No，主语（或相应的人称代词）+ didn't.
eg：—Did Amy finish her homework on time?
埃米按时完成她的家庭作业了吗？
—Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.
是的，她按时完成了。/ 不，她没有。

【考题在线1】—Look at my new smart phone.
—Wow, it's so cool. When and where _____ you _____ it? （烟台）
A. do; buy　　B. have; bought
C. did; buy　　D. have; had

点拨：本题用**把握语境法**。句意：——看我的新智能手机。——哇，它非常酷，你何时何地买的？由语境可知道买手机的动作发生在过去，询问过去某一动作发生的时间和地点用一般过去时。

考点2：be 动词的一般过去时的肯定句、否定句、一般疑问句及其肯、否定回答。

具体构成如下：

（1）肯定句：主语 + be（was, were）+ 其他.
eg：He was very busy last week.
上周他很忙。

（2）否定句：主语 + be（was, were）+ not + 其他.
（was not = wasn't; were not = weren't）
eg：Helen wasn't at home yesterday.
海伦昨天没在家。

（3）一般疑问句：Be（Was, Were）+ 主语 + 其他？
肯定回答：Yes，主语（或相应的人称代词）+ be（was, were）.
否定回答：No，主语（或相应的人称代词）+ be（was, were）+ not.
eg：— Were they worried about their work?
他们担心他们的工作吗？
—Yes, they were. / No, they weren't.
是的，他们担心。/ 不，他们不担心。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 2】—I called you yesterday evening, but you were not in.
—Sorry, I _____ in the shop with my mother. （重庆）
A. am
B. will be
C. was
D. have been

点拨：考查一般过去时。由“昨天晚上我打电话给你，但是你不在家。”，可推知答题空所在句句意为“对不起，我当时和我母亲在商店里。”，故用一般过去时。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. C

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见240页）

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Just now, he got a call and _____ (hurry) home.
2. Miss Li _____ (teach) Chinese in London 3 years ago.
3. I _____ (go) swimming last Sunday, and I _____ (not go) shopping.
4. When I _____ (be) a child, I often _____ (listen) to music.
5. —What time _____ Mr Zhang _____ (get) to school this morning?
—At 6:30.

二、单项选择

6. —_____ you _____ to Nanhu Park a week ago?
—Yes. We had a good time there.
A. Do; go
B. Did; go
C. Did; went
D. Were; go

7. —_____ you tired after running for ten minutes?
—No. I _____ feel tired at all.
A. Did; didn't
B. Were; wasn't
C. Were; didn't
D. Did; wasn't

8. John and I _____ to visit his grandparents last Sunday afternoon. （重庆B）
A. go　　B. went
C. will go　　D. have gone

9. —Excuse me, look at the sign NO PHOTOS!
—Sorry, I _____ it. （呼和浩特）
A. don't see　　B. didn't see
C. haven't seen　　D. won't see

10. —That's a nice mobile phone.
—It is. My aunt _____ it for my last birthday. （武汉）
A. buy　　B. will buy
C. have bought　　D. bought

三、句型转换

11. Jeff played tennis with his classmates yesterday.（改为否定句）
Jeff _____ _____ tennis with his classmates yesterday. （重庆）

12. There were some people at the concert.（改为一般疑问句）
_____ _____ _____ people at the concert?

13. The newly-opened supermarket had something on sale last Sunday.（改为一般疑问句）（乐山）
_____ the newly-opened supermarket _____ anything on sale last Sunday?

14. Did they enjoy themselves in the park?（作肯、否定回答）
Yes, _____ _____.
No, _____ _____.

15. Lucy did her homework at home yesterday.（改为否定句）
Lucy _____ _____ her homework at home yesterday.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

课文听力A1音频及材料

A Chinese kites

A1 The students are going to fly kites this weekend. Mr Wu is asking about their kites. Listen to their conversation. Write the students' names under their kites.

A2 Mr Wu is telling the students about the history of kites. Listen to his talk. Match each person with the correct event. Write the letters in the boxes.

课文听力A2音频及材料

1 Mozi ☐
2 Lu Ban ☐
3 Cai Lun ☐
4 Marco Polo ☐

a told people in the West all about kites
b found a new way to make paper
c used bamboo to make kites
d made a bird out of **wood**[1]

A3 Listen to Mr Wu's talk again. Help Millie write down what he said. You can use the information in Part A2.

Kites have a long history in China. The Chinese began to make kites over (1) _____ years ago. In the Warring States period, a famous man, (2) _____, made a bird out of (3) _____. That was the first kite in history. His student (4) _____ used bamboo to make kites. In the Eastern Han dynasty, (5) _____ found a new way to make paper, and then people began to use paper to make kites. In the (6) _____ century, an Italian man called (7) _____ visited China. He told people in the (8) _____ all about kites. In the Ming and Qing dynasties, kite flying became a very popular (9) _____ activity. Weifang, a city in Shandong Province, has **become**[2] famous for making (10) _____ **from then on**[3].

B Speak up: We're having a picnic.

Amy and her cousin Shirley are going for a picnic. Work in pairs and talk about a day out. Use the conversation below as a model.

Shirley: We're having a picnic today. I'm so **excited**[4].

综合技能

A 中国的风筝

A1 学生们打算这个周末去放风筝。吴老师正在询问关于他们的风筝的情况。听他们的对话。在学生们的风筝下面写出他们的名字。

A2 吴老师正在告诉学生们有关风筝的历史。听他的报告。给每个人和正确的事件配对。把字母写在方框里。

1 墨子☐
2 鲁班☐
3 蔡伦☐
4 马可·波罗☐

a 告诉西方人关于风筝的一切
b 发现一种新的造纸的方法
c 用竹子做风筝
d 用木头做鸟

A3 再听一遍吴老师的报告。帮助米莉记下他所说的话。你可以用 A2 部分中的信息。

风筝在中国有着悠久的历史。中国人开始做风筝是在(1)_____多年前。战国时期,一个著名的人,(2)_____,用(3)_____做了只鸟。那是历史上第一只风筝。他的学生(4)_____用竹子来做风筝。在东汉王朝,(5)_____发现了一种新的造纸的方法,然后人们开始用纸做风筝。在(6)_____世纪,一个叫(7)_____的意大利人访问中国。他告诉在(8)_____的人们关于风筝的一切。在明朝和清朝,放风筝成为一种非常流行的(9)_____活动。潍坊,山东省的一个城市,从那时起已经因为制作(10)_____而出名了。

B 大声说:我们正在野餐。

埃米和她的堂妹雪莉打算去野餐。结对练习并讨论外出的一天。用下面的对话作为示例。

雪莉:今天我们将去野餐。我很兴奋。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Amy: Me too. It'll be a great day.
Shirley: What can we do there, Amy?
Amy: We can fly kites.
Shirley: Good. Can we go swimming too?
Amy: No, I'm afraid not. It's dangerous to swim in the lake.
Shirley: I see. Remember to take your mobile phone, Amy.
Amy: OK. Now everything is ready. Shall we go?

课文朗读B

Study skills

Using a dictionary

The words in a dictionary are in alphabetical order from A to Z. This helps us find words quickly.

If two words start with the same letter, we look at the second letter of the word we want to look up. If the first two letters of two words are the same, we look at the third letter, and so on.

b a **l** l ← **l** comes before **n**
b a **n** a n a ← **a** comes before **k**
ban**k**

A **Put the following words in alphabetical order. Write the numbers 1—8 in the blanks.**

a mobile _____
b bicycle _____
c sunny _____
d picnic _____
e remember _____
f surprised _____
g forget _____
h notice _____

The guide word in the top corner of each page of a dictionary can help you find the correct page quickly.

B **On the left below are some page numbers and guide words from a dictionary. Write down the page numbers for the words on the right.**

Pages	Guide words
34—35	doctor drink
46—47	each eight
84—85	neck nice
88—89	note now
96—97	present price

Words	Pages
1 pretty	96—97
2 nothing	
3 dream	
4 neighbour	
5 earth	

埃米:我也一样。 它将会是很美好的一天。
雪莉:我们在那儿能做什么呢,埃米?
埃米:我们能放风筝。
雪莉:好啊。 我们还能游泳吗?
埃米:不,恐怕不行。 在湖里游泳是危险的。
雪莉:我明白了。 记得带上你的手机,埃米。
埃米:好的。 现在一切都准备好了。 我们可以走了吗?

学习技能

使用字典

字典里的单词是按字母表顺序从 A 到 Z 排列的,这有助于我们很快地找到单词。如果两个单词的首字母相同,我们要看我们想要查的单词的第二个字母。 如果两个单词中的前两个字母都相同, 我们要看第三个字母,以此类推。

球← l 在 n 前面
香蕉←a 在 k 前面
银行

A 把下面的单词按字母表顺序排列。在空格处填入数字 1—8。

a 可移动的 _____ **b** 自行车 _____
c 阳光充足的 _____ **d** 野餐 _____
e 记得 _____ **f** 惊讶的 _____
g 忘记 _____ **h** 注意 _____

字典每一页顶角处的引导词可以帮助你快速地找到正确的页码。

B 下面左下方是来自字典里的一些页码和引导词。为右边的单词写出页码。

页码	引导词
34 – 35	医生 喝
46 – 47	每一个 八
84 – 85	颈 友好的
88 – 89	笔记 现在
96 – 97	目前的 价格

单词	页码
1 漂亮的	96—97
2 没什么	
3 梦想	
4 邻居	
5 地球	

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶wood /wʊd/ *n.* 木头，木材

考向：wood 作“木头，木材”讲时，为不可数名词，作“小树林”讲时为可数名词。其形容词为：wooden 木制的。

eg: There are a group of monkeys in the **woods**. 树林里有一群猴子。

Those large **wooden** tables are Mr White's. 那些大的木桌是怀特先生的。

❷become /bɪˈkʌm/ *linking v.* 开始变得，变成

考向：become 作连系动词，后面常接名词、形容词。注意：become 为短暂性动词，不能与表示一段时间的状语连用。

eg: He has **become** a famous doctor.
他已经成为一名著名的医生了。
She was **becoming** confused.
她开始糊涂了。

❸from then on 从那时起

考向：[辨析] from now on 与 from then on

from now on	从现在起，通常与一般将来时连用。	I will listen to the teacher carefully **from now on**. 从现在起，我将认真听老师讲课。
from then on	从那时起，通常与一般过去时连用。	I remembered her name **from then on**. 从那时起，我就记得她的名字。

❹excited /ɪkˈsaɪtɪd/ *adj.* 激动的

eg: He was too **excited** to say a word.
他激动得一句话也说不出来。

考向：[辨析] excited 与 exciting

excited	兴奋的；激动的。指人对……感到兴奋，主语通常是人。	Are you **excited** about going to Australia? 去澳大利亚你兴奋吗？
exciting	令人兴奋的；使人激动的。指事物本身令人兴奋、激动。常用于修饰物。	The teacher told us an **exciting** story. 老师给我们讲了一个令人兴奋的故事。

特色土方法

-ed 修饰人，-ing 修饰物。

魔法记忆

一语辨异：Millie was **excited** at the **exciting** news. 米莉对那个令人兴奋的消息感到兴奋。

【考题在线】 —Did you watch the first match of the Russian World Cup?
—Of course! We were so _____ to watch the _____ match. （乌鲁木齐）
A. exciting; excited B. excited; excited
C. exciting; exciting D. excited; exciting

点拨：本题用**词义辨析法**。exciting“令人激动的，令人兴奋的”，多修饰物；excited“感到激动的，感到兴奋的”，修饰人。

考题在线答案 D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见240页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Marco Polo, an _____ (意大利) man, visited China in the 13th century.
2. He will go on a trip for a _____ (一段时间).
3. Jack felt very _____ (激动的) when he opened his Christmas present.
4. You can see objects and paintings from different _____ (century) in the Louvre Museum. (呼和浩特)
5. My brother gave me a _____ (手机) as a birthday present.

二、根据汉语完成句子

6. 去年，人们发现了一种新的造纸方法。
Last year, people found a new way _____ _____ _____.
7. 潍坊因制作风筝而出名。
Weifang is _____ _____ making kites.
8. 历史上的第一个风筝是用木头做的。
The first kite was made of _____ _____ _____.
9. 从那时起，海伦就对拉小提琴感兴趣了。
_____ _____ _____, Helen was interested in _____ the violin.
10. 他听说这件事时，变得很生气。
He _____ very angry when he _____ about it.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

More of *Alice in Wonderland*

课文朗读A

A Sandy is interested in *Alice in Wonderland*. She is reading the next part of the story.

Alice did not know what to do. Then she went back to the table and saw a little bottle on it. A note on the bottle said "DRINK ME".

Alice opened the bottle and drank **a little**[1]. It tasted sweet. Alice liked it. She drank **some more**[2]. Then she felt a little ill. She looked down and saw that her body became **smaller and smaller**[3].

Soon Alice was small enough to go through the door, so she **decided**[4] to **enter**[5] the garden. When she walked towards the door, she forgot about the key.

Alice had to go back to the table, but she was **too** small **to**[6] **reach**[7] the key. She tried to climb up, but **failed**[8]. Then she saw a piece of cake under the table. A note on the box said "EAT ME".

B What will happen next in the story? Answer the following questions with your own ideas.

1 Will Alice eat the cake?
2 What will happen to her after that?
3 Where will she go next?
4 What will she see?
5 Will she meet the white rabbit again?

C Write about what you think will happen to Alice next.

Self-assessment

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about part of the story *Alice in Wonderland*.		
2 use the new words to talk about outdoor fun.		
3 use the correct forms of verbs to talk about activities in the past.		
4 look up new words in a dictionary.		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

任务

更多关于《爱丽丝漫游仙境》

A 桑迪对《爱丽丝漫游仙境》感兴趣。她正在看这个故事的下一部分。

爱丽丝不知道做什么。然后她回到桌子旁，看到一个小瓶子在上面。瓶子上面的便条上写着"喝我"。

爱丽丝打开瓶子并且喝了一点。它尝起来甜甜的。爱丽丝喜欢它。她又喝了一些。然后她感到有点不舒服。她低下头，看到她的身体变得越来越小。

不久，爱丽丝足够小能够穿过那扇门了，因此，她决定进入花园。当她朝着那扇门走去的时候，她忘记了钥匙。

爱丽丝不得不回到桌旁，但是她太小了以至于够不到钥匙。她尽力往上爬，但是失败了。然后她看到桌子下面有一块蛋糕。蛋糕盒上面的便条上写着"吃我"。

B 接下来故事中会发生什么？用你自己的想法回答下面的问题。

1 爱丽丝会吃蛋糕吗？
2 在那之后她会发生什么事？
3 接下来她将去哪儿？
4 她将看到什么？
5 她将再次见到那只白色的兔子吗？

C 写一写你认为接下来爱丽丝将会发生什么。

自我评估

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论《爱丽丝漫游仙境》故事中的部分内容。		
2 用新单词谈论户外运动的乐趣。		
3 用动词的正确形式谈论过去的活动。		
4 在字典里查新单词。		

结果：极好！　好！　不错！

我需要花费更多的时间在_____。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶a little 一点，少许

eg：My mother felt **a little** ill after supper.
晚饭后，我的妈妈感觉有点不舒服。

考向一：a little 修饰形容词原级及比较级。

eg：I feel **a little** tired.
我感觉有点儿累。
He is **a little** better today.
他今天健康情况好一些了。

考向二：[难点][辨析] little，few，a little 与 a few

little	意为“不多的”，修饰不可数名词，表示否定意义。	There is **little** water in the cup. 杯子里几乎没有水。
	意为“小的”，修饰名词。	There is a **little** bird by the river. 河边有一只小鸟。
few	意为“很少；不多”，修饰可数名词复数。表示否定意义。	There are **few** people in the cinema. 电影院里几乎没有人。
a little	意为“一点”，修饰不可数名词，表示肯定意义。	There is **a little** water in the cup. 杯子里有一点儿水。
a few	意为“一些”，修饰可数名词复数，表示肯定意义。	There are **a few** people in the cinema. 电影院里有一些人。

【考点在线 1】There is _____ juice in the fridge. Let's go and buy some.
A. few　　B. a few
C. little　　D. a little

点拨：本题用**语法判断法**。句意：冰箱里几乎没有果汁了。让我们去买一些吧。few“几乎没有”，修饰可数名词复数；a few“一点”，修饰可数名词复数；little“几乎没有”，修饰不可数名词；a little“一点”，修饰不可数名词。其中，few 和 little 表示否定，a few 和 a little 表示肯定。juice 为不可数名词，故排除 A 和 B 选项，又因后句表达“去买一些果汁”可知，冰箱里几乎没有了，故选 little。

❷some more 更多一些

eg：Would you like **some more** tea?
你想再来一些茶吗？

考向：some more 后接可数名词复数，也可接不可数名词。more 在这里表示“（数量上）更大的，更多的”，前面也可以是具体数字。

eg：one more day
再有一天
five more days
再有五天

拓展 another 也有类似的表达，但要放在数字之前。

eg：another two weeks 再有两周

【考题在线 2】要买那辆新自行车，他还需要一些钱。
He needs _____ money to buy the new bike.

❸smaller and smaller 越来越小

eg：The balloon is becoming **smaller and smaller**.
气球变得越来越小。

考向：smaller and smaller 为“形容词比较级 + and + 形容词比较级”结构，意为“越来越……”。多音节形容词可用“more and more + 形容词”来表示。

【考点在线 3】—I talked with my little uncle on the computer last night.
—The Internet makes the world _____. （铜仁）
A. small and small
B. smaller and smaller
C. small and smaller
D. smaller and small

点拨：句意：——昨晚我和我的小叔叔在电脑上聊天了。——互联网使世界越来越小。比较级 + and + 比较级，意为“越来越”。

❹decide /dɪˈsaɪd/ *vt. & vi.* 决定

eg：They **decided** to live in London.
他们决定住在伦敦。

考向：[重点]其后接名词，代词，动词不定式或从句。固定短语 decide to do sth. 意为“决定做某事”，相当于 make up one's mind to do sth.。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg：John **decided to listen** carefully in class.
= John **made up his mind to listen** carefully in class.
约翰决定课堂上认真听讲。

拓展 decide 的名词形式为 decision，意为“决定”。常用结构：make a decision 作出决定。

⑤enter /ˈentə(r)/ *vt.* 进入

eg：She **entered** the room and closed the door.
她进了房间，关上了门。

考向：[易错点] enter 表示进入一个具体场所或加入某个组织而成为其中一员时，后面无需加介词。

eg：China has **entered** WTO.
中国已经加入了世贸组织。

⑥too ...to ...太……而不能……

eg：He is **too** young **to** go to school by himself.
他太小了，不能独自去上学。

考向：[难点] too + *adj.* (+for sb.) +to do sth. 意为“(对某人来说)太……而不能做某事”，常与“not + *adj.* + enough + to do sth.”和“so + *adj.* +that 引导的从句(从句用否定形式)”结构互换。

eg：The problem is too difficult for me to work out. = The problem is so difficult that I can't work it out. = The problem isn't easy enough for me to work out.
这个问题对于我来说太难了，以至于我解决不了。

【考题在线 4】 It's not _____ to be friendly. You have to be a friend. Go and talk to Sam. （无锡）
A. good enough
B. late enough
C. too good
D. too late
点拨：句意：友好怎么都不算晚，你必须像个朋友的样子，去跟 Sam 谈谈。此处用到固定短语 too...to，表示“太……而不能”。

⑦reach /riːtʃ/ *vt.* 伸手(脚)够到；到达

eg：The little girl can't **reach** the apples on the table.
那个小女孩够不到桌上的苹果。

考向：get，arrive，reach 意为“到达”时的区别

get	不及物动词，常和介词 to 连用。但当到达的地点为副词(here，there，home)时，to 要省略。	I **got** home late last night. 昨晚我到家晚了。
arrive	不及物动词，可单独使用，后面接地点时，必须有介词 at(小地方)/ in(大地方)。	He will **arrive** in Beijing in an hour. 一个小时后他将到达北京。 When did you arrive? 你什么时候到的？
reach	及物动词，后面可直接跟地点名词。	This train **reaches** London at five. 这班列车5点到达伦敦。

【考题在线 5】 With the help of the Internet, information can _____ every corner of the world quickly. （孝感）
A. get
B. raise
C. reach
D. turn
点拨：本题用**词义辨析法**。句意为：在网络的帮助下，信息能够快速地到达世界的每一个角落。get 得到；raise 饲养；筹集；reach 到达；turn 转变，根据句意可知道选 reach。

⑧fail /feɪl/ *vi.* & *vt.* 失败；不及格

eg：I don't think you will **fail** in the exam.
我认为你将不会考试不及格。

考向：fail *vi.* 表示在某方面失败，常接介词 in；表示“未能成功做某事”，常用“fail to do sth.”。

eg：He **failed to pass** the driving test.
他未能通过驾照考试。

拓展 failure *n.* 失败

考题在线答案
1. C 2. some more 3. B 4. D 5. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

"5W 法"写故事

在叙述故事时，从 who（人物），when（时间），where（地点），what（事件），why（原因）等方面来展开



易错点提示

注意人称和时态的变化

在叙述故事时，首先要选好叙述的角度，是第一人称还是第三人称，从谁的视角来叙述故事，一旦选定不要更换。时态上，一般选择过去时，选定后全篇一般都用过去时。

参考词汇和句式

单词	hurry, fall, notice, side, pass, excited, cry, reach, fail
短语	pass by, get away, all around, hit the ground, be full of, cry for help, on one's way to
句式	He looked up and saw ... passing by. It's dangerous to ... What do you think of ...?

典例

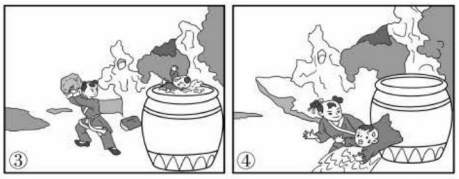
假如你是李梅。你的美国笔友 Tom 在昨天的 e-mail 中告诉你，最近他对中国文化产生了浓厚的兴趣，希望你能给他介绍一些经典故事。请你根据下面所给图画，给 Tom 回复一封 e-mail，向他讲述这一经典故事，并希望知道他对该故事及主人公的看法。

Sima Guang hit the tank（缸）



play hide and seek（捉迷藏），full of water

fall into, be frightened（惊恐的），run, cry for help



think over, pick up, throw at

break, be saved

要求：

1. 文章需包括所有图画的内容，可以适当发挥，使全文连贯；
2. 文中不得出现可能透露考生真实身份的任何信息；
3. 100 词左右（邮件的开头、结尾已给出，不计入总词数）。

Dear Tom,

I'm very happy that you are interested in traditional Chinese stories. Well, let me tell you a famous one with the name "Sima Guang hit the tank".

I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Li Mei

【范文欣赏】

Dear Tom,

I'm very happy that you are interested in traditional Chinese stories. Well, let me tell you a famous one with the name "Sima Guang hit the tank".

Once Sima Guang was playing hide and seek with several children in the backyard. There was a large water tank in the yard. It was full of water.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

When the kids were playing, one child accidentally fell into the tank. Other children were so frightened that they started to run, crying for help. However, Sima Guang was different. He thought it over and then he had an idea. He picked up a big stone and threw it at the tank. "Bang!", the tank broke and the water ran out. The kid was saved.

Do you like the story? What do you think of Sima Guang?

I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Li Mei

【点评】

本文运用"5W法"叙述了司马光砸缸的故事。who: Sima Guang; when: once; where: in the backyard; what: picked up a big stone and threw it at the tank; why: one child accidentally fell into the tank。

添彩点：

作者运用 be full of, fall into, pick up 等词汇使得文章词汇丰富，叙事生动；so ...that ...结果状语从句及 crying for help 现在分词短语作伴随状语以及并列句 He thought it over and then he had an idea. 等句式的熟练运用，使故事引人入胜，人物形象栩栩如生。



"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见240页）

一、根据汉语或首字母提示完成句子

1. Life is beautiful, but it's not always s_____.
2. The little boy is walking _____（朝）his mother.
3. John is too short to r_____ the storybook on the shelf.
4. After he _____（进入）the room, he took off his coat at once.
5. Doctors _____（失败）to save the girl's life.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Get up right now, or you'll fail _____ (catch) the first bus.
7. She doesn't know what _____(do).
8. English is very important. You should try _____ _____(learn) it well.
9. He decides _____ (write) to his mother every week.

三、根据汉语完成句子

10. 听到这个结果，朱莉激动得说不出话来了。（常州）

Julie was _____ _____ _____ say a word when hearing the result.

11. 那条狗足够小，以至于能够穿过那扇门。

The dog is _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ the door.

12. 明天别忘了带上你的外套。（内江改编）

_____ _____ _____ _____ your coat with you tomorrow.

13. 别爬树，危险！

Don't _____ _____the tree! It's dangerous!

14. 玛丽吃了一块蛋糕，但她还想要一些。

Mary ate a piece of cake, but she wanted _____ _____.

15. 我们乡下的生活正变得越来越好。

Our life in the country is _____ _____ _____ _____.

四、根据短文内容及相关提示完成短文

One day, Alice sat by a river with her sister. Then she found a rabbit in a coat _____[16](pass) by. Alice felt very _____[17](惊讶的), so she stood up and r_____[18] after the rabbit. Suddenly the rabbit jumped into a big hole and Alice jumped down too. After some time in the hole, she n_____[19] a bottle on the table. She drank a little liquid(液体) in it, and then her body became _____[20](small) and smaller. And she was small enough to go t_____[21] the door, so she _____[22](决定) to go into the garden. She walked t_____[23] the door, but she f_____[24] about the key. When she came back to the table, she _____[25](失败) to reach the key.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Abilities

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①开门见山法(152 页)　②观察连词法(153 页)　③归纳总结法(153 页) ④抒发情怀法(166 页)
写作方法	①“三步法”写推荐信(167 页)
解题方法	1 词语应用法(152,231,242 页)　2 短语辨析法(148,241 页) 3 交际法(157,231,241 页)　4 语法判断法(231,241,242 页) 5 联系上下文法(231 页)　6 固定句式法(159 页)

学习目标梳理

话题	谈论力所能及的事情		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	ability *n.* 能力　believe *vt.* 相信 seat *n.* 座位　send *vt.* 发送,邮寄;派遣 even *adv.* 甚至　able *adj.* 能,能够 notebook *n.* 笔记本　raise *vt.* 募集 pay *vt.* & *vi.* 给……报酬;付钱	believe it or not 信不信由你 look out 留神,当心　pay for 为……付款 send ...to 寄……给…… be able to 能　clean up 打扫 raise money for 为……筹钱 give a seat to sb. 给某人让座 collect ... for 为……募集……
	Period 2	brave *adj.* 勇敢的　save *vt.* 救,救助 smoke *n.* 烟,烟雾　badly *adv.* 严重地,厉害地 could *modal v.* 可以,能　protect *vt.* 保护 rush *vi.* 冲,奔　wet *adj.* 湿的 news *n.* 新闻,消息　newspaper *n.* 报纸 match *n.* 火柴　rubbish *n.* 垃圾,废弃物 burn *vt.* & *vi.* 烧伤;烧 careful *adj.* 仔细的,认真的;小心的 hurt *vt.* & *vi.* 使受伤,伤害;疼 *adj.* 受伤的	save ...from ...从……中救出…… hear sb. doing 听到某人正在做…… next door 在隔壁 rush into 冲进 in hospital 住院 put out 扑灭;熄灭 be careful with 小心 pour... over 把……倒在……上 be on fire 着火 keep...away from... 让……远离……
	Period 3	smoke *vi.* & *vt.* 吸(烟),抽(烟) camera *n.* 照相机	by the way 顺便问一下,顺便说说 no problem 没问题 a good place to have fun 一个尽情玩耍的好地方
	Period 4	term *n.* 学期　hard *adv.* 努力地;费力地 article *n.* 文章　careless *adj.* 粗心的 better *adv.* 较好,更好　violin *n.* 小提琴 show *vt.* 教;演示;展示	do/try one's best 尽某人最大努力 do well in 在……方面做得好 at the age of 在……岁时 work hard on ... 在……方面努力 play the piano 弹钢琴 know a lot about ... 关于……了解很多

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必考点	Period 5	sir *n.* 先生 part *n.* 部分 need *n.* （食物、钱等的）短缺，缺乏 lose *vt.* 迷失；丢失 before *conj.* 到……为止；在……之前	take part in 参加 lose one's way 迷路 hear from 收到……的来信 recommend sb. for... 推荐某人获得……
句型	1. How cool! 2. What a brave young man! 3. He was brave enough to ... 4. I would like to recommend ...for ... 5. Can you ...? 6. We look forward to hearing from you soon. 7. Believe it or not!	真酷啊！ 多么勇敢的年轻人啊！ 他足够勇敢…… 我想推荐……获得…… 你能……？ 我们期盼尽快收到您的来信。 信不信由你！	
语法	1. can, could, may 的用法　2. 感叹句		

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

1 I'm Superdog, Hobo!
How cool!
2 I can fly!
You?
3 **Believe**[1] it or not!
Look out[2], Eddie!
4 See, you can't fly, Eddie.

课文朗读 Comic strip

What can you do?

People have different **abilities**[3]. Some organizations give awards to people for the things they did for others.

Task

You want to recommend someone for an award. Write a recommendation letter.

Welcome to the unit

Helping Hands Club

A Daniel and his classmates are members of the Helping Hands Club. Match the pictures below with the descriptions. Write the correct letters in the boxes.

a planting trees
b helping an old man
c **cleaning up**[4] the park
d **giving a seat to**[5] someone on the bus
e collecting things for Project Hope
f visiting an old people's home

连环漫画

1 我是超级狗，霍波！
太酷了！
2 我会飞！
你？
3 信不信由你！
小心，埃迪！
4 看，埃迪，你不会飞。

你能做什么？

人们有不同的能力。一些组织根据人们为别人做的事给予他们奖励。

任务

你想为一项奖项推荐某人。
写一封推荐信。

单元导入

助人为乐俱乐部

A 丹尼尔和他的同班同学们是助人为乐俱乐部的成员。把下面的图片和描述搭配起来。在方框中写上正确的字母。

a 植树
b 帮助一位老人
c 打扫公园
d 在公共汽车上给人让座
e 为希望工程募集物品
f 拜访养老院

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B The members at the Helping Hands Club are talking about what they can do to help others. Work in groups and talk about what you can do. Use the conversation below as a model.

Daniel: What can we do for the children in poor areas?

Millie: They need clothes and shoes most. We can **send**[6] some to them.

课文朗读B

Simon: Some families are not **even**[7] **able**[8] to **pay**[9] for pens and notebooks.

Amy: Yes. We can **raise**[10] some money for them to buy these things.

Kitty: We can also collect some books for the children.

Daniel: Good idea.

B 助人为乐俱乐部的成员们正在讨论他们能做什么来帮助其他人。分组讨论你们能做什么。用下面的谈话作为示例。

丹尼尔:我们能为贫困地区的孩子们做点什么呢?

米莉:他们最需要衣服和鞋。我们可以寄一些给他们。

西蒙:一些家庭甚至付不起钢笔和笔记本的费用。

埃米:是的。我们可以为他们募集一些资金来买这些东西。

基蒂:我们还能为孩子们募集一些书。

丹尼尔:好主意。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶believe /bɪˈliːv/ *vt.* 相信

eg: Do you **believe** what he says?
你相信他说的吗?

考向一:常用用法:believe in 信任;信赖;Believe it or not! 信不信由你!

考向二:[辨析] believe 与 believe in

believe	表示相信某人的话,相信某事等。	I **believe in** you, so I **believe** what you said. 我信任你,所以我相信你说的话。
believe in	常表示“信任,信赖”,多指品德上的相信。	

考向三:当主语为第一人称,后接表示否定意义的宾语从句时,需将否定前移。

eg: I don't **believe** she can finish it today.
我相信她今天完不成。

❷look out 留神,当心

eg: **Look out**! There is a lot of traffic.
当心!有很多来往车辆。

考向:look out 的同义短语为 be careful 或 take care。

[辨析] look out, take care 与 be careful

look out	语气最强,用于某种紧急的情况或可能出现的危险的场合。	**Look out**! You'll hit the car. 当心!你要撞上那辆车了。
take care	语气不那么强,多用于对可能出现的不测做出预先的提醒或警告。后可接动词不定式或 that 从句。	**Take care** not to break the glass. 小心别打了玻璃杯。
be careful	是一般的警告或劝告用语,既可单独使用,也可跟动词不定式或与 with 构成短语。	**Be careful** not to lose the key. 当心不要丢了钥匙。

❸ability /əˈbɪləti/ *n.* 能力

eg: He has the **ability** to do the work.
他有做这项工作的能力。

考向一:名词 ability 为可数名词,复数为 abilities;形容词为 able,意为“有能力的”,be able to do sth. “能干某事,会干某事”。

eg: He is an **able** man; he **is able to** do a lot of things.
他是一个有能力的人,他能做许多事情。

考向二:ability 的固定短语:special abilities“特殊才能”,improve one's ability“提高某人的能力”。

【考题在线 1】 Be confident! Everyone has the _____ (能力) to learn new skills. (淮安改编)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④clean up 打扫，清理，整理

eg：Please **clean up** the classroom before you leave.
在你离开前请把教室打扫干净。

考向：短语 clean up 属于“动词 + 副词”结构，如果是名词作宾语，名词可放在 clean 和 up 中间，也可放在 up 之后。如果是代词作宾语，则必须放在 clean 和 up 中间。

eg：The room is too dirty. **Clean it up**, please.
这房间太脏了，请把它打扫干净。

【考题在线 2】 —Daisy, look at your bedroom. How dirty!
—Sorry, I'll _____ right now!
A. put up it
B. clean up it
C. put it up
D. clean it up

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：——Daisy，看你的卧室，真脏！——对不起，我马上把它打扫干净。put up 和 clean up 都是动词 + 副词的结构，代词作宾语，要放在动词和副词之间。根据句意应该是把它打扫干净。

⑤give a seat to 让座给……

eg：Will you please **give your seat to** this old man?
请把你的座位让给这位老人好吗？

考向：give sth. to sb. 意为“给某人某物”，相当于 give sb. sth. 。其中 sb. 是间接宾语，sth. 是直接宾语。在表示“给某人某物”时，当 sth. 为代词时，只能用 give sth. to sb. ，不能用 give sb. sth. 。

eg：He gave a book to me yesterday.
= He gave me a book yesterday.
他昨天给了我一本书。

⑥send /send/ *vt.* 发送，邮寄；派遣

eg：I will **send** you some new books.
我将寄一些新书给你。

考向：send 常用固定结构 send sb. sth. ，相当于 send sth. to sb. 意为“把某物发送给某人”。

拓展 与 send 有关的短语
send for 派人去取，派人去请
send up 发射
send away 解雇

⑦even /'i:vn/ *adv.* 甚至

eg：Peter is not **even** able to ride a bike.
彼得甚至连自行车都不会骑。

考向一：even 在句中起加强语气的作用。

eg：**Even** a child can tell the story.
连一个孩子都能讲出这个故事。

考向二：even 还可以用来修饰形容词或副词的比较级，表示“甚至更；还（要）”。

eg：This film is **even** better than that one.
这部电影甚至比那部还要好。

⑧able /'eɪbl/ *adj.* 能，能够

eg：She won't be **able** to play basketball for three months.
她将三个月不能打篮球。

考向：[难点] [辨析] be able to 与 can

be able to	强调在具体事件中有能力，有人称和数的变化，可用于多种时态。	I'm sure the girl will **be able to** look after herself. 我确信那个女孩会自己照顾自己。
can	通常指一般性的能力，表示“有能力做某事”，can 没有将来式和完成式。	Birds **can** fly. 鸟会飞翔。

【考题在线 3】 没有老师的帮助，我们将不能做好这项工作。
Without the help of our teacher, we _____ _____ _____ _____ do the job well.

⑨pay /peɪ/ *vi.* & *vt.* 付钱；给……报酬

eg：Who will **pay** for the lunch?
谁将为午餐付费？

考向一：[重点] pay 作不及物动词时，经常与 for 连用，意为“付款，付……的费用”。

eg：I **pay for** the new house.
我付新房的房款。

考向二：[重点] pay 作及物动词时，常用搭配为：pay sb. 意为“向某人付款”，pay （sb.） some money for sth. 意为“付给（某人）钱买某物”。

eg：I paid the man four *yuan* for the book.
我付给那个人 4 元钱买了这本书。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

特色土方法

pay for 的用法：pay for 只跟物，紧相连，见了钱，把脸翻，pay 与 for 位于钱两边。即：pay for 见钱分开，pay + 金钱 + for sth.。

⑩**raise** /reɪz/ *vt.* 募集

eg：They are **raising** money.
他们正在募捐。

考向：及物动词 raise 后面直接跟宾语，常用短语为 raise money for ...“为……筹募钱财”。

eg：We will **raise money for** charity.
我们将为慈善募捐。

【考题在线 4】他们正在组织一场才艺表演为慈善事业筹款。（烟台）
They're organizing a talent show to _____ for charity.

考题在线答案
1. ability 2. D
3. won't be able to
4. raise money

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见241页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. He has a special _____(能力) to write with two hands at the same time. (阜康)
2. Sandy forgot to bring her _____(笔记本) to school yesterday.
3. Can you _____ (寄) some pictures to me?
4. This will make our job e_____ more difficult.
5. He _____ (pay) 50 *yuan* for the dictionary yesterday. (绥化改编)

二、单项选择

6. If you need to go to the restroom in class, please _____ your hand. (莱芜)
A. raise B. rise
C. shake D. wash

7. Finish your homework first; then you'll _____ watch TV for an hour. (白银)
A. can
B. be able to
C. able
D. could

8. Don't forget to _____ up the table after you have a meal. 【导学号：1037419】
A. stand
B. make
C. take
D. clean

9. This food is free. You don't have to _____ it. (河北)
A. look for B. pay for
C. ask for D. wait for

10. —_____! Something is falling down from the building.
—Dear me! It's too dangerous.
A. Look at B. Look out
C. Look after D. Look for

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 这些年轻人经常在周末打扫公园。
These young people often _____ _____ the park at weekends.

12. 他经常在公共汽车上给别人让座。
He often _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ on the bus.

13. 看！学生们在为希望工程募集衣服。
Look! The students _____ _____ clothes _____ Project Hope.

14. 一些孩子甚至付不起上学的费用。
Some children are not _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ school.

15. 我相信他不会去那儿的。
I _____ _____ he _____ _____ _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A A brave young man

Daniel is reading a newspaper article about a brave young man. Here is the article.

课文朗读A

Sunshine Daily

What a brave young man!

Lin Tao is 20 years old. **He was brave enough to save**[1] **his neighbour from a fire.**[2]

On 10 May, Lin Tao was at home alone. Suddenly, he heard someone shouting "Fire! Fire! Help!" He ran outside and saw a lot of **smoke**[3] from next door. He went in and found his neighbour, the **79-year-old**[4] Mrs Sun, in the kitchen. Her left leg was badly **hurt**[5] and she could not get out.

Lin Tao quickly ran to Mrs Sun's bathroom. He poured water over his clothes to **protect**[6] himself. Then he **rushed into**[7] the kitchen. There was heavy smoke and the fire was very hot. He put a wet blanket over Mrs Sun **and**[8] helped her out. Later some firemen came and put out the fire.

The fire burnt Lin Tao's arms, neck and face. He was **in hospital**[9] for two weeks. Many people visited him and gave him flowers and presents. "How brave you are!" they said. "Were you afraid at that **moment**[10]?"

"Yes, a little," Lin Tao nodded, "but I didn't have time to think about it. Mrs Sun needed my help."

"**Fire is very dangerous. We should be careful with it**," **he also said.**[11]

B Helping people

B1 Daniel did not understand some of the words in the article. Help him match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1 brave (line 1) _____
2 alone (line 3) _____
3 rush (line 8) _____
4 put out (line 10) _____
5 burn (line 11) _____
6 at that moment (line 13) _____

阅读

A 一位勇敢的年轻人

丹尼尔正在看报纸上的一篇关于一位勇敢的年轻人的文章。这是那篇文章。

阳光日报

一位多么勇敢的年轻人！

林涛20岁。他足够勇敢，从火中救出了他的邻居。

5月10日，林涛独自呆在家里。突然，他听到有人在叫："着火啦！着火啦！救命啊！"他跑到外面，看见从隔壁门里冒出许多烟。他跑进去，发现他的邻居，79岁的孙太太在厨房里。她的左腿严重受伤，她不能出来了。

林涛迅速跑到孙太太的浴室。他往衣服上泼水来保护自己。然后他冲进厨房。烟很浓，火很灼热。他把一个湿毯子盖在孙太太的身上帮助孙太太逃出来。后来一些消防员来了并扑灭了火。

火烧伤了林涛的胳膊、脖子和脸。他住了两周的医院。许多人来拜访他，给他鲜花和礼物。他们说："你多么勇敢啊！当时你害怕吗？"

"是的，有一点儿。"林涛点点头，"但是我没有时间考虑它。孙太太需要我的帮助。"

他还说："火非常危险。我们应该当心。"

B 帮助人

B1 丹尼尔不懂这篇文章中的一些单词。帮助他将左边的单词与右边的意思搭配起来。在空格上写上正确的字母。

1 勇敢的(第一行)_____
2 独自的(第三行)_____
3 冲(第八行)_____
4 扑灭(第十行)_____
5 烧(第十一行)_____
6 在那时(第十三行)_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

a run quickly
b just then
c hurt someone with fire
d not afraid
e without any other people
f stop something from burning

B2 A radio reporter interviewed Lin Tao. Complete the conversation between Lin Tao and the reporter.

afraid	hospital	neighbour
protect	smoke	wet

Reporter: You're a brave young man, Lin Tao. How old are you?
Lin Tao: I'm twenty.
Reporter: Can you tell us about the fire?
Lin Tao: Sure. First, I heard someone calling for help, and then I saw a lot of (1) _____ from next door.
Reporter: How did you save your (2) _____ Mrs Sun?
Lin Tao: I rushed into Mrs Sun's kitchen, put a (3) _____ blanket over her and helped her out.
Reporter: That sounds dangerous. Did you do anything to (4) _____ yourself?
Lin Tao: Yes, I did. I poured water over my clothes.
Reporter: Were you (5) _____ at that moment?
Lin Tao: Yes, a little.
Reporter: How long did you stay in (6) _____ after the fire?
Lin Tao: For two weeks.

B3 Daniel told Simon about Lin Tao, but he made five mistakes. Help him correct them. Underline the mistakes and write the correct word above each mistake.

Simon: Did you hear the **news**[12] about Lin Tao?
Daniel: Yes. I read about it in the newspaper. He saved an old lady from a fire.
Simon: What did he do?
Daniel: First, he found out that his neighbour's bathroom was on fire. Then he poured water over his trousers and helped her out.
Simon: How clever!
Daniel: But the fire burnt his legs, neck and face. He was in hospital for two months.
Simon: How brave he is! Is he getting better now?
Daniel: Yes. Many visitors gave him flowers and cards.

a 迅速地跑
b 就在那时
c 用火烧伤某人
d 不害怕
e 没有其他人
f 阻止某物燃烧

B2 一个电台记者采访了林涛。完成林涛和记者之间的谈话。

害怕的	医院	邻居
保护	烟	潮湿的

记者:林涛,你是一位勇敢的年轻人。你多大了?
林涛:我20岁。
记者:你能告诉我们有关这场火灾的事吗?
林涛:当然可以。首先我听到有人大喊求助,然后我看到隔壁有许多(1)_____。
记者:你是怎么救出你的(2)_____,孙夫人的?
林涛:我冲进孙夫人的厨房,用一个(3)_____毯子盖住她,然后帮她逃出来。
记者:那听起来很危险。你做了什么来(4)_____你自己了吗?
林涛:是的,我做了。我把水倒在我的衣服上。
记者:你那时(5)_____吗?
林涛:是的,有一点。
记者:火灾后你在(6)_____呆了多长时间?
林涛:两周。

B3 丹尼尔告诉了西蒙有关林涛的事情,但他犯了五处错误。帮助他改正这些错误。在错误的下面画线并在每处错误的上面写上正确的单词。

西蒙:你听说关于林涛的新闻了吗?
丹尼尔:是的。我在报纸上看了。他从火中救出一位老太太。
西蒙:他做了什么?
丹尼尔:首先,他发现他的邻居浴室里着火了。然后他把水倒在他的裤子上,帮助她逃出来了。
西蒙:多聪明啊!
丹尼尔:但是火烧伤了他的腿、脖子和脸。他住了两个月的医院。
西蒙:他是多么勇敢啊!他现在好些了吗?
丹尼尔:是的。许多来访者给他鲜花和卡片。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Simon: That's nice.
Daniel: I'm very happy that he's well now.
Simon: Me too.

C How to be careful with fire

Daniel wants to learn more about how to be careful with fire. Help him match the four pieces of advice with the pictures. Write the correct letters in the boxes.

a Be careful with fireworks.
b Do not play with matches.
c Do not put anything hot into the rubbish bin.
d **Keep your hair away from fire**[13].

西蒙：好极了。
丹尼尔：我非常高兴他现在好了。
西蒙：我也是。

C 如何当心火

丹尼尔想更多地了解如何小心火。帮助他把四条建议与图片搭配起来。把正确的字母写在方框中。

a 小心烟火。
b 别玩火柴。
c 别把热的东西放进垃圾箱里。
d 让你的头发远离火。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 save /seɪv/ *vt.* 救；救助

eg: The young man **saved** her life.
这个年轻人救了她的命。

考向一：save 常用短语：save ... from ... "从……中救出……"；save sb. "救某人"；save one's life "救某人的命"。

考向二：save 还可表示：

词性 & 词义	例句
及物动词，"储蓄；保存"。	**Save** some food for me. 给我留点吃的。
及物动词，"节省；节约"。	We should **save** water. 我们应该节约用水。

【考题在线 1】Zhang Sen was a brave young man. He _____ (kept someone safe from danger) a young lady from a river several months ago. （宿迁）

2 开门见山法：此句是全文的中心句，起到总领全文的作用，以下文章内容（林涛救人）的展开都是围绕此句进行的。我们在写介绍人物类文章的时候，要注意可先总写，交代文章的内容，然后按情节进行叙述。

3 smoke / sməʊk / *n.* 烟，烟雾

eg: There is no **smoke** without fire.
无火不生烟。/无风不起浪。（谚语）

考向一：smoke 作"烟"讲时，为不可数名词，不能和表示具体数目的词连用。

考向二：smoke 还可表示：

词性 & 词义	例句
动词，"冒烟"	The chimney is **smoking**. 烟囱正在冒烟。
动词，"吸烟；抽烟"	Do you **smoke**? 你吸烟吗？

【考题在线 2】—Look at the girl in the square!
—Oh, I'm surprised that a _____ girl can dance so well! （郴州）
A. three-years-old　　B. three-year-old
C. three years

点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——看广场上的女孩！——噢，我惊讶一个三岁的女孩能把舞跳得这么好！three-year-old 表示"三岁的"。

4 79-year-old 是一个复合形容词，意为"79 岁的"。

考向：这种复合形容词通常在句中作定语，修饰后面的名词。有两种形式：
a. "数词 + 名词"，中间用连字符连接；
b. "数词 + 名词 + 形容词"，中间用连字符连接，该结构中的名词必须是单数形式。

eg: a five-year plan
一个五年计划
a ten-year-old boy
一个十岁的男孩儿

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 3】 The park is far away from here indeed. It's about _____ walk. (苏州)

A. a three hour　　B. a three hour's

C. a three-hours　　D. a three-hour

点拨:考查复合形容词的用法。A、B、C 三项不符合英语构词法规则,只有 D 项 three-hour 才符合该类复合词的构词法。

5 hurt /hɜ:t/ *adj.* 受伤的

eg:Luckily, no one was **hurt** in the car accident.
幸运的是,车祸中没有人受伤。

考向:hurt 还可作动词,意为"(使)疼痛;受伤;使不快;使烦恼;感到疼痛",其过去式为 hurt。

eg:Look out! The knife may **hurt** you.
小心!那刀可能会伤到你。
What she said **hurt** my feelings deeply.
她的话深深地伤害了我的感情。
My back **hurts**. 我的后背疼。

6 protect /prəˈtekt/ *vt.* 保护

eg:We should **protect** our eyes.
我们应该保护我们的眼睛。

考向:protect 的常用结构:protect + 宾语 + against / from,意为"保护……不受……"。

eg:Wearing dark glasses can **protect** your eyes against / from the sun.
戴墨镜可以保护眼睛不受阳光照射。

拓展 protection *n.* 保护,防卫;protector *n.* 保护人(或组织、装置等);protective *adj.* 保护的,防护的

7 rush into 冲进……

eg:He **rushed into** my house.
他冲进了我的房子。

考向:rush into 的反义短语为 rush out of,意为"冲出……";rush at 意为"冲向"。

eg:The children **rushed out of** the classroom.
孩子们冲出了教室。

8 观察连词法:此句中 and 连接两个并列的谓语动词 put 和 helped。

9 in hospital 住院

eg:Mr Zhang is ill **in hospital**.
张先生生病住院了。

考向:[辨析] in hospital 与 in the hospital

in hospital	(生病)住院	指病人生病住院。
in the hospital	在医院里	hospital 前加冠词 the 表示一个具体的地点。

eg:Daniel is ill **in hospital**.
丹尼尔生病住院了。
Her mother works **in the hospital**.
她的妈妈在医院工作。

10 moment /ˈməʊmənt/ *n.* 片刻,瞬间

eg:They are playing in the garden at the **moment**.
此刻他们正在花园里玩。

考向:常用搭配:at the moment 此刻;现在;in a moment 马上;for the moment 暂时

11 归纳总结法:用林涛的话对整个文章进行再次总结,除突出主题外还对学生进行了安全思想的教育。我们在写介绍类文章的时候,要注意在介绍人或事的同时,可介入一些对学生思想方面的教育内容,以此来增加文章的教育性。

12 news /nju:z/ *n.* 新闻;消息

eg:No news is good **news**.
没有消息就是好消息。
Look! Here is a piece of **news**.
看!这儿有条消息。

考向:[易错点] news 是不可数名词,常用形容词 good/bad 修饰,指消息的好坏。表示"一条消息"用 a piece of news,"几条消息"用 some pieces of news。

13 keep... away from...使……远离……

eg:You must **keep** your child **away from** that dog.
一定要让你的孩子远离那条狗。

考向:[重点] 固定结构 keep sb./sth. from doing sth. 相当于 prevent sb./sth. from doing sth. 或 stop sb./sth. from (doing) sth.。

eg:We must **keep/prevent/stop** the children **from** playing in the street.
我们必须阻止孩子们在街上玩。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展 keep 用法归类：

keep + 形容词“保持……状态”	I want to keep fit. 我想要保持健康。
keep（ + 宾语）+ doing sth. “（使……）一直不断地做某事”	Keep trying, and you'll succeed. 坚持不懈，你就会成功。
keep + 宾语 + 宾语补足语（介词短语、形容词等）	Please keep your hands behind your back. 请把手放在背后。

【考题在线 4】对我们而言保持健康很重要。

It's very important for us to _____. （遂宁）

点拨：“保持健康”英文为 keep healthy。使用 keep + 形容词结构。

考题在线答案

1. saved
2. B　3. D
4. keep healthy

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞（答案见241页）

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Lin Tao was _____（勇敢的）enough to save his neighbour from a fire. （南京）
2. The fire _____（烧毁）the whole house last year.
3. The _____（垃圾）bin is full. Who can empty it?
4. Who can send today's _____（报纸）to the old people's home?
5. Animals know many ways to _____（保护）themselves.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Mrs Sun's left leg was _____（bad）hurt.
7. Zhang Hua _____（rush）into the bedroom and helped the old woman out of the fire.
8. Tell the students not to play with _____（match）.
9. The little boy _____（can）not find his way in the park yesterday.
10. Peter listened to his teacher and _____（nod）from time to time.

三、单项选择

11. Be patient! Give him more time, _____ he will find the answer to the question on his own. （泰州）

A. but　　B. or
C. and　　D. so

12. Mr Sun _____ go out last month because he _____ his leg.

A. couldn't; hurted
B. couldn't; hurt
C. can't; hurt
D can't; hurted

13. A car hit her yesterday and she is now _____. Let's go and see her this afternoon. （兴化顾庄三校期末）

A. in the hospital　　B. in a hospital
C. in hospital　　D. on the hospital

14. The _____ man's son is only _____. （苏州期末模拟测试）

A. 50-year-old; 5-year-old
B. 50 years old; 5 years old
C. 50 years old; 5-year-old
D. 50-year-old; 5 years old

15. It's not good to _____ dirty water into the river.

A. throw　　B. take　　C. rush　　D. pour

16. When I passed the classroom, I heard a girl _____ in it. （黔东南）

A. sing　　B. sings　　C. sang　　D. singing

17. —Have you heard of the big fire that broke out at Hao Yixing Clothes Market on June 2nd?
—Yes. Luckily, hundreds of firemen immediately drove there and _____ the fire. （达州）

A. put off　　B. put away
C. put down　　D. put out

18. “_____!” Mary called when she fell into the river.

A. Come on　　B. Help
C. SOS　　D. Save

19. Mary is as _____ as her sister; they always plan everything well. （梧州）

A. carefully　　B. careful
C. more careful　　D. more carefully

20. We must keep the fire _____.

A. of hurting us　　B. to hurt us
C. from hurting us　　D. for hurting us

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Using can, could and may

1 We use **can** or **could** to talk about ability. We use **can** to talk about present ability and use **could** to talk about ability in the past.

Millie can speak good English.

Shirley cannot ride a horse.

The old man could swim across the Yangtze River.

TIP

We write cannot as one word.

2 We use **can**, **could** or **may** to ask for permission. **Could** sounds more polite than **can. May** is formal.

— Can I borrow your bike, Millie?

— Yes, you can. Here you are.

— Could I smoke here?

— Sorry, I'm afraid you can't.

—May I use your mobile phone?

—Of course you may.

TIP

We can also use **be able to** to talk about ability.

A trip to South Hill

The students are going to South Hill. Amy is talking to Mr Wu about the trip. Complete their conversation with can, could or may.

Amy: (1) _____ I take my cousin Shirley with us, Mr Wu?

Mr Wu: Yes, you (2) _____. But we'll get there by bike. (3) _____ she ride a bike?

Amy: Yes, she (4) _____. South Hill is a good place to have fun. (5) _____ we go camping there?

Mr Wu: I'm afraid you (6) _____.

Amy: I see. (7) _____ I make a call on your mobile? I left mine at home.

Mr Wu: Of course you (8) _____. **By the way**[1], (9) _____ you take your camera with you, Amy?

Amy: **No problem.**[2]

语法

A 使用 can, could 和 may

1 我们用 can 或 could 来谈论能力。我们用 can 来谈论现在的能力，用 could 来谈论过去的能力。

米莉能讲好英语。

雪莉不会骑马。

这位老人能游过长江。

提示

我们把 cannot 作为一个单词进行书写。

2 我们用 can, could 或 may 来请求许可。could 听起来比 can 更有礼貌。may 比较正式。

——米莉，我可以借你的自行车吗？

——是的，可以。给你。

——我可以在这儿抽烟吗？

——对不起，我恐怕你不能。

——我可以用一下你的手机吗？

——当然可以。

提示

我们也可以用 be able to 谈论能力。

去南山的一次旅行

学生们准备去南山。埃米正在跟吴老师谈有关旅行的事。用 can, could 或 may 完成他们的谈话。

埃米：吴老师，我(1) _____带上我的堂妹雪莉和我们一起吗？

吴老师：是的，你(2) _____。但是我们要骑自行车去那儿。她(3) _____骑车吗？

埃米：是的，她(4) _____。南山是个好玩的地方。我们(5) _____在那儿野营度假吗？

吴老师：我恐怕你们(6) _____。

埃米：我明白了。我(7) _____用你的手机打个电话吗？我把我的手机忘在家里了。

吴老师：当然你(8) _____。顺便问一下，埃米，你(9) _____带上你的照相机吗？

埃米：没问题。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B Using What and How to express strong feelings

We use What …! or How …! in a short phrase to express strong feelings about someone or something.

How dangerous!
What a brave man!

We make sentences with What …! and How … ! like this:

	Noun phrase	
What	a beautiful flower	(it is)!
	beautiful flowers	(they are)!
	an interesting idea	(he has)!
	interesting ideas	(you have)!
	nice music	(it is)!

	Adjective	
How	beautiful	(the flower is)!
	beautiful	(the flowers are)!
	interesting	(his idea is)!
	interesting	(your ideas are)!
	nice	(the music is)!

TIP

We use a noun phrase after What to form an exclamation.
We use an adjective after How to form an exclamation.

What can Superman do?

Millie is asking Simon what he knows about Superman. Help Millie complete the conversation with What and How.

Millie: What can Superman do, Simon?
Simon: Superman can see through walls.
Millie: (1) _____ amazing! His eyes are just like X-rays.
Simon: Yes. He can also burn things with his eyes.
Millie: (2) _____ special eyes he has! How about his ears?
Simon: He can hear things far away.
Millie: (3) _____ strange! What else can he do?
Simon: He can stop a train with his hands.
Millie: (4) _____ strong he is! Can he fly?
Simon: Yes. He can fly as fast as light.
Millie: (5) _____ a wonderful man!

B 用 What 和 How 来表达强烈的感情

我们用 What …! 或 How …! 的简短的短语来表达对某人或某事的强烈感情。

多么危险!
多么勇敢的人啊!

我们像这样用 What …! 和 How …! 造句:

	名词短语	
多么	美丽的花	(它是)!
	美丽的花	(它们是)!
	一个有趣的想法	(他有)!
	有趣的想法	(你们有)!
	好听的音乐	(它是)!

	形容词	
多么	美丽的	(花是)!
	美丽的	(花是)!
	有趣的	(他的想法是)!
	有趣的	(你们的想法是)!
	好听的	(音乐是)!

提示

我们在 What 后用名词短语来构成感叹句。
我们在 How 后用形容词来构成感叹句。

超人能做什么?

米莉正在问西蒙对超人他了解什么。帮助米莉用 What 和 How 来完成谈话。

米莉:西蒙,超人能做什么?
西蒙:超人能看穿墙。
米莉:(1) _____令人惊讶啊! 他的眼睛就像 X 射线。
西蒙:是的。他还能用眼睛烧东西。
米莉:他有(2) _____特殊的眼睛啊! 那他的耳朵呢?
西蒙:他能听到很远的东西。
米莉:(3) _____奇怪! 他还能干什么?
西蒙:他能用手停下火车。
米莉:他是(4) _____强壮啊! 他能飞吗?
西蒙:是的。他能飞得像光一样快。
米莉:(5) _____了不起的人啊!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶by the way 顺便问一下

考向一：by the way 是口语中的常用语，通常用作插入语，表示说话人要转入一个新话题。

eg：**By the way**, I have something to tell you.
顺便说一下，我有些事情要告诉你。

考向二：与 way 相关的短语还有：

all the way 自始至终

on one's way to 在某人去……的路上

lose one's way 迷路

【考题在线1】—_____you show me the way to the post office?
—Of course. _____, why do you want to go to the post office? （泰州姜堰期末）

A. Could; By the way
B. Must; In the way
C. May; On the way
D. Can; On my way

点拨：Could/ Can you show me the way to...? 是向别人问路的常用表达方式。在表示话题转移时要用 by the way。

❷No problem. 没问题。

考向：no problem 可以用在不同场合。当表示愿意相助或事情容易做时可以说 no problem，意思是“没问题”；回答别人的道谢或道歉时，也可以说 no problem，意思是“不客气、没关系”。

【考题在线2】—Could you help me carry the equipment to the basketball field, Robin?
—_____. I'll do it at once. （连云港）

A. Not at all　　B. No problem
C. Wait a moment　　D. That's right

点拨：本题用交际法。——罗宾，你能帮我把这个设备拿到篮球场地吗？——_____。我立刻就做。Not at all“一点儿也不”；No problem“没问题”；Wait a moment“等一会”；That's right“那是对的”。根据答语“我立刻就做”可推知表示“没问题”。

考题在线答案

1. A　2. B

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点1：can，could，may 的用法

这三个都是情态动词。情态动词本身有一定的意义，但它们没有人称和数的变化，需和动词一起构成句子的谓语，表示说话者的情感、态度和语气。

考向一：can 和 could 表示能力

(1) can 是最常用的情态动词，意为“能，会”，用来谈论某人现在的能力；could 是 can 的过去式，用来谈论某人过去的能力。

eg：I couldn't understand his words last year, but now I can.
去年我还不能理解他的话，但现在我能理解了。

(2) can 谈论能力时，其同义词组为 be able to，意为“能够，会”，后跟动词原形，二者一般可互换。但 can 只用于现在时和过去时(could)两种时态，如果要用于其他时态，如一般将来时等，就需要使用 be able to。

eg：You will be able to pass the exam tomorrow.
明天你能通过考试。

【考题在线1】—Helen, who _____ fix up the computer in our class?
—I think Jeff can.

A. should　　B. would
C. must　　D. can

点拨：句意：——海伦，咱们班里谁会修理电脑？——我认为杰夫会。由答语中“I think Jeff can.”可知问句中也应该用情态动词 can 表示“能，会”。

【考题在线2】Please don't make so much noise. I _____ hear the speaker very well. （安徽）

A. needn't　　B. mustn't
C. can't　　D. shouldn't

点拨：句意：请不要发出如此大的噪音。我_____很好地听见演讲者(说话)。needn't 不必；mustn't 不允许；can't 不能；shouldn't 不应该。既然噪音太大，那肯定不能够很好地听到演讲者说话。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向二：can，could 和 may 表示许可

我们也可以用情态动词 can，could 和 may 来表示请求或许可。情态动词 could 表示一种委婉的语气，比用 can 表达更有礼貌，常用于问句中。

［易错点］其回答不能用 could，只能用 can。may 比 can 更正式。

eg：—Could I borrow your ruler?
我可以借你的尺子吗？
—Yes，you can. 是的，你可以。
/—Sorry，you can't. 对不起，你不可以。

【考题在线 3】 —It's too hot. _____ I swim in the lake?
—No，you _____. That's too dangerous! （黄石）
A. Should；can't　　B. Need；mustn't
C. Must；needn't　　D. Could；can't

点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：——太热了，我能在湖里游泳吗？——不，你不能。那太危险了！could 表示“能，可以”，语气更委婉；can't 表示“不能”。由句意可知，第一空用 could 提出请求；第二空用 can't 表示“不能”。

【考题在线 4】 _____ I see your ID card，sir? We have to check your information. （河北）
A. May　　B. Must
C. Should　　D. Need

点拨：考查情态动词的用法。向别人请求许可时可用 can 或 may。根据句意“先生，我可以看一下你的身份证吗？我们不得不核实你的信息。”可知此处表示请求许可。

考向三：can 和 may 表示推测

can 表示推测时，常用于否定句，can't 意为“不可能”；may 表示没有把握的猜测，意为“可能”。

eg：He may be at home now.
现在他可能在家里。
The Japanese book can't be Alice's. She studies English. 这本日语书不可能是爱丽丝的，她学英语。

【考题在线 5】 Jack _____ be at home because I saw him in the library just now. （德阳）
A. can't　B. may　C. must　D. mustn't

点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：杰克不可能在家，因为我刚刚在图书馆看到他了。表示否定猜测用情态动词 can't 表示“不可能”。

【考题在线 6】 —Wow，another gift! What's in the box?
—I'm not sure. It _____ be a pair of sports shoes. （成都）
A. must　　B. may　　C. will

点拨：考查情态动词表推测的用法。因为句子前面有一个“I'm not sure”表示不确定，所以是用 may 表示可能性的推测。

考点 2：感叹句

考向一：感叹句是用来表达喜怒哀乐等强烈感情的句子。感叹句一般由 what 或 how 引导，句末加感叹号。what 修饰名词，how 修饰形容词、副词或动词。


知识微课：感叹句

考向二：［重点］感叹句的构成：

（1）what 引导的感叹句的主要句型：

what 的基本句型	例句
What + a/an + 形容词 + 可数名词单数（+ 主语 + 谓语）！（以元音音素开头的形容词前面要用 an）	What an interesting story (it is)！ 多么有趣的故事啊！
What + 形容词 + 可数名词复数（+ 主语 + 谓语）！	What beautiful flowers (they are)！ 多么漂亮的花啊！
What + 形容词 + 不可数名词（+ 主语 + 谓语）！	What delicious food (it is)！ 多么好吃的食物啊！

【考题在线 7】 —_____ fine weather it is! Shall we go hiking in the hills?
—Why not? （宿迁）
A. What　　B. What a
C. How　　D. How a

点拨：句意：——多好的天气啊！我们去山里徒步旅行怎么样啊？——为什么不呢？在感叹句中，what 后跟被强调的名词短语，而 how 后跟被强调的形容词或副词。weather 为不可数名词，应用 what 引导，不能加 a。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 8】—My sister is planning to have a second child next year.
—_____ good idea it is! （淮安）
A. What B. What a
C. How D. How a
点拨：句意：——我姐姐计划明年再生一个孩子。——多么好的一个主意！what 引导感叹句修饰名词短语 good idea，因为 idea 是可数名词，要加 a。

(2) how 引导的感叹句的主要句型：

how 的基本句型	例句
How + 形容词(+ 主语 + 谓语)!	How kind (the girl is)! (这个女孩)多么善良啊!
How + 副词(+ 主语 + 谓语)!	How well (she dances)! (她舞跳得)多好啊!
How + 主语 + 谓语!(此句型中 how 修饰动词，但动词不提前。)	How time flies! 时间过得真快呀!

【考题在线 9】—_____ sweet the flowers smell in spring!
—Yes, many tourists come to enjoy them every day. （随州）
A. What B. How
C. What a D. How a
点拨：本题用固定句式法。句意：春天的花闻起来多香啊！句中 sweet 为形容词，由感叹句句式“How + 形容词 + (主语 + 谓语)!”可知应选 How。


方法真题练：固定句式法

【考题在线 10】_____ wonderful *The Readers* is! Many people enjoy the TV program.
A. What B. How a C. How D. What a
点拨：句意：《朗读者》是多么精彩啊！许多人都喜欢看这个电视节目。How 后跟被强调的形容词或副词。这里强调的是形容词 wonderful，故用 How 引导。

考题在线答案
1. D 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. A
6. B 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 241 页)

一、用适当的情态动词填空
1. Mary said she _____ not sing Chinese songs.
2. I have six dogs. You _____ choose any of them.
3. Tom said that he _____ not put his heart into any work.
4. The boy _____ not be Jack. He has gone to China with his parents.
5. —Where is my card?
—I don't know. It _____ be in your bag.

二、选用方框中所给的词填空
what what a what an how

6. _____ cool he is!
7. _____ wonderful garden it is!
8. _____ tall buildings they are!
9. _____ sunny weather it is!
10. _____ interesting book it is!

三、单项选择
11. —_____ I try on those shoes in the window?
—_____. They are just on show. （呼和浩特）
A. Could; Yes, you can
B. Can; Sorry, you couldn't
C. Could; Sorry, you can't
D. Can; Yes, you could

12. Could you please speak a little louder? I _____ hear you very well. （临沂）
A. can't B. mustn't
C. shouldn't D. needn't

13. —_____ you sing an English song?
—Yes, I can. （北京）
A. Can B. May
C. Must D. Need

14. Tom _____ swim last year, but now he _____.
A. can't; can B. can't; may
C. couldn't; can D. couldn't; may

15. —May I watch TV, Dad?
—When your homework is finished, you _____. （安徽）
A. should B. can
C. must D. need

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

16. _____ good time we have had in the junior high school! （盐城）
A. What B. What a
C. How D. How a

17. —I watched the live（现场直播的）NBA game last night. How about you?
—Of course I did. _____ amazing game it was! （十堰）
A. What an B. How an
C. What D. How

18. —Did you watch the TV show *Keep Running* last night?
—Yes, I did. _____ exciting it was! （眉山）
A. How B. What an
C. What D. How an

19. —_____ beautiful shoes she is wearing!
—I think so. （百色）
A. What B. What a C. How D. How a

20. —Listen! Someone is playing the piano.
—Wow! _____ beautiful music! I like it very much.
A. What a B. How a C. What D. How

四、句型转换

21. I can speak English.（改为一般疑问句，并作否定回答）
_____ you _____ English?
_____, I _____.

22. The old man could ride a horse.（改为同义句）
The old man _____ _____ _____ ride a horse.

23. The food is very nice.（改为感叹句）
_____ _____ _____ it is!

24. This movie is very interesting.（改为感叹句）（黔南）
_____ _____ this movie is!

25. She is a lovely girl.（改为感叹句）（新疆）
_____ _____ lovely girl she is!

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Meeting parents

A1 Mr Wu is going to meet the parents of the Class 1, Grade 7 students this Friday afternoon. Listen to the report on Suzy and match the subjects with the information on the report card. Write the correct letters in the boxes.

课文听力A1 音频及材料

Sunshine Middle School
Suzy Class 1, Grade 7

☐ Chinese	A	Good this **term**[1], but she needs to read more and speak more.
☐ Maths	B	Suzy loves it and **works hard**[2] on the subject. She knows a lot about it.
☐ English	C	Good work. Suzy writes good articles.
☐ History	D	She does not **do her best**[3] this term.
☐ Geography	E	Good, but sometimes she is **careless**[4].

A2 Mr Wu is preparing notes about his students. Complete part of his notes about Suzy with the information in Part A1. Then listen to the description and complete the rest of them.

课文听力A2 音频及材料

综合技能

A 见父母

A1 吴老师本周五下午打算见七年级一班学生们的家长。听关于苏西的报告，把学科与报告卡上的信息搭配起来。把正确的字母写在方框里。

阳光中学
苏西 七年级一班

□汉语	A	这学期好，但她需要读得更多，说得更多。
□数学	B	苏西喜欢它且努力学习这门功课。她对它懂得很多。
□英语	C	做得好。苏西文章写得好。
□历史	D	这学期她没有尽她最大的努力。
□地理	E	好，但是有时她粗心。

A2 吴老师正在准备关于他的学生们的笔记。用A1部分有关的信息完成关于苏西的那部分笔记。然后听描述并完成剩下的部分。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Suzy
Study: good at (1) _____, Maths, (2) _____ and (3) _____
not so good at (4) _____
Music: (5) _____ of the Music Club
plays the piano at school (6) _____
Sports: practises (7) _____ every Monday and (8) _____
Others: nice and (9) _____

A3 Mr Wu is writing a report about Suzy. Help him complete the report. Use the information in Parts A1 and A2 on page 87 to help you.

Name: Suzy
Class: 1 Grade: 7
Class teacher: Wu Bing
Suzy is good at Maths. She does well in (1) _____, (2) _____ and (3) _____ too, but she needs to do better in (4) _____.
Suzy likes music, and she is a (5) _____ of the Music Club. She often plays the piano at (6) _____. She also likes sports, and she plays (7) _____ well. She practises hard on (8) _____ and (9) _____ after school. I think she will get into the school team next term.
Suzy is nice and (10) _____. All her teachers and her classmates like her very much.

B Speak up: Can you play the violin?

Sandy and Daniel are talking about what they can and cannot do. Work in pairs and talk about your abilities. Use the conversation below as a model.

Sandy: Daniel, can you play the violin?
Daniel: Yes, I can. I started to play the violin **at the age of**[5] six.
Sandy: Can you **show**[6] me how to play it?
Daniel: Sure. Listen to this.
Sandy: What nice music!
Daniel: Thanks. I know you can play the piano well.
Sandy: Yes. I love music. I started to play the piano when I was five.
Daniel: That's great!

课文朗读B

Study skills

Using a library

A library is a useful place to find information. Remember the following points when you look for information in a library:

- Books about different subjects are put in different sections.
- Books are organized according to topics. Books about similar topics are put in the same area.

苏西
学习:擅长(1) _____, 数学,(2) _____ 和(3) _____
不太擅长(4) _____
音乐:音乐俱乐部的(5) _____
在学校(6) _____弹钢琴
体育:每周一和(8) _____ 训练(7) _____
其他:好又(9) _____

A3 吴老师正在写一份关于苏西的报告。帮助他完成报告。用 87 页上的 A1 和 A2 部分的信息来帮助你。

姓名:苏西
班级:一班 年级: 七年级
班主任:吴兵
苏西擅长数学。她在(1) _____, (2) _____和(3) _____方面也学得好。但是她需要在(4) _____方面做得更好。
苏西喜欢音乐,她是音乐俱乐部的一名(5) _____。她经常在(6) _____弹钢琴。她也喜欢体育运动,她(7) _____打得好。她放学后努力训练(8) _____ 和(9) _____。我认为她下学期会进入校队。
苏西是优秀的并且(10) _____。她的所有老师和同班同学都非常喜欢她。

B 大声说:你能拉小提琴吗?

桑迪和丹尼尔正在谈论他们能做和不能做什么。结对练习并讨论你们的能力。用下面的谈话作为示例。

桑迪:丹尼尔,你能拉小提琴吗?
丹尼尔:是的,我能。我六岁时就开始拉小提琴了。
桑迪:你能给我展示一下如何拉吗?
丹尼尔:当然可以。听这个。
桑迪:多么美妙的音乐啊!
丹尼尔:谢谢。我知道你钢琴弹得好。
桑迪:是的。我喜欢音乐。我五岁时就开始弹钢琴了。
丹尼尔:太好了!

学习技能

使用图书馆

图书馆是查找信息的有用的地方。当你在图书馆查找信息时记住下面几点:

- 不同科目的书放在不同的位置。
- 书的分类是根据不同的主题。相似主题的书放在同一位置。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

· Novels are arranged in alphabetical order according to the authors' surnames.
· Librarians are there to help you. If you have any questions, ask them.

Look at the books below. Write the titles in the correct sections.

China 1911—2011
English-Chinese Dictionary
100 Greatest People in History
Ronnie Goes into Space
The Cat Goes Shopping
The Life of a Plant
How the Earth was Formed
A Guide to English Grammar

HISTORY	LANGUAGES
1. _____	3. _____
2. _____	4. _____

LITERATURE	SCIENCE
5. _____	7. _____
6. _____	8. _____

· 小说分类是根据作者的姓的首字母顺序。
· 那儿的图书管理员会帮助你。如果你有任何问题，就去问他们。

看下面的书。在正确的地方写上标题。

中国 1911—2011
英汉字典
历史上最伟大的 100 位人物
罗尼游太空
小猫购物
植物的生命
地球是如何形成的
英语语法指南

历史	语言
1. _____	3. _____
2. _____	4. _____

文学	科学
5. _____	7. _____
6. _____	8. _____

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 term /tɜːm/ *n.* 学期

eg: I'm your new teacher this **term**.
我是你们这学期的新老师。

考向：term 的常用搭配：
the spring term 春季学期
the winter term 冬季学期
the end of the term 期终

2 work hard 努力学习；辛勤工作

考向一：[难点] hard 既可作形容词"坚硬的；困难的"，也可作副词"努力地"。

eg: The ice is as hard as a rock.
冰像石头一样硬。（hard 作形容词）
The question is very hard.
这个问题很难。（hard 作形容词）
She tried hard, but failed.
她努力尝试过，但未能成功。（hard 作副词）

考向二：[易错点] [辨析] work hard, hard work 与 hard-working

work hard	意为"辛勤工作"，work 是动词，hard 是副词，为动词性短语。	We all **work hard**. 我们都努力工作。
hard work	意为"困难的工作"，hard 是形容词，work 是名词，为名词短语，在句中可作主语、宾语、表语。	This is really **hard work**. 这实在是个费劲的工作。
hard-working	意为"努力工作的，勤奋的"，整体是个形容词，在句中常作定语。	She is a **hard-working** student. 她是一个勤奋的学生。

3 do one's best 尽某人最大努力

考向：固定短语 do one's best 相当于 try one's best，后接动词不定式构成 do/try one's best to do sth.，意为"尽某人最大努力去做某事"。

eg: I will **do/try my best** to help you with your study. 我会尽我所能在学习上帮助你。

【考题在线 1】我们中国人正在尽最大的努力使"绿水青山"成为现实。（淮安改编）

We Chinese _____ _____ _____ _____ to make "Clear Waters and Green Mountains" come true.

4 careless /ˈkeələs/ *adj.* 粗心的

eg: I'm sorry. I am too **careless**.
对不起，我太粗心了。

考向一：careless 是由 care + 后缀-less 构成的形容词，其副词是 carelessly；其反义词是 careful，仔细的。

考向二：careless 的用法
careless 后可接介词 about，of，表示"对……不关心"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

eg: She is **careless of** her own health.
她不关心自己的健康。

【考题在线2】As we all know, a _____ (care) driver is always a danger to the public. (上海)

⑤at the age of 在……岁时

考向:[重点]at the age of 可与 when … be … [year(s) old]互相转化。

eg: She began to learn English at the age of six.
= She began to learn English when she was six years old. 她在六岁时开始学英语。

培养"中外文化差异"素养

在我国，人们对于年龄的敏感度(sensitivity)较英美等西方国家要低很多。我国有些地区的人们甚至还颇爱以"老"相称，例如"老张"、"老李"。描述某人是个"六七十岁的老人"，我们不会觉得有什么不妥。

在西方，人们认为年龄是一种秘密(secret)，尤其是成年妇女，不希望他人了解自己的真实年龄。谈到"老"时，也不仅仅只用 old，aged 等形容词。有人会用 She's not so young. He's not young any more. 等。

【素养行动】不随便询问别人的年龄，尊重别人(respect others)。

【素养行动结果】了解中外文化差异，和别人说话时得体礼貌(be polite)。

⑥ show /ʃəʊ/ *vt.* 教;演示;展示

eg: Can you **show** me how to use this camera?
你能向我示范一下怎么使用这台相机吗?

考向一:show 可以构成以下结构:show sth. 展示某物; show sb. + how + to do …教某人如何做……;show sb. sth. (= show sth. to sb.) 向某人展示某物;show sb. around 带领某人参观。

eg: My mother **showed me how to** make dumplings. 妈妈教我如何包饺子。
Show your ticket **to** me, please.
请把你的票给我看看。

【考题在线3】—I want a ticket to Shanghai this afternoon.
—OK. Will you please _____ me your ID card?
A. tell B. serve
C. send D. show

考向二:show 还可作名词,意为"展览;表演"。

eg: There is a fashion **show** this weekend.
这个周末有一场时装表演。

考题在线答案
1. are trying/doing our best
2. careless
3. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见242页)

一、根据句意及提示完成句子

1. It's the first day of the new _____(学期). We are happy to see each other again.
2. It was _____(粗心的) of my little brother to leave the door open when he went to the cinema last night. (宿迁)
3. This is an _____ (文章) by a girl from the USA.
4. The girl started to play the v_____ at the age of six.
5. Can you s_____ me how to make a pumpkin lantern?

二、单项选择

6. —Listen! Someone is playing _____ violin.
—Wow! _____ beautiful music! I like it very much. (眉山)
A. the; What B. an; How
C. a; What D. /; How

7. Try your best _____ with your parents and they will know you better.
A. to talk B. talk
C. talking D. talked

8. Kate is good at dancing. (六盘水)
A. do well in B. does well in
C. is interested in D. is good for

9. My brother hopes he can _____ the school basketball team.
A. get up B. get into
C. get to D. get on

10. He left school and began to work _____ twelve.
A. at the age of
B. at the beginning of
C. at the top of
D. at the bottom of

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

A recommendation letter

A Mr Wu wrote a letter to recommend Daniel for this year's Young Star Award.

课文朗读A

Dear Sir/ Madam[1],

I would like to **recommend** Daniel **for**[2] this year's Young Star Award.

Daniel is a clever boy. He learns things quickly. He can use computers well. When he is free, he often helps at the Helping Hands Club and does most of the computer work for the club.

Daniel always thinks carefully when he works. He plans everything well. He is a member of our Project Hope group and often **takes part in**[3] activities like collecting clothes and books for children in **need**[4].

Daniel is really kind. Last week, a five-year-old boy **lost**[5] his way and was crying in the street. Daniel saw him and took him to the police station. He stayed with the boy and played with him for two hours **before**[6] the boy's parents came.

All the members at the Helping Hands Club think that Daniel should get the award. **We look forward to hearing from you**[7] **soon.**[8]

Yours faithfully,

Wu Bing

Useful expressions

I would like to recommend ... for ....

He/She is a ... boy/ girl.

When he/ she is free, he/she always ....

He/ She always/often ... when he/ she ....

He/She is a member of ... and often helps ....

We all think that he/she should get ....

We look forward to hearing from you soon.

B **You also want to recommend a classmate for an award. First, read the notes below to learn how to write a recommendation letter.**

Recommendation letter

Introduction

· The first paragraph tells what the letter is about.

Main body

任务

一封推荐信

A 吴老师写一封推荐信，推荐丹尼尔获得今年的“新星奖”。

敬爱的先生/女士：

我想推荐丹尼尔获得今年的“新星奖”。

丹尼尔是一个聪明的男孩。他学东西很快。他能熟练地使用电脑。当他空闲时，他经常在助人为乐俱乐部帮忙，为俱乐部做大部分的电脑工作。

当丹尼尔在工作时，他总是考虑仔细。他每件事都计划得很好。他是我们希望工程小组的一名成员，并经常参加为有需要的孩子募集衣服和书之类的活动。

丹尼尔真的很善良。上周，一个五岁的男孩迷路在街上哭。丹尼尔看见他，把他带到警察局。在男孩的父母到来之前，他和那个男孩呆在一起，并陪他玩了两个小时。

所有助人为乐俱乐部的成员们都认为丹尼尔应该获得这个奖。我们期盼尽快收到您的来信。

您忠实的，

吴兵

有用的表达

我想推荐……获……

他/她是一个……男孩/女孩。

当他/她空闲时，他/她总是……

他/她总是/经常……当他/她……

他/她是……的一名成员，经常帮助……

我们所有人都认为他/她应该得到……

我们期盼尽快收到您的来信。

B 你也想推荐你的一位同班同学获奖。首先，读下面的笔记，学习如何写一封推荐信。

推荐信

介绍

· 第一段讲信是关于什么内容的。

主体部分

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

· The main body of the letter includes different points in this order.

Paragraph 2: abilities of your classmate

Paragraph 3: personality of your classmate

Paragraph 4: what your classmate did

Conclusion

· The last paragraph states again who you would like to recommend.

C Think of a classmate to recommend for an award. Write down some notes. Then write a letter to recommend him or her for the award. Use Mr Wu's letter as a model.

Self-assessment

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about the story of the brave young man.		
2 use the new words to talk about an escape from danger.		
3 use **can/could/may** to talk about ability and permission. use **What** and **How** to express strong feelings.		
4 use the library to find more information.		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

· 信的主体部分包括以下顺序的不同要点。

第二段:你同班同学的能力

第三段:你同班同学的个性

第四段:你同班同学做了什么

总结

· 最后一段再次陈述你想推荐谁。

C 考虑推荐一名同班同学去获奖。写下一些笔记。然后写一封信推荐他或她获得这个奖。用吴老师的信作为示例。

自我评估

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论那个勇敢的年轻人的故事。		
2 用新单词谈论从危险中逃生。		
3 用 can, could, may 来谈论能力和许可。用 What 和 How 来表达强烈的感情。		
4 用图书馆来查找更多的信息。		

结果:好极了! 好! 不错!

我需要花更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶Dear Sir/Madam 亲爱的先生/女士

考向一:sir 与 madam 是一组表示尊称的对称词,madam 用于对妇女(已婚或未婚)的尊称,意为"夫人,女士,小姐"等;sir 用于对男性的尊称,意为"先生"。

eg: Can I help you, **madam(sir)**?

夫人(先生),你要买什么?

考向二: Mrs 和 madam 都用来称呼已婚女子,madam还可称呼未婚女子。

Mr 和 sir 都用来称呼男子,意为"先生",是对男子的尊称。sir 一般单独使用,不与人的姓连用,而 Mr 必须和人的姓连用。

eg: Good morning, **sir/madam**!

先生(夫人),早上好!

Good morning, **Mr/Mrs Wang**!

王先生(夫人),早上好!

❷recommend sb. for ... 推荐某人为……

eg: We want to **recommend** Li Hong **for** the post.

我们想推荐李红担任这个职位。

考向一:在 recommend sb. for ...的固定结构中,recommend 为及物动词,意为"推荐"。常用结构: recommend sth. 推荐某物; recommend sb. as ...推荐某人成为……。

考向二:固定结构 recommend sb. for ...有时可与 recommend sb. as ...互换。

eg: The children **recommended** Mr White **for/as** the cook. 孩子们推荐怀特先生当厨师。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

③take part in 参加

eg：He often **takes part in** different activities.
他经常参加不同的活动。

考向：[辨析] take part in 与 join

take part in	指参加某一活动并在其中起着积极作用。take an active part in 表示“积极参加”。	Did you **take part in** the sports meeting? 你参加运动会了吗？
join	侧重指加入党派、团体、组织、人群等，并成为其中一员，相当于 become a member of。	He **joined** the tennis club. 他加入了网球俱乐部。

④need /niːd/ *n.*（食物、钱等的）短缺，缺乏

eg：Lily is helpful and she always helps people in **need**.
莉莉乐于助人，她总是帮助贫困的人。

考向：need 用作名词时，常作“需要，必要”讲。常用短语：in（great）need of（特别）需要；常用句型：There's no need to do sth. 意思是“没必要做某事。”

eg：The rescue team is in great **need** of medicine.
救援小组非常需要药品。
There's no **need** to walk on.
没必要再走下去了。

⑤lose /luːz/ *vt.* 迷失，丢失

eg：She **lost** her husband in the crowd.
她在人群中与丈夫走散了。

考向一：动词 lose 的过去式为 lost，而 lost 也是其形容词，意为“丢失的；迷失的”。

eg：I can't find the **lost** book.
我找不到丢失的书。

考向二：英语中表示“迷路”可以用：lose one's way = get lost。

eg：The tourists **lost their way/got lost** in the big city yesterday.
昨天游客们在这个大城市里迷路了。

【考题在线】 Take a map with you, or you will _____（迷路）in the city.

⑥before/ bɪˈfɔː(r)/ *conj.* 到……为止；在……之前

eg：It will be eight years **before** we meet.
八年以后我们才能相见。

考向：[辨析] before 与 ago

ago	副词，不能用作介词或连词；表示从说话时刻算起的若干时间以前，用于一段时间之后，常用于一般过去时。	I bought a new bike three days **ago**. 我三天前买了一辆新自行车。
be-fore	副词，可单独使用：用于一般过去时或现在完成时，表示不明确的以前。	I have seen the film **before**. 我以前看过这部电影。
	还可作介词，后接时间点。	You must finish your homework **before** five o'clock. 五点之前你必须完成作业。
	也可作连词，引导时间状语从句。	Lucy left a message for you **before** she left. 露西在离开之前给你留了言。

⑦hear from sb. 收到某人的来信

eg：I often **hear from** my friends.
我经常收到朋友们的来信。

考向：[重点] 固定短语 hear from sb. 的同义短语为 get/receive/have a letter from sb.。

eg：Do you often hear from your parents? = Do you often get/receive/have letters from your parents?
你经常收到你父母的来信吗？

⑧抒发情怀法：此句是信件的结束语，在私人信件中我们常用此结束语来表示期盼对方的回信。我们在写信的时候，要注意在信件结束时写上结束语表示信件的结束，同时表明希望能尽快收到对方的回信。

考题在线答案

lose your way/get lost/be lost

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

“三步法”写推荐信

一:点明推荐意向
二:说明推荐理由
三:表达愿望

易错点提示

1. 注意“can + 动词原形”的结构。can 没有人称和数的变化。
2. 注意由 can 构成的疑问句或否定句的句子结构。
3. 注意其他人称和数的变化。

参考词汇和句式

单词	recommend, clever, carefully, helpful, help, kind
短语	recommend … for …, plan … well, be good at, take care of, be able to, make friends with, get on well with
句式	I'd like to recommend …for … He can … well. I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

典例

随着外国游客日益增多,未来科技馆决定选拔部分中学生在假期为他们提供英语讲解服务。科技馆需要应征者提交英文自荐信。假如你叫袁新,你有能力并希望成为一名讲解员,请按要求写一封自荐信。 (重庆 A)

要求:

1. 必须写出三点及以上的自荐理由;
2. 词数:100 左右,开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考要点:

1. 擅长英语(英语水平,沟通能力……);
2. 热爱科学(科学知识,创新能力……);
3. ……

Dear sir,

I'm a junior student from Chongqing Xinhua School. I'd like to become one of your guides.

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

I would be most thankful if you could give me the chance.

Thank you!

Yours,
Yuan Xin

【范文欣赏】

Dear sir,

I'm a junior student from Chongqing Xinhua School. I'd like to become one of your guides.

I like English very much. I spend a lot of my free time listening to English news and watching English movies, so I'm good at English and I can speak English well.

I am interested in science. My favorite books are on science. That is to say, it's not difficult for me to talk with people about science.

Besides, I can make friends with different people, no matter where they come from. I'm sure that I will get along well with them.

I would be most thankful if you could give me the chance.

Thank you!

Yours,
Yuan Xin

【点评】

作者运用“三步法”展开自荐。第一步点明自荐意向——I'd like to become one of your guides;第二步说明自荐理由——语言能力:be good at English, can speak English well;科学方面:not difficult to talk with people about science;沟通能力:can make friends with different people;第三步表达愿望。

添彩点:

短语 spend time doing sth., be good at, be interested in, make friends with, get along well with 以及高级句式 That is to say, it's not difficult for me to talk with people about science. 的恰当运用,使文章好词好句缤纷呈现,优美自然。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见242页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. —May I ask a question, _____(夫人)?
—Yes, of course.
2. It rained heavily in the western _____(部分) of the city last night.
3. We all think Sandy should get an _____ (奖).
4. Remember to turn off the lights _____ (在……之前) you leave the room.
5. I really look forward to _____ (参观) Beijing again.

二、根据句意从方框中选择合适的短语，并用其适当形式填空

do one's best	lose one's way	recommend ... for ...	hear from	in need

6. Lei Feng was always ready to help people _____.
7. The doctors _____ to save the old man, but they failed.
8. I would like to _____ Jim _____ this term's Best Student Award.
9. I _____ my uncle yesterday. He told me he would visit us on my birthday.
10. If you _____, you can ask the police for help.

三、单项选择

11. —Mum, I want to buy an iPhone 7 for a change.
—Well, I think there is no _____. It's almost the same as an iPhone 6s.
A. reason　　B. need
C. answer　　D. way
12. —Have you heard about Zhangjiajie Glass Footbridge?
—Of course, it's built over a _____ canyon in the Zhangjiajie National Forest Park.
(连云港)
A. 300-meter-deep　　B. 300-meters-deep
C. 300 meter deep　　D. 300-meters deep
13. He is a _____ student and plans everything _____.
A. well; well　　B. good; good
C. well; good　　D. good; well
14. —Believe it or not, I _____ Jay Chou yesterday.
—Really? What did he say in his letter?
A. thought of
B. heard of
C. dreamed about
D. heard from
15. He _____ the club and _____ its activities.
A. took part in; joined
B. joined; took part in
C. joined; joined
D. joined in; joined

四、根据首字母提示完成短文

Dear Jim,

I read a_____[16] article about a brave young man just now, and I want to share it w_____[17] you now.

The man is 20 y_____[18] old and called Lin Tao. He helped his n_____[19] out of a fire. On May 10th, he was at home a_____[20]. Suddenly he heard someone s_____[21] "Fire, Fire! Help!" Then he ran outside and saw a lot of s_____[22] from next door. He went in and found Mrs Sun in the kitchen. She couldn't get out because her left leg was badly h_____[23]. He t_____[24] his best to s_____[25] her. There was l_____[26] of smoke and the fire was very h_____[27]. The fire b_____[28] Lin Tao's neck, arms and face. He was in h_____[29] for two weeks. Many people visited him and g_____[30] him flowers and p_____[31]. Lin Tao said that he was h_____[32] to help Mrs Sun, although fire could be very d_____[33]. And he thought that it was i_____[34] to be c_____[35] with fire.

I think we should learn from him to help others and know some knowledge about fire safety.

Yours,
Daniel

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 Pets

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①开门见山法(175 页)
写作方法	①“三方面法”描写动物(188 页)
解题方法	1寻找题眼法(232,242 页)　2语法判断法(175,233,242,243 页) 3词语应用法(232,243 页)　4联系上下文法(233 页) 5词义辨析法(180,181,243 页)　6交际法(233 页) 7短语辨析法(175,176,177,185,232,242 页)　8细节理解法(233 页)

学习目标梳理

话题	谈论不同的宠物和怎样照顾宠物		
必考点	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	pet *n.* 宠物 mouse *n.* 老鼠,耗子 knee *n.* 膝,膝盖;坐下时大腿朝上的面 hold *vt.* 握住,拿 feed *vt.* 喂,喂养 teach *vt.* 教	bring sb. sth. = bring sth. to sb. 给某人拿某物;　watch sb. do sth. 观看某人做某事;swim around 游来游去; teach sb. to do sth. 教某人做某事;　play with 与……玩耍;feed sb. sth. 喂某人某物;hold sth. in one's hand 把某物拿在手中
	Period 2	poem *n.* 诗歌　wide *adv.* 充分地 hide *vi.* & *vt.* 藏,隐藏　build *vt.* 建造,建筑 camp *n.* 营地;阵营;　care *n.* 照料,照顾 fight *vi.* & *vt.* 打仗(架);与……打仗(架) till *prep.* 到……时,直到……为止 end *n.* 终止;末尾,终点　trouble *n.* 麻烦 touch *n.* 触摸,碰　stick *n.* 树枝,枝条;棍,棒	run after 追逐;　look after 照顾;　till the end 直到最后;　look around for 四处寻找;　take care of 照顾;　be afraid of 害怕; with eyes open wide 把眼睛睁得很大;　build... out of... 用……建成……
	Period 3	anywhere *adv.* 任何地方　repeat *vt.* & *vi.* 重复 agree *vi.* & *vt.* 同意;应允 keep *vt.* 养,饲养	all the time 一直,总是; get tired 疲倦
	Period 4	weigh *linking v.* 重;有……重 talk *n.* 讲座;演讲 noise *n.* 声音,响声;噪音	pick up 捡起,拾起;　in the sun 在阳光下;　grow up 成长;长大; once a day 一天一次;　make some noise 制造噪音;　weigh up to ... 重达……
	Period 5	basket *n.* 篮子　noisy *adj.* 吵闹的,嘈杂的	sleep in a basket 睡在篮子里 play with a ball 玩球

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

句型	1. Bring me something to eat.	给我拿点吃的来。
	2. I love …because …	我喜欢……因为……
	3. …is the cleverest animal of all.	……是所有动物中最聪明的。
	4. My favourite pet is …	我最喜欢的宠物是……
	5. She has …	她有……
	6. She weighs about …	她大约重……
	7. She is very friendly and quiet.	她非常友好且安静。
	8. She never worries because …	她从不烦恼因为……
语法	形容词和不定代词	

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

1 It's 12:30, Hobo. **Bring me something**[1] **to eat**[2].
How rude you are!
2 Why?
You should say "please".
3 Fine. Please bring me something to eat.
That's it.[3]
4 Oh well, I want a new pet!

课文朗读 Comic strip

All about pets

It is Pets Week at Sunshine Middle School. The Class 1, Grade 7 students are learning about different pets.

Task

Prepare a presentation on your favourite pet.

Welcome to the unit

Different pets

A **The students drew some pictures of their pets. Look at the parts of the pictures and write the names of the animals under them.**

cat dog goldfish mouse parrot rabbit

TIP

The plural of goldfish is goldfish. The plural of mouse is mice.

B **The students are talking about why they like their pets. Match the two parts to make correct sentences. Write the correct letters in the blanks.**

1 Daniel: I love my parrot because _____
2 Kitty: I like my rabbit because _____

连环漫画

1 12点半了，霍波。 给我拿点吃的来。
你多么无礼啊！
2 为什么？
你应该说"请"。
3 好。 请给我拿点吃的来。
就是这样。
4 哦好吧，我想要一只新的宠物！

关于宠物的一切

现在是阳光中学的宠物周。 七年级一班的学生正在了解不同的宠物。

任务

准备一份有关你最喜欢的宠物的介绍。

单元导入

不同的宠物

A 学生们画了一些他们宠物的图片。 看图片的一部分并在它们的下面写出动物的名称。

猫 狗 金鱼 老鼠 鹦鹉 兔子

提示

goldfish 的复数形式是 goldfish。mouse 的复数形式是 mice。

B 学生们正在讨论他们为什么喜欢他们的宠物。 把这两个部分匹配成正确的句子。 把正确的字母写在空白处。

1 丹尼尔：我喜欢我的鹦鹉因为_____
2 基蒂：我喜欢我的兔子因为_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 Peter: I like goldfish because _____
4 Sandy: I like my mouse best because _____
5 Millie: I love my dog because _____
6 Amy: I like my cat because _____
a I like watching them swim around.
b she loves to sleep on my knees.
c it's very small and soft and I can **hold**[4] it in my hand.
d I can **feed**[5] her carrots and I like her long ears.
e I can play with him in the park.
f he can sing, and I want to **teach him to speak**[6].

TIP
When we know the gender of a pet, we often use he or she to refer to the pet. Otherwise, we can use it.

3 彼得：我喜欢金鱼因为_____
4 桑迪：我最喜欢我的老鼠因为_____
5 米莉：我喜欢我的狗因为_____
6 埃米：我喜欢我的猫因为_____
a 我喜欢看它们游来游去。
b 她喜欢在我的膝盖上睡觉。
c 它非常小并且柔软，我可以把它拿在我的手里。
d 我可以喂她胡萝卜，并且我喜欢她的长耳朵。
e 我可以和他在公园里玩。
f 他会唱歌，并且我想教他讲话。

提示
当我们知道一个宠物的性别时，我们经常用他或她指代宠物。否则，我们可以用它。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶bring sb. sth. 给某人拿某物，相当于 bring sth. to sb.。

eg: Bring me my food. = Bring my food to me.
把我的食物给我。

考向：[易错点][辨析] bring 与 take

bring	意思是“带来”，是把东西带到说话人的方向或所在地。	Why don't you **bring** him along? 你为什么不带他一块儿来呢？
take	意思是“带走”，是把东西从说话人的所在地带到其他的地方。	Please **take** these exercise books to the teacher's office. 请把这些练习册送到教师办公室去。

拓展 类似于 bring 可接双宾语的动词还有 show, give, take, pass 等。

【考题在线 1】 —I'm sorry I left my exercise book at home this morning.
—It doesn't matter. Don't forget _____ it here this afternoon. （滨州改编）
A. to take　　B. bring
C. to bring　　D. take
点拨：考查动词辨析。句意：——对不起，今天早上我把练习本落在家里了。——没关系。今天下午不要忘了带过来。方向指向说话人，用 bring 符合句意。

❷something to eat 吃的东西

考向：to eat 为动词不定式，修饰不定代词 something。动词不定式作定语修饰名词或代词时，常位于所修饰词之后。

eg: Please bring me **something to drink**.
请给我拿些喝的东西。

❸That's it. 就是这样。

考向一：That's it. 是一句常用口语，表示某人正确或做得对，意为“行了。/就是这样。/这就对了。”

eg: **That's it**. Let's tell him the news.
这就对了。咱们告诉他这个消息。

考向二：表示已完成，意为“好了。/就这样吧。”

eg: You can have a cake and **that's it**.
你可以吃一块蛋糕，别的就没有了。

❹hold /həʊld/ *v.* 拿，握住；抓住

eg: The boy is **holding** a big doll in his arms.
这个男孩正抱着一个大的玩具娃娃。

考向：hold 的常用搭配：hold up 举起，阻碍，耽搁；hold on 坚持住，(电话用语)别挂断

【考题在线 2】 亲爱的朋友们，让我们坚持追求梦想，总有一天我们可能会梦想成真。
My dear friends, let's _____ _____ to our dreams, and they may just come true some day.

拓展 hold 其过去式和过去分词均为 held。hold 还有“容纳”之意。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg: The room can only **hold** twenty people.
这个房间只能容纳二十个人。

❺feed /fi:d/ *vt.* 喂，喂养

eg: What do you **feed** your dog?
你用什么喂你的狗？

考向：及物动词 feed 相当于 give food to，其过去式为 fed，常见结构 feed sb./sth. sth. = feed sth. to sb./sth. 。

eg: I can **feed** my rabbit carrots. = I can **feed** carrots **to** my rabbit.
我可以喂我的兔子胡萝卜。

拓展 常用短语：feed on 意为“以……为食”。

eg: Butterflies **feed on** the flowers of garden plants.
蝴蝶以园林中草木的花为食。

❻teach sb. to do sth. 教某人做某事

考向：teach 的过去式为 taught，后面常接双宾语，即：teach sb. sth. = teach sth. to sb. ，表示“教某人某事”。

eg: He teaches me English. = He teaches English to me.
他教我英语。

【考题在线 3】 —Sam, who teaches _____ Chinese?
—Mrs White. She has lived in China for years. _____ Chinese is very good. （玉林）

A. you; Her　　B. your; Hers
C. you; Him　　D. your; She

点拨：teach 后接人称代词宾格，排除 B、D 项；第二个空后为名词，应用形容词性物主代词修饰，故排除 C 项。

考题在线答案
1. C　2. hold on　3. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见 242 页）

一、用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空

well, knee, mouse, pet, goldfish

1. He fell off the tree and hurt his left _____.
2. Of all my subjects, I like English _____.
3. There are lots of _____ in this pool. They look very beautiful.
4. It's amazing that my cat likes to play with Tom's two _____.
5. Many people like to have _____ because they feel lonely.

二、单项选择

6. —I'm sorry, Miss Green. I left my math book at home.
—It doesn't matter. Please remember _____ it here tomorrow. （眉山）
A. taking　　B. to take
C. bringing　　D. to bring

7. I spend 10 minutes watching the goldfish swim _____ in the tank.
A. to　　B. from
C. around　　D. at

8. —It's _____ to laugh at others when they are in trouble.
—I'm sorry. I won't do that again.
A. kind　　B. polite
C. rude　　D. good

9. The old man likes _____ the children _____ games.
A. watch; play
B. watching; play
C. watch; playing
D. watching; to play

10. Who teaches the children _____? Do you know? 【导学号：1037419】
A. to skate
B. skate
C. skates
D. to skating

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 我想吃点东西。
I'd like to have _____ _____ _____.

12. 李老师叫我帮他拿些水。
Mr Li asked me _____ _____ _____ some water.

13. 就是这样子，就是那么简单。
_____ _____. It is really as easy as that.

14. 汤姆经常把他的小白鼠拿在手里。
Tom often _____ his little white mouse _____ _____ _____.

15. 男孩正在拿香蕉喂猴子。
The boy is _____ a banana _____ the monkey.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

课文朗读A

A Poems about pets

It is Pets Week at Sunshine Middle School. Millie took a poetry book about animals to school. Here are her favourite poems.

My dog

My dog is the cleverest animal of all. ❶
He doesn't just run after a ball.
With eyes open **wide**❷,
He **hunts**❸ when I hide.
He does wonderful tricks,
Builds me camps out of sticks.
He'd never bark or bite,
And he doesn't like to **fight**❹.
My dog is my best friend,
And I'll **look after**❺ him **till**❻ the **end**❼.

My goldfish

My goldfish is a wonderful pet.
She doesn't need a bed.
She isn't any **trouble**❽.
She doesn't bark.
She doesn't miaow.
Just bubbles,
Bubbles,
Bubbles.
My goldfish is a wonderful pet.
She doesn't need a bed.
She isn't any trouble.
We don't have to feed her much.
She doesn't need a gentle **touch**❾.
Just bubbles,
Bubbles,
Bubbles.

B What are the pets like?

B1 Some of the words in the poems rhyme. Help Millie complete the sentences.

1 *All* rhymes with ball.
2 *Hide* rhymes with _____.
3 *Sticks* rhymes with _____.
4 *Bite* rhymes with _____.
5 *Friend* rhymes with _____.

阅读

A 关于宠物的诗

现在是阳光中学的宠物周。米莉带了一本关于动物的诗集到学校。这是她最喜欢的诗。

我的狗

我的狗是所有动物中最聪明的。
他不仅仅追赶一个球。
当我躲藏时，
他睁大眼睛寻找。
他耍精彩的把戏，
他用树枝为我搭帐篷。
他从不吠叫也不咬人，
并且他不喜欢打架。
我的狗是我最好的朋友，
我将永远照顾他。

我的金鱼

我的金鱼是一个奇妙的宠物。
她不需要床。
她一点也不麻烦。
她不吠叫。
她不喵喵叫。
只是吐泡泡。
吐泡泡，
吐泡泡。
我的金鱼是一个奇妙的宠物。
她不需要床。
她一点也不麻烦。
我们不必喂她太多(的食物)。
她不需要温柔的抚摸。
只是吐泡泡，
吐泡泡，
吐泡泡。

B 宠物长得什么样?

B1 诗歌中的一些单词押韵。帮助米莉完成下列句子。

1 all 与 ball 押韵。
2 hide 与_____押韵。
3 sticks 与_____押韵。
4 bite 与_____押韵。
5 friend 与_____押韵。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6 *Bed* rhymes with _____.
7 *Bubble* rhymes with _____.
8 *Much* rhymes with _____.

TIP
Words rhyme if the last syllables make the same or similar sound.

B2 Simon introduces the poem "My dog" to his cousin Annie. He wants to make sure that Annie understands it. Match the lines from the poem with their meanings. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1 "He doesn't just run after a ball." (line 3) _____
a He does amazing things.
2 "He hunts when I hide." (line 5) _____
b He can run after a ball and do other things.
3 "He does wonderful tricks," (line 6) _____
c He looks around for me.
4 "He'd never bark or bite," (line 8) _____
d And I'll always take **care**[10] of him.
5 "And I'll look after him till the end." (line 11) _____
e He's friendly.

B3 Peter's favourite pet is a goldfish. He is telling Amy why he likes his goldfish. Read the poem about goldfish on page 94 again and help him complete his sentences.

A goldfish isn't any (1) trouble.
It doesn't (2) _____.
It doesn't (3) _____.
We don't need to (4) _____ it much.
It doesn't need a gentle (5) _____.
Just bubbles, bubbles, bubbles.

B4 Amy and Millie are writing about their pets for the Young Pet Owners Club website. Help them complete the sentences below with the words in the box.

barks	bite	hides	miaows
runs	tricks	trouble	

My cat is very friendly. She is a happy cat. She (1) _____ when she is hungry. She is very quiet and does not do any (2) _____. Sometimes she (3) _____ under the chair. She does not make any (4) _____. My dog likes to play in the park. He often (5) _____ after cats and birds. Sometimes he (6) _____ when someone comes to visit us. Some people are afraid of him. They think he will (7) _____ them.

6 bed 与_____押韵。
7 bubble 与_____押韵。
8 much 与_____押韵。

提示
如果单词最后的音节发音相同或相似，这些单词就押韵。

B2 西蒙把"我的狗"这首诗介绍给他的堂妹安妮。他想确保安妮能够理解它。将诗行与它们的意思搭配起来。在空白处写出正确的字母。

1 "他不仅仅追赶一个球。"（第3行）_____
a 他做令人惊奇的事情。
2 "当我藏起来时他寻找。"（第5行）_____
b 他会追逐球和做其他的事情。
3 "他玩精彩的把戏，"（第6行）_____
c 他四处找我。
4 "他从不吠叫，从不咬人，"（第8行）_____
d 并且我会一直照顾他。
5 "我会照顾他一直到老。"（第11行）_____
e 他是友好的。

B3 彼得最喜欢的宠物是金鱼。他正在告诉埃米他为什么喜欢他的金鱼。再读一遍94页那首关于金鱼的诗歌，帮助他完成他的句子。

金鱼一点儿也不(1)麻烦。
它不(2)_____。
它不(3)_____。
我们不需要(4)_____它太多。
它不需要温柔的(5)_____。
只是吐泡泡，吐泡泡，吐泡泡。

B4 埃米和米莉正在为青年宠物所有者俱乐部网站写有关她们的宠物的文章。帮助她们用下面方框里的单词完成下列句子。

吠叫	咬	藏	喵喵叫
跑	诡计	麻烦	

我的猫很友好。她是一只快乐的猫。当她饿时她(1)_____。她很安静，不做任何(2)_____。有时她(3)_____在椅子下。她不发出任何(4)_____。

我的狗喜欢在公园里玩。他经常(5)_____猫和鸟。有时他(6)_____当有人来拜访我们时。一些人害怕他。他们认为他会(7)_____他们。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶开门见山法：此句是整首诗歌的第一句，是这篇诗歌的中心句，起到总领全诗的作用，以下各个方面内容都是围绕此句展开的。我们在写诗歌类文章的时候，要注意可先总写，然后分别进行举例说明。

the cleverest... of all 所有……中最聪明的

eg：I think he is the cleverest boy of all.
我认为他是所有男孩里最聪明的。

考向：cleverest 是形容词最高级形式，前面必须要有定冠词 the。形容词最高级常与介词 in，of 或 among 连用，表示比较范围。

eg：Simon is the tallest among all the boys.
西蒙是所有男孩中最高的。

【考题在线 1】 Beijing is one of _____ biggest cities in China. （淮安）
A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

点拨：本题用**语法判断法**。形容词最高级前用定冠词 the。

特色主方法

使用定冠词口诀

沙漠、河流与群山，列岛、海峡与海湾，
阶级、党派、国家名，组织团体和机关，
方位、朝代、独一词，会议、文件及报刊，
乐器、建筑、海洋群，定冠词来不能删。

❷wide / waɪd / *adv.* 充分地

eg：Open your mouth **wide**. 把你的嘴张大。

考向一：wide 作形容词时，意为“宽的；宽阔的；……宽的；宽度为……的”。

eg：Our classroom is 10 metres long and 8 metres **wide**. 我们的教室 10 米长，8 米宽。

考向二：wide 与 widely 作副词时的区别

wide	表示实际意义上的“宽”，意为“宽(地)”。	The window was **wide** open. 那窗户大开着。
widely	表示比喻意义上的“宽”，意为“广泛地；普遍地”。	English is **widely** used in the world. 英语在世界上被广泛应用。

【考题在线 2】 Tea plants are _____ (广泛地) grown in the south of China now. （莱芜）

❸hunt /hʌnt/ *v.* 寻找，搜寻

考向一：hunt 作不及物动词时常和介词 for 连用，之后再加宾语。

eg：My friend, Jack, is **hunting for** his dog.
我的朋友杰克正在找他的狗。

考向二：hunt 还意为“猎取；打猎”，既可以作及物动词，也可作不及物动词。

eg：Mr Green often **hunts** in the forest.
格林先生经常在森林里打猎。

拓展 hunt 的派生词有：hunter(名词)“猎人”；hunting(名词)“打猎”。

❹fight /faɪt/ *v.* 打仗(架)；与……打仗(架)

考向：fight 的过去式为 fought。其固定短语有：fight with sb. “与某人打架”；fight for sth. “为某事而斗争”。

eg：Tom often **fights with** Jim.
汤姆经常与吉姆打架。

拓展 fight 用作名词，意为“打架，争吵”。

eg：I had a **fight** with my friend over money yesterday.
昨天我和我的朋友为钱吵了一架。

❺look after 照看，照料

考向：look after 的同义短语为 take care of。look after ...well 相当于 take good care of ...。

拓展 look 的常用短语有：
look at 看
look for 寻找
look like 看起来像
look out 当心
look up 抬头看；查阅
look over 检查

【考题在线 3】 The girl has to _____ her grandma because her parents are working in another city. （淮安）
A. look at
B. look into
C. look through
D. look after

点拨：本题用**短语辨析法**。句意：这个女孩必须照顾她的奶奶，因为她的父母在另一个城市工作。look at 看；look into 调查；look through 浏览。根据句意，用 look after 表示“照顾”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6 till/tɪl/ *prep.* 到……时，直到……为止

eg：I will wait **till** seven o'clock.
我会一直等到7点。

考向一：till 在此作介词，还可作连词，在肯定句中，意为“到……时，直到……为止”，与 until 同义。二者可以互换，until 比 till 稍正式。

eg：She lived in Tokyo **till/until** she died.
她在东京一直生活到去世。

考向二：till 与 until 用在否定句中，均表示“直到……才”。

eg：He didn't appear **till/until** the concert had begun. 直到音乐会开始他才露面。

7 end /end/ *n.* 终止；末尾，终点

eg：The meeting has come to an **end**.
会议已经结束了。

考向：[辨析] at the end of，by the end of 和 in the end

at the end of	在……尽头（末端）。后面可接时间或地点名词，通常与一般过去时或一般将来时连用。	**At the end of** this month, we'll go for a trip. 这个月底我们将去旅行。
by the end of	到……为止。多用于完成时，若后面接的是将来时间，句子要用将来时态。	I will have learned three thousand English words **by the end of** this month. 到这个月底我将学会三千个英语单词。
in the end	最后；终于。其后不能接 of 短语，相当于 at last 或 finally。	He didn't pass the exam **in the end**. 最后他没通过考试。

8 trouble /ˈtrʌbl/ *n.* 麻烦

eg：I have some **trouble** in climbing up the hill.
爬上那座小山我有一些困难。
What is the trouble with you? 你怎么了？

考向：What's the trouble with you? = What's wrong with you? = What's the matter with you?
你怎么了？

拓展 trouble 的常用短语：
be in trouble“处于困境中”
get into trouble“陷入困境”
out of trouble“摆脱困境”
make trouble“闹事，捣乱”
have some trouble in doing sth.“做某事有困难”

【考题在线4】 Timmy is so helpful that we all like to ask him for help when we are in t_____.

积极心态，处理问题

人们在纷繁的社会中会遇到各种各样的问题和烦恼，得到行之有效的处理问题的方法是成功的保证。面对苦恼时，我们应提醒自己保持理性（keep a sense of rationality），自我鼓励（encourage yourself），用哲理或名言安慰（comfort）自己，还可以有意识地转移（transfer）话题，使情绪得到缓解（relief）。

【素养行动】面对困难时，我们要以积极乐观的心态处理各种问题，摆脱困扰。

【素养行动结果】学会积极应对困难，找到解决问题的方法。

9 touch /tʌtʃ/ *n.* & *v.* 触摸，碰

eg：Don't **touch** it. It's dangerous. 别碰它，危险。
You can give it a gentle **touch**.
你可以给它一个温柔的抚摸。

考向：常用搭配：keep/stay in touch 保持联系；lose touch 失去联系。

eg：We still **keep in touch** though we live in different countries now.
尽管现在我们生活在不同的国家，我们仍然保持联系。

【考题在线5】 Today, WeChat becomes very popular, and quite a lot of people like to use it to _____ each other. （恩施改编）

A. keep in touch with　　B. catch up with
C. keep up with　　D. come up with

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：当今，微信变得很受欢迎，很多人喜欢用它来保持联系。keep in touch with 和……保持联系；catch up with 赶上；keep up with 跟上；come up with 想出。由句意可知选 keep in touch with。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑩**care / keə(r) / *n*.** 照料;谨慎

eg: You should take more **care** of your work.
你对你的工作应该更谨慎些。

考向一: care 还可作不及物动词,意为"介意,在乎"。

eg: Whatever you say, I don't **care**.
无论你说什么,我都不在乎。

考向二: care 的固定短语有:care for 爱好;喜欢;care about 在意;关心;take care of 照顾。

【考题在线 6】 In our lives, our parents give us love and warmth. In return, we should understand and _____ them. (山西改编)

A. talk about
B. care about
C. worry about
D. hear about

点拨:本题用短语辨析法。句意:在我们的生活中,我们的父母给予我们爱与温暖。作为回报,我们应该理解并关心他们。talk about 谈论;care about 关心;worry about 担心;hear about 听说,根据句意可知选 care about。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. widely 3. D 4. trouble 5. A 6. B

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见242页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. My sister often _____ (躲藏) herself behind the door when I go home.
2. With the help of the map, we had no _____ (麻烦) in finding Andy's home.
3. I heard a _____ (温柔的) voice when I passed the room.
4. I am going to Beijing at the e_____ of this month. Maybe on May 30th.
5. This coat looks very nice. Can I _____ (触摸) it?

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

6. The police are _____ (hunt) for the lost boy in the whole town.
7. My dog never _____ (fight) with my cat. They are good friends.
8. The workers _____ (build) a new bridge over the river last year.
9. I like reading Chinese _____ (诗歌) very much in my free time.
10. He _____ (hide) under the desk, so I couldn't find him.

三、单项选择

11. —Our dog is really _____ clever animal.
—Yes. It's _____ cleverest dog in the world.
A. the; the B. a; a C. a; the D. the; a
12. That grey cat is usually very _____ and _____.
A. friendly; quietly B. friend; quiet
C. friendly; quiet D. friend; quietly
13. Our Chinese teacher didn't go to bed _____ he finished his work last night.
A. if B. until C. since D. because
14. The two dogs are fighting _____ the bone. Each of them _____ the only bone.
A. with; wants B. for; wants
C. with; want D. for; want
15. When you are swimming, _____ your ears. You can use earplugs (耳塞) to stop water getting into your ears.
A. take after B. take part in
C. take off D. take care of

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 我的狗喜欢睁大了眼睛看着我。
My dog likes to look at me _____ _____ _____ _____.
17. 爱丽丝决定快速地追赶那只白兔子。
Alice decided _____ _____ _____ the white rabbit _____.
18. 我处于困境时经常找她帮忙。
I often ask her for help when I am _____ _____.
19. 有些人怕埃迪,因为他们认为他或许会咬他们。
Some people _____ _____ _____ Eddie, because they think he might _____ them.
20. 我妈妈不舒服。我不得不回家照顾她。
My mother doesn't feel well. I _____ _____ go home to _____ _____ her.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Using adjectives

We use adjectives to describe people or things. We can put an adjective before a noun or after a linking verb.

TIP

We can use adjectives after the linking verbs below.

be become feel get grow keep

look seem smell sound taste turn

Rabbits have **long** ears. Rabbits' ears are **long**.

A **lazy** cat is sleeping on the sofa. The cat on the sofa is **lazy**.

About pets

A1 Daniel is making some notes about pets. Help him make sentences with the words below.

1 make/Birds/sounds/nice _____

2 are/clever/Dogs/and/friendly _____

3 and/quiet/Goldfish/look after/to/are/easy _____

A2 Daniel found two passages about pets on the website. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

black clever happy hungry special tired

I have a (1) _____ cat. She likes to run after balls. When she gets (2) _____, she sleeps anywhere. She miaows when she is (3) _____.

My parrot is a (4) _____ friend of mine. He is very (5) _____, and he can repeat my words. He says "Hello!" when I come back home. He is (6) _____ **all the time**[1].

B Indefinite pronouns

We use indefinite pronouns to refer to people and things when we do not know or do not need to mention who or what we are talking about.

We use **somebody**, **someone** and **something** in positive sentences.

I saw **somebody/someone/something** in the house.

We use **anybody**, **anyone** and **anything** in negative sentences or in questions.

I did not see **anybody/anyone/anything** in the house.

Did you see **anybody/anyone/anything** in the house?

We use **nobody**, **no one** and **nothing** to refer to "not anyone" and "not anything".

There is **nobody/no one/nothing** in the house.

语法

A 使用形容词

我们可以用形容词来描述人或事。我们可以把形容词放在名词前或连系动词后。

提示

我们可以在下面这些连系动词后用形容词。

是 变成 感觉 （使）达到，进入 逐渐变得 保持 看起来 似乎 闻起来 听起来 尝起来 变成

兔子长着长耳朵。兔子的耳朵是长的。

一只懒猫正在沙发上睡觉。沙发上的猫懒。

关于宠物

A1 丹尼尔正在做一些有关宠物的笔记。帮助他用下面的单词造句。

1 发出/鸟/声音/好的_____

2 是/聪明的/狗/和/友好的_____

3 和/安静的/金鱼/照看/to 不定式/是/容易的_____

A2 丹尼尔在网站上找到了两段有关宠物的文章。用方框里的单词完成句子。

黑色的 聪明的 高兴的 饿的 特殊的 累的

我有一只(1)_____猫。她喜欢追赶球。当她变得(2)_____时，她睡在任何地方。当她(3)_____时，她喵喵叫。

我的鹦鹉是我的一位(4)_____朋友。他非常(5)_____，并且他能重复我的话。当我回家时，他说"你好！"他一直是(6)_____。

B 不定代词

当我们不知道或没有必要提及我们正在谈论谁或什么的时候我们用不定代词来指代人或事物。

我们把 somebody，someone 和 something 用在肯定句中。

我看到有人/东西在房子里。

我们把 anybody，anyone 和 anything 用在否定句或疑问句中。

我没有看到房子里有任何人/任何东西。

你看到房子里有人/东西吗?

我们用 nobody，no one 和 nothing 来指代"没有人"和"没有东西"。

房子里没有人/没有东西。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

We use **everybody**, **everyone** and **everything** to refer to "all people" and "all things".
Is **everybody/everyone** here today?
Everything is ready.

TIP
When we are offering something or when we expect the answer to be "yes", we can use **something/somebody/someone** in questions.
Would you like **something** to eat? Is **someone** there?

TIP
I did not hear **anybody**. = I heard **nobody**.

TIP
No one is written as two words.

Keeping a pet at home

Mr Wu is asking the students about their pets. Complete their conversation with the correct indefinite pronouns.

Mr Wu: Millie, I know you have a dog. What do you feed him?
Millie: We usually give him dog food.
Mr Wu: Do you feed him (1)_____ else?
Millie: Yes. Sometimes we give him some meat. He likes it.
Mr Wu: I see. Does (2)_____ have a cat?
Amy: Yes, I have a cat. She's nice to (3)_____.
Mr Wu: Good. I know (4)_____ has goldfish, right?
Peter: Yes, I do. Goldfish are easy to look after.
Mr Wu: That's true. Does (5)_____ have a snake?
Kitty: No. (6)_____ wants a snake, I think.
Daniel: I don't **agree**[2]. There's (7)_____ wrong with keeping a snake if you like it.

我们用 everybody, everyone 和 everything 来指代"所有人"和"所有事"。
今天所有人都到齐了吗?
一切都准备好了。

提示
当我们要提供某物或者期望得到的回答为"yes"时,我们可以在疑问句中使用 something/somebody/someone。
您想吃点什么吗? 有人在那儿吗?

提示
我没听到有人说话。

提示
把 no one 作为两个单词进行书写。

在家养一只宠物
吴老师正在问学生们关于他们的宠物。用正确的不定代词完成他们的会话。
吴老师:米莉,我知道你有一只狗。你喂他什么?
米莉:我们通常给他狗食。
吴老师:你喂他其他(1)_____吗?
米莉:是的。有时我们给他一些肉。他喜欢肉。
吴老师:我明白了。(2)_____有一只猫吗?
埃米:是的,我有一只猫。她对(3)_____好。
吴老师:好。我知道(4)_____有金鱼,对吗?
彼得:是的,我有。金鱼容易照看。
吴老师:那是真的。(5)_____有一条蛇吗?
基蒂:没有。我想(6)_____想要一条蛇。
丹尼尔:我不同意。如果你喜欢蛇,养蛇是(7)_____错的。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 all the time 一直,总是
eg: She wears a smile on her face **all the time**.
她一直面带微笑。
拓展 有关 time 的常用短语:
at that time 在那时　　at the same time 同时
in time 及时　　on time 准时
from time to time 不时

【考题在线 1】埃迪,你总是在听音乐。
You listen to music _____ _____ _____, Eddie.

2 agree /əˈgriː/ *v.* **同意;赞成**
eg: The head teacher **agreed** that we should have a meeting. 校长同意我们应该开个会。
考向: agree with 表示"同意某人的意见、观点或所说的话",后接表示人的名词或代词,也可接表示意见、看法等的名词。
eg: My parents **agreed with** my plan.
我的父母同意我的计划。

【考题在线 2】—I think students should have mobile phones to call their parents.
—_____. They often use them to play games instead. (江西)
A. I hope so　　B. I don't agree
C. No problem　　D. Good idea

考题在线答案 1. all the time　2. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点1：形容词



考向一：英语中用来描述人或事物的性质、状态及特征的词叫形容词。

【考题在线1】You bought the last ticket for the concert. How _____ you are! （河北）

A. sweet　　B. lucky
C. strange　　D. funny

点拨：由前一句“你买到了音乐会的最后一张票”可知后一句表达的是“你真幸运！”。

考向二：形容词的功能

(1)形容词作定语

①单个形容词作定语时，一般放在被修饰的名词前。

eg：She is a good girl. 她是一个好女孩儿。

②形容词修饰不定代词时，要放在不定代词的后面。

eg：There is nothing important.
没有什么重要的事情。

③“基数词-单数可数名词-形容词”为复合形容词，放在被修饰词的前面。

eg：Tom is an eight-year-old boy.
汤姆是一个八岁的男孩

(2)形容词作表语时，与连系动词构成系表结构。

eg：The meal is delicious. 这顿饭很美味。

(3)形容词作宾语补足语时，用来说明宾语的性质、状态或特征。

eg：I found the book interesting.
我发现这本书有趣。

【考题在线2】I had a _____ trip to Dalian last year. It's a nice city to visit. （辽阳）

A. wonderful　　B. terrible
C. dangerous　　D. delicious

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：去年我去大连的旅行很棒，它是个旅游的好城市。wonderful 精彩的，绝妙的；terrible 可怕的；dangerous 有危险的，不安全的；delicious 可口的，美味的。结合后面的 nice 一词可知选 wonderful。

【考题在线3】Confucius(孔子) is also very famous in many Western countries because he taught people to be _____ to others first. （山西）

A. similar　　B. kind　　C. important

点拨：be kind to others“对他人友好”。

考向三：注意事项

(1)多个形容词修饰名词的顺序

限定词(冠词、指示代词、形容词性物主代词、数词)→描绘词(大小、长短、形状、长幼、新旧、颜色、国籍、材料)→名词

eg：a famous American medical college
一所著名的美国医学院
a beautiful tall building
一座漂亮而高大的建筑物

【考题在线4】They have got such a _____ table.

A. round wooden brown
B. round brown wooden
C. brown round wooden

点拨：根据多个形容词修饰名词的排列顺序，这三个形容词的排列顺序为：形状＋颜色＋材料。

(2)有些形容词只能作定语。如：only(唯一的)，elder(年长的)等及复合形容词 man-made(人造的)，English-speaking(说英语的)等。

(3)有些形容词只能作表语，如：ill，alone，asleep，alive 等。

(4)有些词貌似是副词但其实是形容词，如：friendly，lively，lonely，lovely 等。

(5)以-ing 结尾的形容词作表语时，主语通常是物；以-ed 结尾的形容词作表语时，主语通常是人。

【考题在线5】We are _____ about the _____ news that Beijing will hold the Winter Olympics in 2022. （龙东）

A. excited；exciting　　B. exciting；excited
C. excited；excite

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：我们对于这个北京将于2022年举办冬季奥运会的令人兴奋的消息感到兴奋。excited 表示人的感受，exciting 表示物的性质。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点2:不定代词

考向一:不定代词的构成

不定代词是由 some-, any-, no-, every-加上 one, body, thing 等构成。不定代词没有主格和宾格之分,在句中可作主语、宾语和表语。something, somebody, someone, everything, everybody, everyone 用于肯定句中; anything, anybody, anyone 用于疑问句或否定句中; no one, nobody, nothing 表示否定意义。

【考题在线6】—Do you have any interesting news to tell us?
—No, _____ much. (荆州)
A. anything B. nothing
C. something D. everything
点拨:本题用**词义辨析法**。句意:——你有一些有趣的新闻告诉我们吗?——不,没有一些。根据答语"No"可知表示"没有什么新闻",应该选 nothing。

考向二:不定代词的指代对象

(1)含-body 和-one 的不定代词只用来指人,二者可互换。

eg: Someone/ Somebody is crying in the next room.
隔壁房间有人在哭。

(2)含-thing 的不定代词用来指事物。

eg: Are you going to buy anything?
你打算去买东西吗?

【考题在线7】We will have a sports meeting in October, but _____ knows the date for sure. (莱芜)
A. everybody B. nobody
C. anybody D. somebody
点拨:本题用**词义辨析法**。句意:我们将要在10月份举行运动会,但是没有人知道具体的日期。everybody 每个人,人人;nobody 没有人;anybody 任何人;somebody 某人。根据连词 but 表转折判断后面用 nobody 表否定。

考向三:不定代词的定语

不定代词的定语必须后置,即放到不定代词的后面。

eg: There is somebody strange in the street.
街上有个奇怪的人。

【考题在线8】Learning is a lifelong journey because it brings _____ every day. (曲靖)
A. new something B. something new
C. anything new D. new anything
点拨:句意:学习是一段终生的旅程,因为它每天都带来新的东西。something 用于肯定句,形容词修饰不定代词要放在后面。

考向四:不定代词的数

不定代词都具有单数含义,因此通常被看成是第三人称单数。当它们作主语时,其后的谓语动词用单数形式。

eg: Nothing is important.
没什么重要的。
I hope everything goes well.
我希望一切顺利。

考向五:不定代词的特殊用法

(1)若是希望对方作出肯定回答的一般疑问句,不用 anything/anybody,要用 something/ somebody。

eg: Could you tell me something about the accident?
你可以告诉我一些有关这个事故的事情吗?

【考题在线9】—Would you like _____ to eat?
—No, thanks. (广安)
A. something
B. anything
C. nothing
点拨:本题考查不定代词的用法。something"某事,某物",常用于肯定句中,也用在表示请求、期望得到对方肯定答复的疑问句中。

(2)含-one 和-body 等指人的不定代词的所有格形式为其后跟"'s",但若不定代词之后跟 else 时,"'s"应加在 else 之后。

eg: Can you remember someone else's name?
你还能记得其他人的名字吗?

考题在线答案
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. B 9. A

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见243页)

一、单项选择

1. Please be _____. There's an important meeting in the next room.
A. safely B. safe
C. quietly D. quiet

2. Mum likes making pies and the pies she cooks taste _____. I like them.
A. good B. well
C. bad D. badly

3. —You look _____. What's wrong?
—My son hurt his leg this morning.
A. happy B. fine
C. surprised D. worried

4. How _____ the song *Two Butterflies* sounds! Most of the young like the words more than the music.
A. softly B. sweet
C. famous D. beautifully

5. They waited and waited for something _____ to happen.
A. excite B. excited
C. exciting D. to excite

6. My little brother is a tidy boy. He always keeps his room _____. （长春）
A. clean B. to clean
C. cleaning D. cleaned

7. You don't have a drink. Can I get you _____? （河北）
A. something B. anything
C. nothing D. everything

8. I think coffee tastes good, but not _____ likes drinking it. （盐城）
A. somebody B. anybody
C. nobody D. everybody

9. _____ lives together with Mrs Black. She lives alone. （徐州）
A. Somebody B. Anybody
C. Nobody D. Everybody

10. —Did you find _____ funny in the book?
—Yes. It talks about how to be a good kid. （泸州）
A. nothing B. something
C. anything D. everything

11. —Tom, supper is ready.
—I don't want to eat _____, Mum. I'm not feeling well. （北京）
A. everything B. nothing
C. something D. anything

12. —It seems that Peter has nothing to do at the moment.
—Let me give him _____ to read.
A. anything B. something
C. everything D. nothing

13. Look! Sonia looks worried. There must be _____ wrong with her. （济宁）
A. nothing B. something
C. anything D. everything

14. Sam played games for fun when he was young, but now he wants to do _____.
A. something else B. anything else
C. else something D. else anything

二、根据句意，用正确的不定代词填空

15. I'm thirsty. Bring me _____ to drink, please.

16. We are all tired. _____ wants to go on walking any more.

17. I'm looking for my pencil. Did _____ see it?

18. _____ is here. Let's begin our meeting.

19. The man heard _____ hid treasure in the house, but he didn't find _____ in it.

20. Listen! I can hear _____ singing in the next door.

21. It snowed last night. _____ was all white this morning.

22. —Is there _____ interesting in today's newspaper?
—No, there's _____ interesting.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills


课文听力A1音频及材料

A Goldfish

A1 Peter is listening to a talk on goldfish and writing down some notes. Listen to the talk and help him check his notes below. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

1 Pick up goldfish with your hands. _____
2 Put your goldfish in the sun. _____
3 A goldfish can **weigh**[1] up to 40 grams. _____
4 Some goldfish are black. _____
5 Goldfish are easy to look after. _____
6 Goldfish are very expensive. _____

A2 Peter recorded the talk. Listen again and help him prepare a fact sheet about goldfish with the correct information.

About goldfish
- Put them in (1) _____ water.
- Do not put them in (2) _____.
- Do not pick them up with (3) _____.
- They eat special fish food and (4) _____.
- Feed them **once**[2] (5) _____.
- They are usually (6) _____.
- They can grow up to be (7) _____ centimetres long and weigh up to (8) _____ grams.
- They can be orange, (9) _____, white or green.

A3 After the talk, Peter calls Amy to tell her about goldfish. Complete Peter's answers with the help of the information on page 99.

Peter: There was a talk in the Pet Club yesterday.
Amy: Really? What was the talk about?
Peter: It was a talk about (1) _____. We learnt about **how to look after them**[3].
Amy: That's interesting. Can you tell me more about them?
Peter: Sure. First, they need (2) _____ water.
Amy: Do you need to feed them often?
Peter: No, not often, only once a day. They eat special fish food and sometimes (3) _____.
Amy: How big can goldfish grow?
Peter: They can be (4) _____ centimetres long and weigh up to (5) _____ grams.

综合技能

A 金鱼

A1 彼得正在听一个关于金鱼的报告，并记下一些笔记。听报告并帮他检查一下他下面的笔记。正确的句子写 T，错误的句子写 F。

1 用你的手捡起金鱼。 _____
2 把你的金鱼放在阳光下。 _____
3 一条金鱼能重达 40 克。 _____
4 一些金鱼是黑色的。 _____
5 金鱼容易照顾。 _____
6 金鱼很昂贵。 _____

A2 彼得把报告录了下来。再听一遍并用正确的信息帮助他准备一份关于金鱼的资料单。

关于金鱼
- 把它们放在(1) _____水里。
- 别把它们放在(2) _____。
- 别用(3) _____捡它们。
- 它们吃特殊的鱼食和(4) _____。
- (5) _____喂它们一次。
- 它们通常是(6) _____。
- 它们能长到(7) _____厘米长，重达(8) _____克。
- 它们可能是橘黄色的，(9) _____，白色的或绿色的。

A3 报告后，彼得打电话给埃米，告诉她有关金鱼的事情。在 99 页信息的帮助下完成彼得的回答。

彼得：昨天在宠物俱乐部有一个报告。
埃米：真的吗？是关于什么的报告？
彼得：它是关于(1) _____的报告。我们了解了如何照顾它们。
埃米：那很有趣。有关它们你能多告诉我点吗？
彼得：当然可以。首先，它们需要(2) _____水。
埃米：你需要经常喂它们吗？
彼得：不，不经常，只要一天一次。它们吃特殊的鱼食，有时(3) _____。
埃米：金鱼能长到多大？
彼得：它们能长(4) _____厘米长，重达(5) _____克。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Amy: Do they make any **noise**[4]?
Peter: No. They're very (6)_____.

B Speak up: How do you look after your pets?

The students are talking about how they look after their pets. Work in groups and talk about pet care. Use the conversation below as a model.

Daniel: How do you look after your dog, Millie?
Millie: Dogs like exercise a lot, so we walk him in the park every evening.
Daniel: Oh, I see. Do you walk your cat, Amy?
Amy: No, we don't. We only brush her fur every day.
Daniel: How do you look after your fish, Peter?
Peter: We put them in clean water, and we never feed them too much.

课文朗读B

Study skills

Finding information on the Internet

What is the Internet?

The Internet is an international computer network. It connects computer networks all over the world. People can get different kinds of information from it. There are millions of websites on the Internet. There is a lot of useful information on the websites. You can use search engines to find the information you need.

How do we use search engines?

Search engines help us find information quickly and easily.

Type in a keyword or some keywords and the search engine will give you a list of relevant websites to look at.

Millie and her friends are using search engines to find information. Look at what they want to find. Help them choose the best keywords. Circle the correct letters.

1 Millie wants to find information about pets.

a animals	Search
b birds	Search
c pets	Search

2 Simon wants to find information about how to look after a pet.

a pet care	Search
b pet	Search
c pet problems	Search

3 Kitty wants to find information about keeping an e-pet.

a different pets	Search
b e-pet	Search
c what to have as a pet	Search

埃米：它们发出噪音吗？
彼得：不。它们非常(6)_____。

B 大声说：你是如何照看你的宠物的？

学生们正在谈论他们如何照顾他们的宠物。分组谈论宠物护理。用下面的对话作为示例。

丹尼尔：米莉，你是如何照看你的狗的？
米莉：狗非常喜欢运动，因此我们每天晚上都在公园里遛他。
丹尼尔：噢，我明白了。埃米，你遛你的猫吗？
埃米：不，我们不遛。我们只是每天给她刷毛。
丹尼尔：彼得，你是如何照看你的鱼的？
彼得：我们把它们放在干净的水里，并且我们从不喂它们太多。

学习技能

在因特网上找信息

什么是因特网？

因特网是一个国际性的电脑网络。它把全世界的电脑网络连接起来。人们可以从上面获得各种各样的信息。因特网上有大量的网站。网站上有许多有用的信息。你可以使用搜索引擎找到你所需要的信息。

我们如何使用搜索引擎呢？

搜索引擎帮助我们快速容易地找到信息。输入一个关键字或几个关键字，搜索引擎会给你列出相关网站来看。

米莉和她的朋友们正在用搜索引擎查找信息。看看他们想要找什么。帮助他们选择最佳的关键词。圈出正确的字母。

1 米莉想找有关宠物的信息。

a 动物	搜索
b 鸟	搜索
c 宠物	搜索

2 西蒙想找有关如何照看宠物的信息。

a 宠物护理	搜索
b 宠物	搜索
c 宠物问题	搜索

3 基蒂想找有关养电子宠物的信息。

a 不同的宠物	搜索
b 电子宠物	搜索
c 养什么宠物	搜索

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶weigh /weɪ/ *v.* 重;有……重

eg:How much does the giant panda **weigh**?
这只大熊猫有多重?

考向:weigh up to...“重达……”,对重量提问用 how much。

eg:How much does a goldfish **weigh**?
一只金鱼有多重?

拓展 weigh 的名词形式是 weight,意为“重量”。

eg:Do you know the **weight** of the giant panda?
你知道这只大熊猫的重量吗?

❷once /wʌns/ *adv.* 一次

eg:Please change water **once** a week.
请一周换一次水。

考向:once a day 一天一次;once a week 一周一次;once a month 一个月一次。提问频率用 how often。

eg:—How often do you go to the zoo?
你多长时间去一次动物园?
—Once a month.
一个月一次。

拓展 twice 两次;three times 三次,三次以上用“基数词 + times”表示。

【考点在线 1】—_____ do you brush your teeth?
—Twice or more a day. (沈阳)
A. How soon
B. How far
C. How long
D. How often


方法真题练:短语辨析法

点拨:本题用短语辨析法。句意:——你多久刷一次牙?——一天两次或更多。How soon 多久; How far 多远;How long 多长时间;How often 多久一次。根据答句可判断问句询问频率用 How often。

❸how to look after them
如何照顾它们

考向一:how to look after them 由“特殊疑问词 + 不定式”构成。不定式常和 what,when,which,where 和 how 等疑问词连用,在句中作宾语或表语等。

eg:Nobody knows what to do next.
没有人知道下一步该做什么。

考向二:“疑问词 + 不定式”可以把复合句转换为简单句。

eg:She didn't know where she would go the next day.
= She didn't know where to go the next day.
她不知道第二天她要到哪里去。

【考题在线 2】句型转换
The teacher has told us how we should improve our speaking skills. (改为简单句) (临沂)
The teacher has told us how _____ _____ our speaking skills.

点拨:“疑问词 + 不定式”结构可以把含有疑问词的复合句改为简单句。

❹noise /nɔɪz/ *n.* 声音,响声;噪音

eg:Don't make so much **noise**.
别这么大声嚷嚷。

考向:[重点]noise 常作不可数名词,而当表示各种各样的噪音时可用作可数名词。其形容词为 noisy,意为“吵闹的”;副词为 noisily,意为“吵闹地”。

eg:It's very **noisy** in the supermarket.
超市里很吵闹。
Many machines are working **noisily**.
许多机器正嘈杂地运转着。

【考题在线 3】The background music sounds _____ (noise). Please turn it down. (常州)

点拨:题干中 sound 意为“听起来”,为连系动词,后接形容词。noise 的形容词形式为 noisy。

考题在线答案
1. D
2. to improve
3. noisy

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见243页)

一、单项选择

1. Ann _____ her dog every day. She has three _____.
A. brushes; brush
B. brush; brushes
C. brush; brush
D. brushes; brushes

2. Reading _____ the sun is really bad for your eyes.
A. on B. over C. in D. at

3. The boy didn't sleep well because of the _____ from the factory. （白银）
A. voice B. noise
C. music D. song

4. My cat _____ about 2 kilograms. I look after it well.
A. weigh
B. weight
C. weighs
D. weighing

5. — _____ do you visit your grandparents, Timmy?
—Once a week. （宿迁）
A. How many B. How long
C. How much D. How often

二、根据汉语完成句子

6. 长大后我想成为一名英语教师。 （广州）
I want to be an English teacher when I _____ _____.

7. 别发出噪音了,因为有人在看书。 （本溪）
_____ _____ _____ _____ because someone is reading.

8. 你知道如何照看你的宠物狗吗?
Do you know _____ _____ _____ _____ your pet dog?

9. 过度使用手机对你的健康有害。 （白银）
Using mobile phones _____ _____ is bad for your health.

10. 这条金鱼多重?
_____ _____ is the goldfish?

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Task

My favourite pet

A Amy gave a presentation on her cat. Here is her script.

课文朗读A

Poppy the cat

My favourite pet is a cat. Her name is Poppy and she is three years old.

She has long, grey fur and white paws. Her eyes are green and she is quite small. She weighs about two kilograms.

Usually she eats cat food, but her favourite food is fish. She likes warm milk too.

She is very friendly and quiet. She likes sleeping in a **basket**[1]. Sometimes she plays with a ball. When she is hungry, she will miaow.

I feed Poppy every day and give her clean water. I like to brush her fur and she enjoys it very much.

Poppy is my best friend, but she is very lazy sometimes! She never worries because we take good care of her.

任务

我最喜欢的宠物

A 埃米作了一份关于她的猫的介绍。这是她的稿子。

猫波比

我最喜欢的宠物是一只猫。她的名字叫波比，她三岁了。

她长着灰色的长毛和白色的爪子。她的眼睛是绿色的，她很小。她大约重2千克。

通常，她吃猫食，但是她最喜爱的食物是鱼。她也喜欢温牛奶。

她很友好并且安静。她喜欢在篮子里睡觉。有时她玩球。当她饿时，她会喵喵叫。

我每天喂波比，并给她干净的水(喝)。我喜欢给她刷毛，她非常享受这样。

波比是我最好的朋友，但有时她很懒！她从不烦恼，因为我们把她照顾得很好。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Useful expressions

I love/like my … very much.
My … looks like ….
He/She is always very friendly/quiet/happy/noisy.
Usually he/she eats ….
He/She lives in a cage/basket/box.
He/She usually sits/lies on the bed/floor.
He/She likes/ does not like ….
He/She needs ….
We usually/sometimes ….

B You want to give a presentation on your favourite pet. First, prepare a fact sheet about it to help you organize your ideas.

1 What does it look like?
Size _____ Eyes _____
Colour _____ Body _____
2 It is _____. (clever/friendly/happy/kind/lazy/noisy/quiet)
3 Think about its lifestyle.
What does it eat? _____
What kind of place does it live in? _____
What does it like/dislike? _____
How do you look after it? _____
4 What is special about your pet? _____

C Write your script for your presentation on your favourite pet. Use the information on the fact sheet in Part B. When you finish, present your work to the class.

Self-assessment

I can	Examples	Result
1 talk about the two poems.		
2 use the new words to talk about different pets.		
3 use adjectives to describe people or things. use indefinite pronouns to refer to people or things.		
4 find information on the Internet.		

Result: Wonderful! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

有用的表达
我非常喜欢我的……
我的……看起来像……
他/她总是非常友好/安静/快乐/吵闹。
通常他/她吃……
他/她住在一个笼子/篮子/盒子里。
他/她通常坐在/躺在床上/地板上。
他/她喜欢/不喜欢……
他/她需要……
我们通常/有时……

B 你想给你最喜欢的宠物作介绍。首先，准备一张关于它的资料单，帮助你组织你的想法。

1 它长什么样?
大小 _____ 眼睛 _____
颜色 _____ 身体 _____
2 它是_____。(聪明的/友好的/快乐的/善良的/懒惰的/吵闹的/安静的)
3 想一想它的生活方式。
它吃什么? _____
它住在什么样的地方? _____
它喜欢/不喜欢什么? _____
你如何照看它? _____
4 你的宠物特别的地方是什么?
_____

C 为关于你最喜欢的宠物的介绍写一份稿子。用 B 部分资料单上的信息。当你完成时，把你的稿子展示给你的同学。

自我评估

我能	例子	结果
1 谈论这两首诗。		
2 用新单词谈论不同的宠物。		
3 用形容词描述人或事物。 用不定代词指代人或事物。		
4 从互联网上找信息。		

结果：极好！ 好！ 不错！
我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 basket /ˈbɑːskɪt/ *n.* 篮子

eg: There are many apples in the **basket**.
篮子里有许多苹果。

考向: 常用搭配: in the basket 意为“在篮子里”。

拓展 由 basket 构成的复合词: basketball 篮球。

eg: Many boys like playing basketball.
许多男孩喜欢打篮球。

【考题在线】篮子里有多少橘子？

_____

考题在线答案

How many oranges are there in the basket?

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

“三方面法”描写动物

选定描述对象，引出主题后可以从以下3个方面加以描述：



易错点提示

常用到描述性形容词、固定短语以及特定句式，时态通常为一般现在时，要注意主谓一致、动宾搭配等方面的语法特点，避免出错。

参考词汇和句式

单词	name, welcome, friend, friendly, beautiful, lovely, shy, pet, mouse, feed, touch, noise
短语	play with, take care of, run after, grow up, make some noise, sleep in a basket, play with a ball
句式	My favourite pet is … She weighs about … She is friendly and quiet. He would wave his short tail to show …

典例

请以 My Favorite Pet 为题，写一篇80词左右的短文，描述一下你最喜欢的宠物。

要求：1. 描写宠物外貌 2. 描写宠物趣事

【范文欣赏】

My Favorite Pet

I have a lovely dog named Peter. He is my favorite animal. His fur is brown. He has a small body and two big eyes. He likes to eat meat and bones. He is friendly and loyal to me. I keep him as my friend.

Every day when I get home from school, he always “greets” me with his waving tail and plays with me for a while. But one day, I was unhappy because I failed the exam. He didn't leave me until I was happy again.

I love my pet dog. What about you?

【点评】

本文用“三方面法”描写动物。第一段写了宠物狗的外貌和习性：外貌（brown, small body, big eyes），习性（likes to eat …, friendly and loyal）；第二段写了典型事例（greets me every day, didn't leave me …）。

添彩点：①由整体到局部描写狗的外貌，细致入微。②一些短语，连词和句式的运用，使本文丰富多彩。如表示因果关系的连词 because 的运用；重点短语：play with（和……一起玩），fail sth.（做某事失败），be friendly to sb.（对某人友好）；重点句式：I keep him as my friend.（我把他当作我的朋友）。He didn't leave me until I was happy again.（直到我又高兴了他才离开）。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见243页）

根据首字母提示完成短文

Amy's favourite pet is a cat. She is beautiful. She has long, grey f_____[1] and white p_____[2]. Her eyes are green and she is quite small. She w_____[3] about two kilograms.

The cat is very friendly and q_____[4]. If she is h_____[5], she will miaow. Usually she likes s_____[6] in a basket. When she is not sleeping, she p_____[7] with balls.

Amy f_____[8] her cat every day and gives her clean water. Sometimes, she b_____[9] her fur and she enjoys it very much. She never w_____[10] because her master takes good care of her.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Project 2

课文原文及译文

A school newsletter

The Class 1, Grade 7 students sometimes help make the school newsletter. You and your classmates want to prepare articles for your own school newsletter too.

A Planning newsletter articles

1 Work in groups of four. Think about some interesting things or people in your school. Then choose one thing or person to write about.

2 Get some information about your topic. If your article is about a person, prepare an interview with that person.

3 Use the library and/or the Internet to get more information.

4 Find some pictures to make your article more interesting.

Volleyball team wins!

The school volleyball team won a match at the Sports Centre last week.

Interesting facts about animals

Some frogs can change colour.

Horses sleep standing up.

Butterflies taste with their feet.

The shortest snake is 10 cm long.

Favourite pets

Our survey shows that most of the Grade 7 students have pets. Below are the kinds of pets they have.

Cats Birds Dogs Rabbits Goldfish Others

Visiting the China Science and Technology Museum

Last Thursday, the Class 1, Grade 7 students visited the China Science and Technology Museum. It was very interesting. We learnt about space travel, weather and many other things.

B Preparing your newsletter

Writing

· Talk to other groups. Make sure the topics of your articles are different.

· Prepare an outline first.

一份学校的简讯

七年级一班的学生有时帮助做学校简讯。你和你的同班同学也想为你们自己的学校的简讯准备文章。

A 规划简讯文章

1 四人一小组。想一些你们学校有趣的事或人。然后选择一件事或一个人来写。

2 收集一些有关你们的话题的信息。如果你们的文章是关于一个人的，准备一次对那个人的采访。

3 用图书馆和/或互联网收集更多的信息。

4 找一些图片使你们的文章更加有趣。

排球队获胜了!

上周学校的排球队在体育中心赢得了比赛。

有关动物的有趣的事实

一些青蛙能改变颜色。

马站着睡觉。

蝴蝶用它们的脚尝味道。

最短的蛇有 10 厘米长。

最喜欢的宠物

我们的调查显示大部分七年级的学生有宠物。下面是他们所拥有的宠物种类。

猫 鸟 狗 兔子 金鱼 其他

参观中国科技博物馆

上周四，七年级一班的学生参观了中国科技博物馆。它非常有趣。我们了解了太空旅行、天气和许多其他事情。

B 准备你们的简讯

写作

· 和其他组交流。确保你们文章的话题不一样。

· 首先准备一份提纲。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

· Write a title for your article.
· Keep your article brief and interesting.

Using pictures and photos

· It is often a good idea to have some pictures and photos in your newsletter.
· Draw pictures and/or use photos to illustrate your points.
· Use background colours to make your newsletter more attractive.

Checking

· Make sure your article has a title.
· Check for spelling and grammatical mistakes.
· Make sure punctuation is used correctly.

Presentation

· Put all the articles, pictures and photos together.
· Add the name of the newsletter at the top.
· Put the date and the name of your school at the top.
· Include a word search, a crossword puzzle or a joke to make your newsletter fun to read.

Sunshine Middle School Newsletter

20 June

Amy Zhao wins first prize
Helping Hands Club at SMS
Interview

Mr Wu talks about working at SMS

Interviewer: _____?
Mr Wu: _____
Interviewer: _____?
Mr Wu: _____

· 为你们的文章写一个标题。
· 使你们的文章简明有趣。

使用图片和照片

· 常在你们的简讯里加一些图片和照片是个好主意。
· 画画和/或用照片来说明你们的观点。
· 使用背景颜色来使你们的简讯更加吸引人。

检查

· 确保你们的文章有标题。
· 检查拼写和语法错误。
· 确保标点符号使用正确。

呈现

· 把所有的文章、图片和照片放在一起。
· 在顶部加上简讯的名称。
· 把日期和你们学校的名字放在顶部。
· 包含一个单词搜索、纵横字谜或笑话来让你们的简讯阅读起来有趣。

阳光中学简讯

六月二十日

赵埃米赢得第一
阳光中学的助人为乐俱乐部

采访

吴老师谈论在阳光中学工作

采访者: _____?
吴老师: _____
采访者: _____?
吴老师: _____



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基初中系列
点拨 七年级·牛津英语·下（YL版）

Unit 1 过关测试

AP答案见223页

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

请通过 www.rudder.com.cn 下载获取
听力原题、听力材料、答案及录音

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. Beijing is _____ old and beautiful city. It is _____ capital of China.
A. an; a　B. the; a
C. an; the　D. the; the

2. I want _____ my friends _____ dinner with me this weekend.
A. inviting; to have　B. to invite; have
C. to invite; to have　D. inviting; having

3. The _____ this restaurant is 3,400 _____.
A. area to; square foot
B. area of; square foot
C. area to; square feet
D. area of; square feet

4. —I forgot to bring my English book.
—Never mind. I can _____ mine _____ you.
A. share; with　B. help; with
C. play; with　D. take; with

5. —Excuse me, I want some books, but I can't find a bookshop here.
—I know _____ on my way home. Come with me, please.
A. this　B. one　C. it　D. that

6. He doesn't have _____ room. He lives with his grandfather.
A. own him　B. he own
C. own his　D. his own

7. Life in the countryside is quite _____ that in modern cities.
A. the same as　B. different from
C. full of　D. far from

8. —Excuse me, Mary. Can you read "198" in English?
—Yes, of course. _____.
A. One hundred ninety-eight
B. One hundred nine eight
C. One hundred and ninety-eight
D. One hundred and ninety eight

9. My grandparents live in an old apartment with _____ floors and they are on the _____ floor.
A. fifth; three　B. fifth; third
C. five; three　D. five; third

10. It's my daughter's birthday today. She's _____ years old.
A. eighteen　B. eighteenth
C. the eighteen　D. the eighteenth

11. Tom sits _____ the classroom. He is looking _____ the window at the tree in class.
A. in front of; out
B. in the front of; at
C. in front of; out of
D. in the front of; out of

12. Nowadays, _____ farmers leave their hometown to search for work in the cities.
A. million of　B. two millions
C. millions of　D. two millions of

13. —Would you like _____ in Shanghai with your grandparents?
—Yes, _____.
A. living; I would
B. living; I'd love to
C. to live; I'd love to
D. to live; I would to

14. —Excuse me. May I speak to Jill, please?
—_____
A. Yes, I am.
B. Do you know him?
C. I am speaking.
D. This is Jill speaking.

15. —My parents and I will go to London for a trip tomorrow.
—Really? _____.
A. I don't think so
B. Have fun
C. That's very strange
D. You should try it

二、完形填空(每小题2分,共30分)

American _____[16] begins _____[17] September after a long _____[18] holiday. There are _____[19] terms in a school _____[20]. The first term is from _____[21] to January, and _____[22] is from February to June. _____[23] American children begin to go to _____[24] when they are five years old. Most students are seventeen to eighteen years old when they finish high school.

High school students in America take only five _____[25] six subjects each term. They usually go to different classes every day, and they have homework for every class. After _____[26] they do all kinds of interesting things.

After high school, many students go to college(大学). They can go to a small or a large one. They usually have to give _____[27] money. So, many _____[28] students work after school _____[29] money _____[30] their studies.

16. A. student　B. school
C. classes　D. teachers
17. A. of　B. on
C. at　D. in
18. A. winter　B. autumn
C. summer　D. spring
19. A. two　B. three
C. four　D. five
20. A. day　B. week
C. month　D. year
21. A. July　B. August
C. September　D. October
22. A. two　B. a second
C. the second　D. second
23. A. Many　B. Much
C. Lot of　D. A lot
24. A. the school　B. school
C. schools　D. a school
25. A. from　B. out
C. and　D. or
26. A. classes　B. class
C. the class　D. one class
27. A. many　B. a few
C. a little　D. a lot of
28. A. school　B. high school
C. college　D. middle school
29. A. to get　B. to take
C. have　D. give
30. A. on　B. for　C. of　D. to

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

Amy	I'm thirteen. I'd like to live in a large flat on a busy street. My home is on the top floor of a tall building, so I can see the whole city from the windows at night. I think it must be very beautiful. There are many shopping malls near my home. My mother and I go shopping every Saturday.
Potter	I come from Moscow. I would like to live in a beautiful village near the city one day. It has two floors with a big garden. We have a big dining room and a nice kitchen. We employ a cook and he can cook different foods for us. We also have a gym. My parents and I can often exercise there.
Madee	I live with my family in a wooden house in a small town. The house is near a river. It has ten rooms. My grandparents, my parents, my three sisters, my brother and I live in the house. I am the second child of my family. It is very beautiful here, but it rains a lot.

31. Amy's dream house is _____.
A. on a farm　　B. near the city
C. in a town　　D. on a busy street

32. Madee lives _____ now.
A. in a large flat
B. in a wooden house
C. in a tall building
D. in a beautiful village

33. Potter tells us about the dining room, _____ and _____ in his home.
A. the living room; the bathroom
B. the study; the kitchen
C. the gym; the kitchen
D. the bedrooms; the kitchen

34. The underlined word "employ" means "_____" here in Chinese.
A. 要求　B. 购买　C. 雇用　D. 忙于

35. Which one is true?
A. Amy goes shopping with her mother every Sunday.
B. There are nine people in Madee's family now.
C. Potter does not like sports at all.
D. Madee lives in a small town near the sea.

四、根据汉语提示完成单词（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. I just want to lie on the _____（海滩）in the sun.
37. Millie's schoolbag is heavy. It is _____（满）of books.
38. There are two _____（study）in my flat—one is for me and the other is for my sister.
39. I'd like to live in a big _____（宫殿）.
40. There are about two _____（千）students in our school.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

41. Don't play with the _____（knife）. They may hurt you.
42. December is the _____（twelve）month of a year.
43. Where is the best place _____（grow）sunflowers?
44. He enjoys _____（share）his things with others.
45. People in some _____（country）eat many potatoes as their main food.

六、任务型阅读（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

Paris is the capital of France. Its subway（地铁）is also very special. You can enjoy its culture when you are in this city. First you can see many people reading books in the subway. Whenever they are in the subway or at the station, there is always a book in the hand.

The subway stations in Paris are not big, but each of them has its special acts（场景）. Some stations look like ships. Some stations have clothes, caps and shoes. And every station has a big advertisement picture. But many of them are for selling clothes and cosmetics（化妆品）.

You can meet some beggars（乞丐）in the subway. But the beggars in the Paris subway are also very special. They often play the violin or guitar in the subway. They don't feel shy at all. Instead they think it is natural. After playing, they will go around the subway and ask you to give them some money.

If you want to learn more about Paris, go to the subway and enjoy its culture for yourself.

46. Which city is the capital of France?
_____

47. What do people usually do when they are in the subway?
_____

48. Are the subway stations very big in Paris?
_____

49. What can you buy in some subway stations?
_____

50. How do the beggars get money from people in the subway?
_____

七、书面表达（15 分）

以 My Dream Home 为题，写一篇不少于 70 词的英语短文。内容包括：家的样式、地理位置、规模、设施等。

My Dream Home

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 过关测试

答案见224页

限时:60分钟 满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	总分
得分									

姓名 学号 班级 学校 密 封 线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. Mrs. Smith lives next to us. She is really a good _____ because she is always ready to help people around her.
A. visitor B. waiter
C. neighbour D. manager

2. —What a heavy rain! Will it stop tomorrow?
—_____. We're getting into the rainy season now.
A. Of course not
B. I'm afraid so
C. That's possible
D. I'm afraid not

3. —What _____ your sister _____?
—She is kind and we all like her.
A. does; like
B. does; look like
C. is; like
D. are; like

4. —Shall we go for a picnic this weekend?
—_____.
A. Sounds great
B. You're welcome
C. You are right
D. It's a pity

5. Wilson lives on the tenth floor. Wendy lives on the twelfth floor. Wilson lives two floors _____ Wendy.
A. above B. below C. over D. under

6. —How many children do most post-80s' families have?
—One. They _____ two in the future, I guess.
A. will have B. had
C. have D. have had

7. —Mum, I'll take an important test tomorrow.
—Don't be nervous, Sandy. _____
A. Good luck!
B. Good idea!
C. Well done!
D. Have a good time!

8. Mr Li doesn't have a good _____. He has to do much _____ every day.
A. work; job
B. job; work
C. job; job
D. work; work

9. —Have you read today's newspaper?
—Yes, but there isn't _____.
A. new something
B. something new
C. new anything
D. anything new

10. I like Jay Chou's songs because they can make me _____ great.
A. feel B. to feel
C. feeling D. feels

11. You must _____ the answers when you finish the paper.
A. fix B. look
C. check D. see

12. —What _____ Amy going to buy?
—She _____ buy some paper plates and forks.
A. is; will B. is; shall
C. will; will D. are; will

13. There _____ great changes in Tianshui in next ten years.
A. are B. were
C. will be D. are going to have

14. —Is your father going to Beijing on _____ train?
—No. He is going there by _____ plane.
A. a; the B. a; a
C. a; / D. the; a

15. —I am _____ what to wear to Lily's birthday party.
—You can ask Jack for help. He knows a lot about styles and colours.
A. worrying about
B. ready to
C. feeling well
D. giving ideas

二、完形填空(每小题2分,共20分)

Dear Bill,

Thank you _____[16] all of your kindness(善良). I really _____[17] at your house for a month.

Would you like _____[18] me in China next August? My younger brother _____[19] his holiday in France next summer, and you can _____[20] his room. But _____[21] be too surprised when you see it. He's crazy(痴迷) about football, so he has many pictures of famous football players _____[22] the wall. His room is very comfortable, and you will enjoy staying in it.

In his room _____[23] a colour TV. It's not a big one. You can use my brother's CD player, too. I _____[24] sure you will like China. Say _____[25] to everyone in your family for me. Write back soon.

Yours,
Li Ling

16. A. very much B. with
C. for D. in

17. A. like to stay
B. like staying
C. enjoyed to stay
D. enjoyed staying

18. A. visit B. visited
C. visiting D. to visit

19. A. has B. had
C. have D. will have

20. A. use B. borrow
C. stay D. live

21. A. don't B. won't
C. mustn't D. needn't

22. A. in B. on
C. to D. up

23. A. have B. has
C. there is D. there are

24. A. think B. guess
C. am D. will

25. A. yes B. hello
C. no D. good

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

My family moved to a new flat recently. I have some new neighbours now. I think they are all good.

My new neighbour Aunty Ann is a dancer. She is from the USA. She has beautiful eyes and a very good-looking nose. She likes playing the piano. Ann's parents are both good doctors. And her husband（丈夫）is also a doctor. Last week, Ann and her husband went to Beijing. They visited the Great Wall and many other places of interest there. Aunty Ann's family members are all very nice. I think they are very good neighbours.

Uncle Wang is a teacher. He teaches PE in No. 8 Middle School. It is a very good school in our city. He loves his students and is very kind to them. He often tells his students to pay attention to their health. Sometimes he plays football with them after school. In summer, he always takes them to the swimming pool. He's a good teacher and I also think he is a good neighbour.

26. Which country is Aunty Ann from?
A. The USA. B. The UK.
C. China. D. Canada.

27. What is Aunty Ann's husband?
A. He is a dancer.
B. He is a doctor.
C. He is a pianist.
D. He is a teacher.

28. How many people are there in Aunty Ann's family?
A. Three. B. Four.
C. Five. D. Six.

29. What does the underlined phrase "pay attention to" mean in Chinese?
A. 注意 B. 保管
C. 照顾 D. 忽略

30. Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?
A. Aunty Ann loves music.
B. Aunty Ann and her husband went to Beijing last week.
C. Uncle Wang is a helpful teacher.
D. All of Uncle Wang's students like playing football and swimming.

四、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

31. The twins work in the post office, and both of them are _____（邮递员）.

32. She often looks for some _____（信息）about fashion on the Internet.

33. I can see the _____（工程师）names on the noticeboard.

34. Linda wants to see my _____（年纪较长的）sister.

35. The volunteers are going to work in two _____（社区）this Sunday.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. Lucy is a polite and _____（help）girl. We all like her.

37. You are _____（luck）to live here. We have a great community centre.

38. Have a good rest, and you will feel _____（good）.

39. Qi Baishi was one of the most famous _____（art）in China.

40. Will you do some _____（shop）this weekend?

六、根据汉语完成句子（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

41. 我们当中大部分人乘公共汽车上学。
_____ _____ _____ go to school _____ _____.

42. 我的自行车坏了，你能修理它吗？
My bike _____ _____. Can you _____ it?

43. 你有问题吗？到我们这儿来。我们乐意帮助你。
Do you _____ _____? Come to us. We are _____ _____ help you.

44. ——你爸爸在哪儿？
——他在那儿生火。
—Where is your dad?
—He is _____ _____ _____ over there.

45. 我们学校图书馆有各种各样的书。
There are _____ _____ _____ books in our school library.

七、根据首字母提示补全单词（每小题 1 分，共 10 分）

My name is Millie. I am a G_____[46] Eight student in Sunshine Town Secondary School. I always try to be k_____[47] to other people. I have many f_____[48] in my school. I feel very h_____[49] to help them when they have p_____[50]. So I always try my b_____[51] to help them. I would like to be a social worker when I grow up. Then I can l_____[52] to people's problems and h_____[53] them s_____[54] their problems. I think I will feel very great if I can m_____[55] people happy again.

八、书面表达（15 分）

请写一篇 80 词左右的短文，介绍一下你的笔友莉莉所在的居民区。

内容提示：①莉莉住的居民区里有社区中心；

②当居民遇到问题时可以寻求工作人员的帮助；

③住在那里的居民都感到很幸福。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 过关测试

EP答案见225页

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校

一、单项选择（每小题1分,共15分）

1. —Tom, are these books _____?
—No, they are _____. Mine are on that shelf.
A. mine; Jenny　B. yours; Jenny's
C. mine; Jenny's　D. yours; Jenny

2. —Why not _____them _____ have dinner?
—OK. That sounds _____.
A. invite;for ;bad
B. invite; to; great
C. inviting; for;good
D. to invite; to ; great

3. I'd like to introduce _____to you.
A. a friend of my
B. a friend of mine
C. a my friend
D. my a friend

4. I hope you _____a teacher when you grow up.
A. to become　B. becoming
C. will become　D. became

5. _____go shopping tomorrow?
A. What about　B. Why don't
C. How about　D. Why not

6. He was so angry that he could say _____.
A. anything　B. nothing
C. something　D. everything

7. —The meat smells very _____. Who cooked it?
—Oh, my mother. She is good at cooking.
A. well　B. good
C. bad　D. badly

8. —Listen! Who is singing in the next room?
—It must be Sally. I often hear her _____ there.
A. singing　B. sings
C. to sing　D. sing

9. Paul looks forward to _____ his pen pal as soon as possible.
A. meets　B. meet
C. meeting　D. met

10. Be quick, or you'll _____ the early bus.
A. miss　B. leave
C. see　D. watch

11. —_____is your home to your school?
—It's about ten minutes' walk.
A. How long
B. How many
C. How much
D. How far

12. Four students in the team are here. Where are _____ students?
A. the other　B. others
C. the others　D. another

13. —Shall we make a cake for Tina as a birthday gift?
—_____. It will give her a big surprise.
A. Good idea
B. It's a pity
C. You're welcome
D. Never mind

14. —Whose room is this?
—It's _____.
A. Lucy and Lily
B. Lucy and Lily's
C. Lucy's and Lily's
D. Lucy's and Lily

15. It _____ me about 10 days _____ painting the walls.
A. took; to finish
B. cost; finishing
C. took; finishing
D. spent; to finish

二、完形填空（每小题1分,共15分）

Dear Lily,



How are you? Next week our class will have a trip to Nanjing. I am _____[16] to e-mail you to ask if you want to go _____[17] us. Now let me tell you about this _____[18] to Nanjing.

We will go there _____[19] our teachers next weekend. We will _____[20] at our school gate at 7:00 a. m. Then we will _____[21] a coach. We will get there at about 8:30 a. m. After that we will _____[22] the Purple Mountain (紫金山). It will take us about an hour _____[23] the top of the mountain. The _____[24] there is quite fresh. We can _____[25] the beauty of nature there. Afterwards, we will have lunch there. In the afternoon, we will _____[26] on the Xuanwu Lake. It is one of the most beautiful _____[27] in Nanjing. _____[28] that we will come back to our school. We will really enjoy the day because it will be our _____[29] visit there. We are very _____[30]. If you want to go with us, please tell me soon.

16. A. happy　B. sorry
C. unhappy　D. sad
17. A. with　B. without
C. for　D. to
18. A. route　B. way
C. road　D. trip
19. A. and　B. for
C. by　D. with
20. A. meet　B. come back
C. say goodbye　D. leave
21. A. by　B. buy
C. take　D. on
22. A. climb　B. walk
C. take　D. come
23. A. get　B. get to
C. to get to　D. getting to
24. A. air　B. ear
C. place　D. mountain
25. A. dislike　B. enjoy
C. hate　D. look
26. A. go boat　B. go boating
C. go boats　D. going boat

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

27. A. place　　B. city
C. lakes　　D. counties
28. A. After　　B. Before
C. When　　D. Which
29. A. one　　B. first
C. last　　D. once
30. A. excited　　B. exciting
C. sad　　D. unhappy

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

Good morning, ladies and gentlemen. Welcome to John Star Club! Let me tell you something about our sports centre. Here, you can enjoy a lot of different activities from 9:00 a. m. to 9:00 p. m. The outdoor tennis court and the badminton court are open all day. Most of our club members love the swimming pool because it is Olympic-sized. The time for swimming is from nine o'clock to half past eleven in the morning and two to six o'clock in the afternoon. Here is the gym. You can not only play basketball in the gym all day, but also do some training from five o'clock to half past seven in the afternoon. And now I'd like to walk with you around the centre and if you have any questions, please feel free to ask me. By the way, you only need to pay $200 to join our club, and then you can do sports here for one month at any time.

31. The sports centre opens at _____ every day.
A. 9:00 a. m.
B. 12:30 p. m.
C. 14:00 p. m.
D. 9:00 p. m.

32. _____ isn't open all day to the club members.
A. The tennis court
B. The badminton court
C. The basketball court
D. The swimming pool

33. Most club members like the swimming pool because _____.
A. it is free
B. it is Olympic-sized
C. there are few people there
D. the service（服务）is good

34. People can do some training _____ in the gym.
A. from 9:00 a. m. to 9:00 p. m.
B. from 9:00 a. m. to 11:00 p. m.
C. from 5:00 p. m. to 7:30 p. m.
D. from 5:00 p. m. to 9:00 p. m.

35. How much does he need to pay if Neil wants to join the John Star Club?
A. $200 for a year.
B. ¥200 for a year.
C. $200 for a month.
D. ¥200 for a month.

四、根据汉语提示完成单词（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. There are many tall trees _____（在……周围）my house.
37. You can _____（点）any food you like in this restaurant.
38. I like staying in the _____（安静的）countryside and breathing the fresh air.
39. It is reported that there are over thirty-five thousand _____（work）of art in the Louvre Museum.
40. Which of the actors do you think is very _____（著名的）in China?

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

41. June 1st is _____（child）Day.
42. Christmas is one of the most important festivals in _____（west）countries.
43. The garden is a good place _____（grow）flowers.
44. All the people there are _____（friend）to us.
45. How many _____（key）to the door do you have?

六、短文填空（每小题 2 分，共 20 分）

根据材料内容及首字母提示写出所缺单词，补全材料

Welcome to Beijing! I'm Lucy. There are many places of interest to v_____[46] in Beijing. We will go on the trip this Sunday. The Palace Museum is a w_____[47] place to visit. Every day, a lot of people c_____[48] to see it. There are many beautiful palaces and lots of fine w_____[49] of art. And then we will go to see the big stone dragons in Beihai Park. We will have l_____[50] at 12 o'clock in Quanjude. I guess you must know w_____[51] we will have for lunch. In the afternoon, we will go s_____[52] in Wangfujing Street. We can b_____[53] some souvenirs there for our friends. A_____[54] that we will take a bus back.

That's all. If you are not clear, tell me s_____[55].

七、书面表达（20 分）

《苍梧晚报》要举办一个介绍我市的征文活动。请根据以下要点，适当发挥，写一篇 80 词左右的短文。开头已给出，不计入总词数。

1. 连云港是个海滨城市，风光旖旎，气候宜人。每年有成千上万人来这儿旅游。

2. 可以爬山、游泳、品尝美食，还能买精美礼品送给亲朋好友。

3. 港城人友好且乐于助人，如果你有困难，可以向他们求助。

Would you like to travel in my hometown Lianyungang? Let me introduce my hometown to you. _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基初中系列
点拨 七年级·牛津英语·下（YL版）

Unit 4 过关测试

CP答案见226页

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　密　学号　封　班级　线　学校

一、单项选择（每小题1分,共15分）

1. There is _____ old piano in _____ corner of the living room.
A. an; the　B. an; 不填
C. a; the　D. a; a

2. The painting is _____ the wall _____ the sofa.
A. on; in　B. in; under
C. next; over　D. on; above

3. —Kate, I'm going shopping. Anything to buy for you?
—Yes, that will save me a _____.
A. hand　B. trip
C. visit　D. bill

4. Taiwan lies _____ the east of Fujian, _____ the southeast of China.
A. on; in
B. to; in
C. on; to
D. to; to

5. If you want to walk _____ the road, you must look around before _____ it.
A. across; crossing　B. cross; across
C. cross; crossing　D. across; cross

6. Which of the following maps means "turn left at the second crossing"?
A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 

7. There is no bus now. We _____ take a taxi home.
A. have　B. has　C. have to　D. has to

8. His joke is _____ to make us all _____.
A. enough funny, laugh
B. funny enough, laugh
C. enough funny, to laugh
D. funny enough, to laugh

9. He has _____ homework to do during the summer holiday.
A. a few
B. many
C. plenty
D. plenty of

10. —Is there _____ else in the classroom?
—It is empty(空的). _____ is listening to a speech in the school hall.
A. anyone; Anyone
B. anyone; Everyone
C. everyone; Anyone
D. everyone; Everyone

11. _____ me to read the _____ words.
A. Follow; following
B. Following; follows
C. Follow; follows
D. Following; follow

12. There are some trees _____ the building.
A. at the back
B. in the front of
C. in front of
D. between

13. —Would you please tell me the way to the Pacific Hotel?
—Go _____ the post office, and you'll find it on the left.
A. pass　B. past
C. to past　D. passed

14. Parents _____ put the things like knives and medicine away in the house to keep children safe.
A. may
B. might
C. can
D. should

15. —Excuse me, where's the library?
— _____. I'm new here, too.
—Thank you all the same.
A. Sorry. I don't know
B. That way, please
C. This is the library
D. There it is

二、完形填空（每小题2分,共20分）

Mr Zhang and Mrs Zhang are having a holiday in Rome. It's their first visit to this city. It is sunny today. They are _____[16] in the street now.

When they get to the _____[17], they stop and look around. There are many shops on _____[18] side of the street. Mrs Zhang wants to buy some souvenirs. When the _____[19] light goes on, they walk _____[20] the street and do some shopping in the shops. After that, they are _____[21]. They want to have a big meal, so they ask a local person how to get to the nearest restaurant. The person asks them to _____[22] him because he is going to have a meal, too. On the way, they talk a lot about the city. The local person asks them, "_____[23] don't you take a bus?" They say, "Walking is very interesting." They walk _____[24] the road for about ten minutes and arrive at a small restaurant. The restaurant is small but _____[25]. The food is also very delicious. They enjoy the local food there and become friends after the meal.

16. A. walking　B. running
C. driving　D. riding
17. A. shop　B. restaurant
C. traffic lights　D. hospital
18. A. both　B. others
C. each　D. all
19. A. red　B. green
C. yellow　D. black
20. A. across　B. cross
C. pass　D. through
21. A. quiet　B. worried
C. sad　D. hungry
22. A. stop　B. jump
C. follow　D. report
23. A. What　B. Where
C. Why　D. How
24. A. onto　B. into
C. over　D. along
25. A. large　B. tidy
C. dirty　D. high

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

When we travel, we must pay attention to the road signs. They can help us find the right directions（方向）. If you don't do as the signs tell you, you may be a "fool". Here is a story about this kind of thing.

Mr Black is travelling in his car. He sees a road sign with these words "NO THROUGH WAY. PLEASE GO ANOTHER WAY." He looks ahead and sees nothing wrong at all. He goes on, thinking the sign is a kind of joke. After a while he sees a broken bridge and he has to turn back.

26. What should we pay attention to according to this passage?
A. Broken bridges.
B. Roads.
C. Cars.
D. Road signs.

27. What does the road sign in the passage mean?
A. Take another route.
B. Turn right.
C. Turn left.
D. Go straight on.

28. Why does Mr Black go on driving?
A. Because he sees there is nothing wrong at all.
B. Because the sign tells him so.
C. Because he thinks it is not a joke.
D. Because he wants to see the broken bridge.

29. This story is mainly about _____.
A. Mr Black's car
B. how to find the right directions
C. why road signs are important to people
D. the dangerous broken bridge

30. Which sentence is NOT true?
A. Road signs show us the right directions.
B. Mr Black sees a road sign with some words when he is travelling.
C. Only fools do as the signs say.
D. The sign isn't a joke.

四、根据汉语提示完成单词（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

31. Go _____（在……里面）the house and you will find it is quite beautiful.

32. Some people say there is lots of _____（宝藏）in the hill near the town.

33. A square has four sides and four _____（角）.

34. There is a _____（指示牌）over there. It reads "No parking".

35. —Let's go _____（径直）to the library.
—OK.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. It's _____（danger）for people to use the mobile phone while crossing the street.

37. All the _____（leaf）of the tree will fall when September comes.

38. We are now _____（prepare）food for the party.

39. The _____（bench）in the park are all green.

40. You can ride your bike to school, but remember _____（be）careful.

六、任务型阅读（每小题 3 分，共 15 分）

Happy Time Park	
Place	West of the city
How to get there	Take the No. 16 bus
Opening hours	8:30—16:00 on weekdays 8:00—18:00 at the weekend
Activities	Plant Garden: thousands of plants to see Sports Centre: ball games, rock climbing, swimming and many other fun games to enjoy
Facilities（设施）	Parking places, public toilets, public telephones, barbecue places, hospitals and shopping centres

根据上面的内容完成下面的表格，每空一词

The _____[41] of the park	Happy Time Park.
How to _____[42] to the park	By bus.
Opening time	It's open for seven and a half hours from Monday to Friday and for _____[43] hours at the weekend.
Activities	People can see different kinds of plants and they can _____[44] the rocks, swim and do many other fun games.
Facilities	You can _____[45] your cars here, use the public telephones and have a barbecue in a special place. You can go to see the doctor and also buy things in the shopping centres here.

七、书面表达（20 分）

请以 Suzy 的名义写封 80 词左右的英文信邀请 Lily 参加生日聚会，并告知她到你家的路怎么走。要点如下：

1. 在 Lily 家附近车站乘 2 路车到蓝星（Blue Star）站下车；

2. 沿着北大街（North Street）往前走，在第二个交通灯处向右转弯；

3. 一直往前走，会看到一座桥，走过桥后向左转入公园路（Park Road）；

4. 走过超市，会看见在这条路的尽头就是我的家，我的家在 181 号。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

荣德基初中系列 点拨 七年级·牛津英语·下（YL版）

Unit 5 过关测试

答案见228页

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. Lucy is a _____ driver. She drives the car _____.
A. careful; carefully
B. carefully; careful
C. careful; careful
D. carefully; carefully

2. —Did you _____ the latest iPhone X?
—Yes, my father bought _____ this morning.
A. hear from; it　B. hear of; one
C. hear from; one　D. hear of; it

3. —Excuse me! You can't park your car here. Look at the sign. It _____ "No parking".
—Sorry, I _____ see it.
A. says; didn't
B. writes; don't
C. hears; didn't
D. speaks; wasn't

4. He got up to get some hot water but found there was _____ left in the bottle.
A. a few　B. few
C. a little　D. little

5. There is something on the floor. Would you please _____?
A. pick up it　B. pick up them
C. pick it up　D. pick them up

6. In the Science Museum, the children felt _____ to see so many _____ things.
A. surprised; amazed
B. surprising; amazing
C. surprising; amazed
D. surprised; amazing

7. Yesterday I met Amy _____.
A. on my way home
B. in my way home
C. on my way to home
D. in my way to home

8. —Why aren't you getting ready for your coming trip?
—Don't worry. _____ is ready now.
A. Something　B. Everything
C. Nothing　D. Anything

9. —The bread is really delicious.
—Thank you. I _____ it myself.
A. make　B. made
C. will make　D. am making

10. Daniel is _____ his twin brother. They are both 1.75 metres tall.
A. taller than　B. shorter than
C. as tall as　D. so tall as

11. Lucy, what _____ you yesterday?
A. happening to　B. happened
C. was happened　D. happened to

12. I am _____ afraid of animals _____.
A. no; any more
B. not; more
C. not; any more
D. no; more

13. Did you _____ the story *Snow White* when you were five?
A. heard from　B. hear from
C. heard of　D. hear of

14. I have got used to the life here, and I live as _____ as before.
A. happy　B. happily
C. more happily　D. less happy

15. Earthquakes (地震) always happen _____, so it is difficult to know when they come.
A. early　B. suddenly
C. usually　D. luckily

二、完形填空(每小题2分,共30分)

Tony is a naughty (淘气的) boy. He loves _____[16] his friends ghost stories. His stories always make his friends _____[17].

Tony's friends, Bob and Tom, decide to play a trick _____[18] Tony. They take Tony to Tom's grandfather's house. The house is about 200 _____[19] old and it was a hotel in the past. _____[20] is living there now. Bob and Tom tell Tony that there are ghosts _____[21] in the house. Tony _____[22] believe. He just smiles and says _____[23].

"We are going to fetch you some food. We will be _____[24] soon," Bob and Tom say to Tony. _____[25] that, they go out and leave Tony _____[26] in the sitting room. Tony sits on the sofa and turns on the TV. Suddenly, he _____[27] someone call him. He thinks that must be Bob or Tom. He walks _____[28] the door, but a loud noise makes him stop.

Suddenly, the door closes in front of him. He is very frightened. At this time, two white ghosts jump out. Tony screams and runs away. Bob and Tom _____[29] the white blankets (毯子) and laugh _____[30].

16. A. telling　B. tells
C. told　D. tell
17. A. happy　B. sad
C. unhappy　D. afraid
18. A. with　B. on
C. for　D. of
19. A. year　B. years
C. year's　D. years'
20. A. Nobody　B. Everybody
C. Anybody　D. Somebody
21. A. to live　B. living
C. live　D. lived
22. A. did　B. didn't
C. doesn't　D. don't
23. A. something　B. anything
C. nothing　D. everything
24. A. back　B. return
C. come　D. go
25. A. Before　B. After
C. For　D. So
26. A. alone　B. one
C. two　D. herself
27. A. heard　B. listens
C. listens to　D. hears

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

28. A. out　　B. out of
C. towards　　D. from
29. A. take out　　B. take up
C. take off　　D. take in
30. A. happy　　B. happily
C. unhappy　　D. unhappily

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

The largest animal ever living on Earth is the blue whale（鲸鱼）. It weighs about 80 tons, more than 24 big elephants. It is more than 30 metres long. A newborn blue whale weighs as much as a big elephant.

Cats won't die if they fall from very high places because they can turn themselves in the right way to keep their bodies safe. One cat fell from the 32nd floor of a building onto the street, but it was just hurt a little.

A bear can run as fast as a horse.

A newborn panda is smaller than a mouse and weighs about 100 grams.

Elephants are the most careful animals to show their love. A male（雄性）elephant may show his love for three years until the female（雌性）elephant accepts（接受）his love. They often show their love by touching each other's bodies.

Usually, wolves do not hurt people. A Canadian newspaper once said that they would give someone a lot of money if he or she could show that a wolf could hurt a person. But nobody could do that. Wolves usually do not go together though they may do this in winter, and they only hurt people at an unusual time.

31. How much does a newborn blue whale weigh?
A. About 10 tons.
B. As much as a big elephant.
C. About 80 tons.
D. About 6 tons.
32. A bear can run _____ people think they can.
A. faster than　　B. slower than
C. as fast as　　D. as slowly as
33. A male elephant may not stop _____ until the female elephant accepts his love.
A. fighting with the baby elephant
B. asking the lady elephant to help him
C. showing his love to the female elephant
D. finding food
34. A wolf won't hurt people except _____.
A. in winter
B. at an unusual time
C. in groups
D. when it is happy
35. How many kinds of animals are mentioned in this passage?
A. Five.　B. Six.　C. Seven.　D. Eight.

四、根据汉语提示完成句子（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. We have _____（不多的）rice and we need to buy some.
37. Some people prefer to keep _____（蛇）as pets.
38. Maria is drawing a picture with a piece of _____（粉笔）on the blackboard.

39. I _____（搜索）everywhere but still couldn't find my dog Spotty.
40. Millie often writes to Sandy, and Sandy _____（回复）to her in time, too.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

41. The boy _____（run）away quickly when he saw his father.
42. Man can't live _____（with）air or water.
43. Two weeks _____（late）, he came to see me again.
44. He stopped _____（watch）TV and went out with his parents.
45. The little girl is afraid of _____（walk）outside at night.

六、任务型阅读（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

Class 9 had a great time on the school trip. They went to Blue Water Aquarium（水族馆）for one day.

First they visited the Visitors' Center and watched a movie about sharks. Then they watched a dolphin show. After that, they went to the Outdoor Pool and saw a big octopus（章鱼）. After lunch, they went to the Gift Shop and bought lots of gifts. Finally, tired but happy, they took the bus back to school. At the end of the day, the science teacher was very happy because the class monitor cleaned the bus after the trip.

46. Did the students have a great time on the school trip?
_____
47. Where did they see an octopus?
_____
48. How did they get back to school?
_____
49. When did they go to the Gift Shop and buy lots of gifts?
_____
50. Who cleaned the bus after the trip?
_____

七、书面表达（15 分）

说到蛇，大家可能都认为蛇很可怕，其实不然。汤姆读了一本关于蛇的书之后，对蛇有了全新的认识。根据下面表格中的信息提示写一篇 80 词左右的短文。

以前	现在
害怕蛇	喜欢蛇
蛇都有毒	有的有毒，有的无毒
蛇都是有害的	有的是有益的
见到蛇应该打死	应该保护蛇

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 过关测试

EP答案见229页

限时:60分钟 满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名 学号 班级 学校 密 封 线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. The boy _____ stronger after working on the farm for a week.
A. stayed B. went
C. became D. came

2. —Oh, my God! I _____ you were in Beijing! When did you come?
—I came here five years ago.
A. don't know
B. didn't know
C. haven't known
D. wasn't known

3. My 80-year-old grandpa isn't willing to stay at home _____, because he always feels _____.
A. alone; alone
B. alone; lonely
C. lonely; lonely
D. lonely; alone

4. A bird flew into the kitchen _____ the window.
A. across B. above C. through D. under

5. Don't forget _____ the windows before you leave.
A. to close
B. closing
C. closed
D. close

6. Mr. Zhou is good at cooking and he has decided _____his own restaurant.
A. open B. opened
C. to open D. opening

7. Some students spend _____time on computers.
A. too many
B. many too
C. too much
D. much too

8. He _____down the hole and _____ very sad.
A. fell; feels
B. felt; fell
C. fell; felt
D. felt; felt

9. —Do you often help your sister with her English?
—No. She learns English by _____.
A. himself
B. herself
C. myself
D. yourself

10. When I saw my father _____ for me on a cold winter night, I couldn't keep back my tears.
A. wait B. waited
C. to wait D. waiting

11. A primary school in England has _____ signs at its three entrances (入口), saying: Greet your child with a smile, not a mobile.
A. put into
B. put off
C. put on
D. put up

12. Everyone knows that China is getting _____.
A. strong and strong
B. strongest and strongest
C. stronger and stronger
D. more and more strong

13. —Hurry up! The film is beginning.
—Don't worry. There is still _____ time left.
A. little B. a little
C. a few D. few

14. —Don't you see the sign "No parking!" on the right?
—Sorry, I _____. But now I know parking here is not right.
A. don't B. didn't
C. hadn't D. doesn't

15. On May 22, a *Han* taxi driver _____ an old lady to the hospital as soon as he could in Xinjiang.
A. sent B. sends
C. is sending D. has sent

二、完形填空(每小题2分,共20分)

Once upon a time, there was _____[16] old farmer. He loved money very much. He kept a lot of gold coins (金币) but _____[17] used them; he _____[18] not give them to others. He put them into a _____[19] box and put it in the ground. He came to the _____[20] every day to look at it. This made him happy.

_____[21], when he came to the place, he could not find the black _____[22]. He became very, very sad. He began to cry. _____[23] a man came to him and said, "Don't cry. Put a stone (石头) in the ground instead, and _____[24] of it as a box of gold coins. A stone can be the same _____[25] when the coins were there, you never used them."

16. A. a B. the
C. an D. /
17. A. often B. never
C. nearly D. almost
18. A. did B. could
C. must D. should
19. A. black B. paper
C. blue D. strong
20. A. here B. bag
C. place D. there
21. A. After day B. Sometimes
C. One day D. From then on
22. A. box B. money
C. place D. house
23. A. Because B. Then
C. But D. Or
24. A. say B. let
C. think D. know

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

25. A. so　　B. because
C. and　　D. why

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

Maria lived near a forest. She often played with the animals in the forest. They were all her friends.

One day, Maria walked into the forest to play with her animal friends. But to her surprise, the forest was very quiet and the animals weren't there! Maria hurried back to tell her parents. Her parents returned to the forest with Maria. The forest was still very quiet. But Maria's father noticed a little monkey behind a big tree. The monkey was dying（快要死了）! They tried to save him. But the monkey was too weak. Before he died, the monkey told them the truth（真相）. A ghost wanted to get the forest, so he asked all the animals to go away.

Maria and her parents were very angry. They decided to drive the ghost away. They asked their friends and neighbors to help them. The ghost was strong but the people were stronger. At last, the ghost left and the animals returned to the forest happily.

26. Maria had lots of _____ friends in the forest.
A. boy　　B. girl
C. plant　　D. animal

27. One day the forest was quiet and Maria _____ why.
A. didn't know
B. knew
C. noticed
D. asked the animals

28. The little monkey _____ at last.
A. helped Maria to find other animals
B. walked away
C. died because he was too weak
D. was well again

29. What do the underlined words "drive... away" mean in Chinese?
A. 开车　　B. 离开
C. 赶走　　D. 杀死

30. Who lived in the forest at last?
A. The ghost.
B. The people.
C. The little monkey.
D. The animals.

四、根据汉语提示完成句子（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

31. My dog often runs _____（朝着）me when he sees me back home.

32. The little boy wants to _____（伸手够到）the apple on the table.

33. He became a top student at school over a very short _____（一段时间）of time.

34. _____（野营）is a very interesting outdoor activity.

35. The cake tastes very _____（甜的）. Would you like some?

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. When he got home, he noticed that the door was _____（lock）.

37. People in China began to build the Great Wall over 20 _____（century）ago.

38. What about _____（climb）up the mountain tomorrow?

39. Jim looked sad. He failed _____（pass）the English exam again.

40. They _____（leave）at 8 o'clock and now it's 12 o'clock.

六、补全对话（有两个多余选项）（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

Andy: Look at the photo, Wendy. What a good time I had!

Wendy: Wow, I didn't know you could skate so well. _____[41]

Andy: I learnt it two years ago, with my father.

Wendy: _____[42]

Andy: The speed（速度）. It makes me feel cool. _____[43]

Wendy: I'd like to have a try.

Andy: _____[44]

Wendy: Swimming. _____[45]

Andy: I like swimming, too. It is the best sport in summer.

A. Because water makes me feel cool in summer.
B. When did you learn it?
C. What do you like about skating?
D. What outdoor activity do you like best?
E. Why do you like swimming?
F. Maybe you can try to skate.
G. You are really a great skater.

七、书面表达（25 分）

仔细观察下列四幅图片，展开合理想象，写一篇短文。



要求：1. 词数：100 左右
2. 字迹工整，语法正确，意思连贯，合乎逻辑，可适当发挥。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基 初中系列 点拨 七年级·牛津英语·下（YL版）

Unit 7 过关测试

EP答案见231页

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

一、单项选择（每小题1分,共15分）

1. Does Tom do well _____ Chinese?
A. in　B. at　C. into　D. with

2. It was _____ of you to save the boy from the river.
A. honest　B. polite
C. serious　D. brave

3. Can you send the letter _____ my parents for me?
A. to　B. in　C. into　D. up

4. _____! It's dangerous over there.
A. Look over　B. Look at
C. Look out　D. Look up

5. Lucy could read storybooks at the age of four.
A. is able to　B. was able to
C. should　D. would

6. Anyone who is good at singing can _____ the activity in our school.
A. take part in　B. take off
C. take out　D. take care of

7. We'll have a show to _____ money for poor children.
A. raise　B. raises
C. rise　D. rises

8. —How can we protect ourselves _____ the earthquake?
—We should stay calm first.
A. with　B. about
C. for　D. from

9. — _____ fresh air it is now!
—Yes. _____ go out for a walk.
A. How ; Let
B. What a; Let's
C. What; Let's
D. How; Let us

10. Look, little Jim is swimming so fast. I _____ believe my eyes.
A. shouldn't　B. can't
C. mustn't　D. needn't

11. I love my cousin very much. He is a lovely _____ boy.
A. 8-years-old　B. 8 years old
C. 8-year-old　D. 8 year old

12. Bob, dinner is ready. Please wash your hands _____ you eat.
A. until　B. after
C. while　D. before

13. He could play the violin when he was five.
A. at the age of five
B. five years later
C. for five years
D. five years age

14. Can you hear someone _____ in the classroom? It is Mary.
A. sing　B. sings　C. singing　D. sang

15. —Could you help me repair the bike?
— _____. Come and get it in half an hour.
A. Not at all
B. No problem
C. I'm sorry I can't
D. Thank you

二、完形填空（每小题2分,共30分）

Dear Mr Zhang,

I would like to recommend Tao Lei _____[16] this year's Youth Award.

Tao Lei is _____[17] boy. He often helps clean the classroom and _____[18] many other things after class. He is very good at swimming. _____[19] he teaches other students to swim. He is also a _____[20] of the Helping Hands Club, and he spends a lot of time _____[21] others.

Tao Lei is very _____[22], and he works very hard at school. He does well _____[23] every subject. Every student in the class _____[24] him very much.

He is very kind and brave. Last month, when he was on his way _____[25], he heard a boy _____[26] for help from a river. He quickly jumped into the river and _____[27] his best to save that _____[28] boy.

We will be very happy if Tao Lei can _____[29] the award. We look forward to _____[30] you soon.

Yours faithfully,
Wang Wei

16. A. for　B. with　C. as　D. like
17. A. a helpful　B. helpful
C. a help　D. help
18. A. play　B. spend
C. do　D. drive
19. A. Sometime　B. Some time
C. Some times　D. Sometimes
20. A. member　B. student
C. teacher　D. player
21. A. help　B. helping
C. to help　D. helps
22. A. care　B. careful
C. carefully　D. careless
23. A. in　B. at　C. with　D. on
24. A. like　B. likes
C. liked　D. liking
25. A. home　B. to home
C. at home　D. the home
26. A. cry　B. cries
C. cried　D. crying
27. A. do　B. does
C. did　D. is doing
28. A. five years old　B. five-years-old
C. five-year old　D. five-year-old
29. A. has　B. have
C. had　D. having
30. A. hear　B. hear from
C. hears from　D. hearing from

三、阅读理解（每小题2分,共10分）

Last Thursday, a brave young woman saved an elderly man from a burning house on Garden Road. The young woman's name is Kitty and she works in a clothes shop. The elderly man, Daniel, lives just opposite the clothes shop. On Thursday afternoon, Kitty looked out of the window. She saw some smoke coming from Daniel's house and she rushed over to see what was happening. The house was on fire and Daniel was inside. Kitty quickly used the telephone to call the firemen on 911. Then, she ran into the house to save Daniel. She found Daniel in his bedroom and he was very frightened. Kitty helped Daniel out. Five minutes later the firemen arrived and they put out the fire. No one was hurt.

The next day, Daniel said, "Kitty is very brave. She saved my life. I am so grateful. I think she should win an award for her bravery." Daniel also said, "In the future, I

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

will be more careful. I don't want another fire in my house!"

31. Kitty saved _____ from a burning house.
A. a young man　B. an old woman
C. an old man　D. a young woman

32. Where is the clothes shop?
A. Beside Daniel's house.
B. Behind Daniel's house.
C. Opposite Daniel's house.
D. Next to Daniel's house.

33. The number to call the firemen in the story is _____.
A. eight nine nine　B. one one nine
C. nine eight eight　D. nine one one

34. _____ was/were hurt in the fire.
A. No one　B. Two people
C. Four people　D. Seven people

35. In the future, Daniel will be more _____.
A. grateful　B. careful
C. careless　D. helpful

四、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. A black dog _____（冲）into my kitchen yesterday.

37. Lin Tao saw a lot of _____（烟）from next door.

38. Who will be your new teacher next _____（学期）?

39. —What is your father doing?
—He is reading _____（报纸）.

40. You should be _____（勇敢的）enough to face your life.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

41. Helping others is helping ourselves, so we should do our best _____（help）those in need.

42. We should work hard and improve our listening, speaking, reading and writing _____（ability）.

43. The boy fell off his bike on his way home. Luckily, he wasn't _____（bad）hurt.

44. I _____（can）sing English songs when I was four years old.

45. I am looking forward to _____（hear）from Lucy.

六、任务型阅读（每小题 1 分，共 10 分）

It's good for a family to learn how to prepare for a fire. Here are some suggestions:

Put a smoke alarm in the house. If there is smoke from a fire, the alarm will make a loud sound. The sound tells everyone to run out of the house at once.

Make escape（逃跑）plans. They should know all the ways out of the house. If there is a fire, everyone follows the plan to get out.

Buy fire extinguishers（灭火器）in the house. Everyone in the family should learn to use them correctly.

Practise for a fire. Everyone in the family should know the following fire rules:

* Don't open a hot door! The fire can grow more quickly when opening the door.

* Stay close to the floor! The best air is near the floor because smoke rises（上升）.

* What will you do if your hair or clothes start to burn? First, stop! Don't run! The fire burns faster because of more air. Drop! Fall to the floor. Then roll（滚）! Turning over and over will make the fire go out. Put a blanket around you to keep air away from the fire.

Title: Be _____[46] for a Fire	
Suggestions	Details（细节）
Put a smoke alarm	If a fire _____[47], the alarm will make a loud sound to tell everyone to _____[48] the house at once.
Make escape plans	People should know all the ways out of the house and _____[49] the plan to get out if there is a fire.
Buy fire extinguishers	Everyone in the family should know _____[50] to use them.
Practise for a fire	Don't open a hot door: The fire can grow more quickly if you _____[51] the door.
	Stay close to the floor: You cam breathe（呼吸）the _____[52] air near the floor because smoke rises
	Stop!: ★If you _____[53], the fire burns faster because of more air.
	Drop! Roll!: ★_____[54] over and over, and you will make the fire go out. ★Put a _____[55] around you to keep air away from the fire.

七、书面表达（15 分）

假如你是三年级一班的王林，你所在学校的“爱心俱乐部（Helping Hands Club）”将吸收新会员，你想加入该俱乐部。请根据下面表格和图示信息，用英语写一封自荐信。

本人特点：身体健康；学习刻苦；乐于助人；与同学相处友好
平时表现（见图片）
加入目的……（写出两点）


(A)


(B)


(C)


(D)

要求：

1. 表达清楚，语句通顺，意思连贯；

2. 要点须包括表格和四幅图片中的提示信息；

3. 表格中“加入目的”一栏内容自拟；

4. 词数：80 左右。信的开头与结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear Chairman,

I am a boy student from Class 1, Grade 3. I'd like to be a member of the Helping Hands Club. _____

Yours,
Wang Lin

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基初中系列
点拨 七年级·牛津英语·下（YL版）

Unit 8 过关测试

EP答案见232页

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　密　学号　封　班级　线　学校

一、单项选择（每小题1分,共15分）

1. Ann is a _____ girl because she often leaves books at home.
A. lazy　B. brave
C. careless　D. friendly

2. Don't read _____. It's bad _____ your eyes.
A. in the sun; at
B. under the sun; at
C. in the sun; for
D. under the sun; for

3. —Do you agree _____ my plan?
—Yes, it is wonderful.
A. in　B. with　C. of　D. about

4. You took a lot of photos. Please _____ them here tomorrow. I want to have a look.
A. bring　B. take
C. to take　D. to bring

5. —Dad, could you please teach _____ English?
—Sure! But it's more important to learn it by _____.
A. my; yourself　B. my; you
C. me; you　D. me; yourself

6. When I _____ , I'm going to help others more.
A. get up　B. pick up
C. grow up　D. put up

7. The baby girl _____ 4.5 kg at birth so people called her Jiujin girl.
A. weigh　B. weighed
C. weight　D. weights

8. The little girl didn't stop crying _____ she found her mother.
A. after　B. till
C. because　D. when

9. The boy is making so much _____. How _____ he is!
A. noise; noise
B. noise; noisy
C. noisy; noisily
D. noise; noisily

10. —There is _____ in Tina's WeChat shop.
—So that's why I decide to buy the present in _____ shop.
A. something special; other
B. special something; the other
C. nothing special; another
D. special nothing; others

11. Grandmother lives with my parents. They _____ her every day.
A. look at　B. look after
C. look for　D. look around

12. —Why are you so tired these days?
—Well, I have _____ homework to do.
A. too much　B. too many
C. much too　D. many too

13. While I was walking along the lake, I saw some fish _____ out of the water.
A. jumped　B. to jump
C. jumping　D. are jumping

14. —Morning, class. Is _____ here today?
—No, sir. Tom is ill at home.
A. anybody
B. everybody
C. nobody
D. somebody

15. —Don't make any noise in the living room! My baby is sleeping.
—_____.
A. Sorry, I won't
B. It doesn't matter
C. I don't agree
D. You're welcome

二、完形填空（每小题2分,共20分）

Mr and Mrs Brown wanted to go to London for their holiday. They had a pet dog called Blackie. They liked him very much, but they could not take him _____[16] them. So they looked for a good place to leave him when they were _____[17] and at last they _____[18] a place where people looked after dogs _____[19]. They took Blackie there _____[20] they left for their holiday. They said _____[21] to him. When they came back from their trip, it was very late at night. They thought the place was _____[22] at that time. They waited _____[23] the next morning before going to get him.

When they reached home with the dog, Mr Brown said to his wife, "Do you know, dear? I don't think Blackie _____[24] his stay at that place very much. He barked all the way home. He wanted to tell me something."

Mrs Brown looked at the dog _____[25] and then answered, "You're quite right, dear. He wanted to tell you something. It is not Blackie!"

16. A. away　B. to
C. from　D. with

17. A. away　B. from
C. here　D. for

18. A. looked　B. looked for
C. found　D. left

19. A. very good
B. very well
C. very much
D. much more

20. A. after　B. before
C. until　D. behind

21. A. hello　B. welcome
C. thanks　D. goodbye

22. A. open　B. opened
C. close　D. closed

23. A. until　B. for
C. at　D. in

24. A. wanted　B. would like
C. enjoyed　D. will

25. A. care　B. careful
C. carefully　D. carelessly

三、阅读理解（每小题2分,共10分）

There are many different kinds of parrots. Some are quite big.

Others are small. Many people like them because they often have beautiful colours, and because they can "talk".

No one knows why parrots can talk. Most birds cannot talk. Some people say that parrots can talk because they have big, thick (厚的) tongues (舌头). But some other birds that can talk do not have big, thick tongues, and some birds that cannot talk have big, thick tongues.

Parrots do not usually know what they

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

are saying when they talk. They are only making sounds. However, they know when to say some words, such as "Hello" and "Goodbye", and they usually know and can say people's names. Most parrots come from hot countries, but they can live anywhere.

26. People like parrots, because _____.
A. they often have beautiful colours
B. they can "talk"
C. they can dance
D. A and B

27. Can all the birds talk?
A. Yes, all of them can.
B. No, most birds can't talk.
C. No, only big ones can talk.
D. No, only small ones can talk.

28. Some people say parrots can talk because _____.
A. they like talking
B. they like people
C. they have big, thick tongues
D. they have mouths

29. Do the parrots usually know what they are saying when they talk?
A. Yes, they do.
B. No, they don't.
C. Sometimes they do.
D. They usually do.

30. What kind of words do parrots usually say?
A. "Hello" and "Goodbye".
B. Some people's names.
C. Hot countries.
D. A and B.

四、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子（每小题 1 分，共 7 分）

31. There is a bookshop at the _____（尽头）of the road.
32. When he knew that Jack came first in the competition, he opened his mouth _____（充分地）.
33. Don't _____（打架）with others.
34. I can help you if you have any _____（麻烦）.
35. Millie has a pet dog. She _____（刷）her dog's fur every day.
36. There are many apples in the _____（篮子）.
37. She _____（握着）her son's hands and looked at him happily.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 1 分，共 8 分）

38. I want to be a _____（teach）when I grow up.
39. My sister didn't go _____（somewhere）last weekend.
40. People _____（build）a bridge over the river two years ago.
41. We all think this is the _____（clever）parrot of all.
42. My parrot is good at _____（repeat）my words.
43. There are two small _____（mouse）in that box.
44. She often puts her dog on her lap and _____（feed）it.
45. I didn't hear the phone because it was too _____（noise）in the supermarket.

六、任务型阅读（每小题 2 分，共 20 分）

Do you want to keep a pet goldfish? First you need to know how to keep it.

Get a fishbowl

First get a fishbowl. Make sure the fishbowl is not too small. It can make the goldfish swim in freely（自由地）. You should keep the fishbowl clean. Don't clean the fishbowl with soap（肥皂）. Hot water will clean it well.

Feed a goldfish

Goldfish eat almost any food. And you can also buy some special food for your goldfish in shops. Do not feed it too much food. Feed it as much as it can eat in three minutes one time.

Keep the water clean

Dirty water is not good for the health of the goldfish. If the water is dirty, the goldfish will easily get ill and may die（死）. Change 25% of the water at least once a week. Never change all of the water because it has something that your goldfish needs.

As you can see, keeping goldfish as pets is not difficult.

Title: _____[46] to keep a pet goldfish	
_____[47] to do	Details（细节）
Get a fishbowl	The fishbowl should be large _____[48] for the goldfish to swim in. You can use hot water to keep the fishbowl _____[49].
Feed a goldfish	Goldfish can eat almost any _____[50]. You can also buy some _____[51] food for it in shops. Never feed it too much food.
Keep the water clean	If the water isn't clean: it will be _____[52] for the health of the goldfish. / it will get ill easily and _____[53] die.
	You can change 25% of the water at least _____[54] a week. Remember not to _____[55] all the water because there is something that your goldfish needs in the water.

七、书面表达（20 分）

假如你是李华，你的朋友詹妮想向你了解一下你的宠物猫的情况，现在请你给她发一封电子邮件，词数在 80 左右。

提示：描写猫的外貌、习性，与猫之间的感情等。

Dear Jenny,

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Yours,
Li Hua

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

过关测试

▶Unit 1 过关测试

请通过 www.rudder.com.cn 下载
获取听力材料及答案

一、**1**. C　**点拨**：表泛指用不定冠词 a 或 an，old 以元音音素开头，故用 an；the capital of 为固定搭配，意为“……的首都”。故选 C。

2. C

3. D　**点拨**：**寻找题眼法**。表示“……的面积”应用 the area of …。square feet 平方英尺。

4. A　**点拨**：由语境可知是要与对方共用同一本书，即是分享，所以选 A。

5. B　**点拨**：本题用**词义辨析法**。句意：——打扰一下，我想要些书，但是在这儿我找不到书店。——我知道在我回家的路上有一个，请跟我来。this 这个；one 一个；it 它；that 那个。此处没有特指哪一个，只是说有一个书店。故选 B。

6. D　**点拨**：本题考查 own 的用法。own 是形容词，意为“自己的”，修饰名词，常与形容词性物主代词连用，并置于形容词性物主代词后，强调“某人自己的”。　**7**. B

8. C　**点拨**：句意：——劳驾，玛丽。你会用英语读“198”吗？——是的，当然了。_____。分析数字可知：百位数和十位数之间要加 and，十位数和个位数之间要加连字符。故选 C。

9. D　**点拨**：句意：我的祖父母居住在五层的旧公寓里，他们在三楼。第一空表示数量，故用基数词 five；第二空表示次序用序数词，on the third floor 意为“在三楼”。故选 D。

10. A　**11**. D

12. C　**点拨**：句意：现在，无数的农民离开他们的家乡去城市寻找工作。表示不确切的数目时，在 million，thousand 或 hundred 后加 s，和 of 连用，在 million，thousand 或 hundred 前有具体数词时不用复数，也不和 of 连用，直接修饰名词复数形式。故选 C。

13. C　**点拨**：固定句型“Would you like to …?”表示询问，肯定回答用“Yes，I'd love to.”。

14. D　**点拨**：**交际法**。考查电话用语。电话中的“我”用 this，This is …speaking. 意为“我是……”。

15. B　**点拨**：**交际法**。A 项（我不认为这样）；C 项（那非常奇怪）和 D 项（你应该试一试）均不符合语境。故选 B。

二、**16**. B　**点拨**：**联系上下文法**。根据下文可知，这篇短文向我们介绍了美国学校的一些情况，故选 B。

17. D　**点拨**：月份前应该用介词 in。

18. C　**点拨**：**联系上下文法**。根据上文可知，九月份开学，应该在暑假之后，故选 C。

19. A　**点拨**：根据后面语境可知，美国学校一学年有两个学期。故选 A。

20. D　**点拨**：**联系上下文法**。根据两个学期的月份跨度可知是一学年。故选 D。

21. C　**22**. C

23. A　**点拨**：children 是可数名词复数。much 只能修饰不可数名词，C 和 D 是错误选项。故选 A。

24. B　**点拨**：**固定短语法**。固定短语 go to school 意为“去上学”。

25. D　**点拨**：美国高中生每学期只学五门或者六门学科，故用 or。　**26**. B

27. D　**点拨**：money 为不可数名词，故只能在 C 或 D 选项中选择一个。根据下文得知美国的好多大学生放学后要打工挣钱交学费，可推断上学要交很多钱。故选 D。　**28**. C

29. A　**30**. B

三、**31**. D　**点拨**：细节理解题。由 I'd like to live in a large flat on a busy street. 可知。　**32**. B

33. C　**点拨**：细节理解题。由 We have a big dining room and a nice kitchen. 和 We also have a gym. 可知。

34. C　**点拨**：词义猜测题。由 he can cook different foods for us 可推知。

35. B　**点拨**：细节理解题。由 My grandparents，my parents，my three sisters，my brother and I live in the house. 可知。

四、**36**. beach　**37**. full　**38**. studies

39. palace　**40**. thousand

五、**41**. knives　**42**. twelfth　**43**. to grow

44. sharing　**45**. countries

六、**46**. Paris.

47. People usually read books when they are in the subway.

48. No，they aren't.　**点拨**：由短文的第二段第一句可知。

49. We can buy clothes，caps and shoes.　**点拨**：由短文的第二段可知。

50. They often play the violin or guitar in the subway.　**点拨**：根据短文第三段内容可知。

七、**范文**：

My Dream Home

I have a dream home in my heart. Now let me tell you something about it.

My dream home is a big house with a small garden in the country. It has two floors. On the first floor there is a bathroom，a kitchen and a sitting room. On the second floor there are three bedrooms，a living room and a study. There is a lake near my house，too. We can swim and fish there.

How beautiful my dream home is! I love it very much.

点评：本文采用“三步法”描写梦想的家。第一步：开篇点题（第一段）；第二步：具体描述梦想的家（第二段）——big，in the country，has two floors，…；第三步：抒发情感，表达感受（第三段）。

添彩点：作者先用 with 引出这是一个带有花园的大房子，又正确使用所学 there be 句型介绍家的主体布局，再用 near 告知附近有个湖，描述具体形象，给人身临其境的感觉；感叹句 How beautiful my dream home is! 感情真挚，语气坚定有力。

▶Unit 2 过关测试

一、**1**. C　**点拨**：句意：史密斯夫人住在我们旁边。她真是一个好的_____因为她总是乐于帮助她周围的人。根据句意可知道选择 neighbour“邻居”，故选 C。

2. D　**3**. C

4. A　**点拨**：考查交际用语。句意：——我们这周末去野餐好吗？——_____。A. 听起来很好 B. 不客气 C. 你是对的 D. 很遗憾 Shall we…？为表示建议的句型，是想得到别人的同意，根据选项，故选 A。

5. B　**点拨**：本题考查词义辨析。above 表示“在上方”；below 表示“在下方或低于某物”；over 表示“正上方”；under 表示“正下方”，由语境可知选 B。

6. A　**点拨**：本题用**交际法**。句意：——大多数八零后有几个孩子？——一个。我猜未来他们会有两个。由时间状语 in the future 可判断，本句用一般将来时态，故选 A。

7. A　**点拨**：本题用**交际法**。句意：——妈妈，我明天要参加一个重要的考试。——别紧张，桑迪。好运！Good luck! 好运！Good idea! 好主意！Well done! 做得好！Have a good time! 玩得高兴！Good luck! 更符合题意，答案：A。

8. B　**点拨**：本题考查 job 与 work 的区别。job 指具体的某项工作，是可数名词；work 泛指工作，为不可数名词，所以选 B。　**9**. D

10. A　**点拨**：本题用**词语应用法**。固定结构：make sb. do sth.“使某人做某事”，故选 A。

11. C　**点拨**：本题考查词义辨析。fix 修理；look 看；check 检查；see 看见。由语境可知是完成试卷之后一定要检查，所以选 C。

12. A

13. C　**点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。句意：在未来的十年里，在天水将会有巨大的变化。本句为 There be 句型。结合句中的时间状语“in next ten years”可知；要用 There be 句型的将来时 There will be 或 There is/ are going to be。故选 C。

14. C　**点拨**：本题用**词语应用法**。by plane 固定短语“乘飞机”，故选 C。　**15**. A

二、**16**. C　**点拨**：thank you for 意为“为……谢谢你”。

17. D　**点拨**：由语境可知本句用一般过去时，排除 A、B 两项。enjoy doing sth. 为固定搭配。

18. D　**点拨**：would like to do sth. 意为“想要做某事”。　**19**. D

20. A　**点拨**：此处表示“你可以用他的房间”。use 用；borrow 借；stay 呆在，后接宾语时要加介词；live 住，后接宾语时要加介词。

21. A　**点拨**：本句为祈使句。否定形式用 don't。　**22**. B

23. C　**点拨**：“某处有某物”用 there be 句式，因后面的主语为单数，故用 there is。

24. C　**点拨**：sure 为形容词，故前面用系动词。

25. B　**点拨**：say hello to sb. 意为“向某人问好”。

三、**26**～**30**：ABBAD

四、**31**. postmen　**32**. information

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

33. engineers' 34. elder 35. communities
五、36. helpful 37. lucky 38. better
39. artists **点拨**:前文的主语"卉白石"提示下文用 artist 表示"画家",又因为 one of 后面要用复数名词,故答案为 artists。
40. shopping
六、41. Most of us; by bus 42. is broken; fix
43. have problems; ready to
44. making a fire 45. all kinds of
七、46. Grade 47. kind 48. friends
49. happy 50. problems 51. best
52. listen 53. help 54. solve 55. make
八、**范文**:

My penfriend, Lily lives in a neighbourhood with a community centre. There are some volunteers in the centre. They are very helpful. They can help people with all kinds of problems. You can ask them for help when you have problems. For example, if there's something wrong with your fridge or your computer, you can go to the centre and find someone to help you. They are ready to help people in need. All the people there feel very happy.

点评:作者运用"总分总法"描写了社区生活。1. 总体介绍社区生活(第一句);2. 分别介绍社区生活特点(第二至七句:volunteers, helpful, help people with ..., ... if ..., ... go ... and find someone to help you. They are ready to help people in need.);3. 总结评价,表达感受(第八句)。

添彩点:作者恰当使用了本单元所学的一些重要单词和短语 helpful, help ... with, all kinds of, be ready to 等,做到了学以致用;含 when 引导的时间状语从句和 if 引导的条件状语从句的复合句等高级句式的运用,使文章句式多变,语言畅通,内容饱满。

▶Unit 3 过关测试

一、1. B **点拨**:考查物主代词及名词所有格。句意:——汤姆,这些书是你的吗?——不,它们是珍妮的。我的在那个书架上。结合第一句句意,可知在 B、D 之间选择;根据第二空后无名词,可知用名词所有格的形式,故选 B。
2. B 3. B 4. C
5. D **点拨**:本题考查建议句型 Why not do sth.? /Why don't you do sth.? 意为"为什么不做某事?"。故选 D。
6. B **点拨**:考查不定代词。句意:他如此生气以至于他什么都说不出来。anything 任何事情;nothing 没有事情;something 一些事情;everything,每件事情。故选 B。
7. B **点拨**:smell 是系动词,后面接形容词作表语,排除 A、D 两项,又由答语可知肉做得好,所以选 B。 8. D
9. C **点拨**:本题考查 look forward to 的用法。其后接动词时要用动词的-ing 形式,所以选 C。
10. A **点拨**:本题用词义辨析法。句意为:快点,不然你就赶不上早班车了。miss 错过;leave 离开;see 看见;watch 观看。根据句意应选 A。
11. D **点拨**:本题考查疑问词组辨析。how long "多长,多久",对物体的长短、时间的长短进行提问;how many "多少",对可数名词的数量进行提问;how much "多少",对不可数名词的数量进行提问;how far "多远",对距离进行提问,由语境可知选 D。
12. A **点拨**:表示范围内的另外一些人用 the other + 名词。
13. A **点拨**:本题用交际法。句意:——我们做个生日蛋糕作为蒂娜的生日礼物好吗?——好主意。那会给她一个大大的惊喜。Good idea 好主意;It's a pity 真遗憾;You're welcome 不用谢;Never mind 不要紧。根据句意可知选 A。 14. B
15. A **点拨**:It takes/took sb. some time to do sth. 花费某人一些时间做某事。故选 A。
二、16. A **点拨**:本题用联系上下文法。根据上下文可知作者的心情是高兴的。
17. A **点拨**:go with sb. 意为"和某人一起去"。
18. D **点拨**:本题用联系上下文法。下文所述均为旅行的内容,上文也有"have a trip to Nanjing",所以不是谈论旅游路线,故此处为 trip,this trip to Nanjing 意为"这次去南京的旅行"。
19. D **点拨**:表示"和……一起"要用介词 with。
20. A **点拨**:本题用联系上下文法。根据上下文内容可知是在学校大门口集合。表示"集合"要用 meet。
21. C **点拨**:take a coach 乘坐长途汽车,故选 C。
22. A **点拨**:本题用词义辨析法。句意为:那之后我们将爬紫金山。climb 爬;walk 步行;take 拿,取;come 来。根据句意应选 A。
23. C **点拨**:本题考查句型 It takes sb. some time to do sth. 意为"做某事花费某人一些时间。"故选 C。
24. A **点拨**:本题用词义辨析法。句意为:那儿的空气很新鲜。air 空气;ear 耳朵;place 地方;mountain 山。
25. B **点拨**:本题用联系上下文法。根据前后句意理解,可知用 enjoy。
26. B **点拨**:go boating 去划船。
27. C **点拨**:本题考查"one of + the + 形容词最高级 + 名词复数"结构,句意为"它是南京最美的湖之一。"故选 C。
28. A **点拨**:联系上下文法。由上文可知,应该是"那之后我们将回学校"。 29. B
30. A **点拨**:本题用联系上下文法。由上文内容可知,应该是非常激动。人作主语时,用-ed形容词。
三、31. A **点拨**:根据文中 Here, you can enjoy a lot of different activities from 9:00 a.m. to 9:00 p.m. 可判断出答案。
32. D **点拨**:本题用推理判断法。根据文中原文 The time for swimming is from nine o'clock to half past eleven in the morning and two to six o'clock in the afternoon. 可判断出答案。
33. B **点拨**:根据文中原文 Most of our club members love the swimming pool because it is Olympic-sized. 可判断出答案。 34. C
35. C **点拨**:本题用推理判断法。根据文中原文 By the way, you only need to pay $200 to join our club, and then you can do sports here for one month at any time. 可判断出答案。
四、36. around 37. order 38. quiet
39. works 40. famous
五、41. Children's 42. Western 43. to grow
44. friendly 45. keys
六、46. visit 47. wonderful 48. come
49. works 50. lunch 51. what 52. shopping
53. buy 54. After 55. soon
七、**范文**:

Would you like to travel in my hometown Lianyungang? Let me introduce my hometown to you.

Lianyungang is a city near the sea with beautiful sights and nice weather. Every year, thousands of people come to visit it. You can go climbing, go swimming, taste delicious food and buy some nice presents for your friends and relatives. People here are friendly and helpful. If you have anything difficult, you can ask them for help.

You will have lots of fun here. And your visit will surely be unforgettable.

点评:本文运用了"三部曲法"介绍了家乡连云港。一:确定介绍对象(第一段);二:主要优势介绍(第二段)——景色:beautiful sights;天气:nice weather;娱乐:go climbing, go swimming;食物:delicious food;购物:nice presents;家乡人:friendly and helpful;三:表达美好祝愿(第三段)。

添彩点:1. 作者运用 thousands of, go climbing, go swimming, friendly and helpful, lots of 等短语介绍家乡特色景观及人文背景,语言丰富,内容充实。

2. Lianyungang is a city ... 一句中运用了 with 短语,If you have anything difficult ...一句中含有 if 条件状语从句,这些复杂结构和句式的巧妙运用,显示出作者的语言运用能力。

▶Unit 4 过关测试

一、1. A **点拨**:句意:在客厅的角落里有一架旧钢琴。old 是元音音素开头的单词,其前应该使用不定冠词 an;后空表示"在客厅的角落里"使用词组 in the corner of。故选 A。
2. D **点拨**:画在墙上要用介词 on,而表示画在沙发上方时用 above(不一定是垂直的关系),所以选 D。
3. B **点拨**:句意:——凯特,我要去买东西。要

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

给你买点东西吗？——好的。那将帮我省一趟腿。hand"手",give me a hand"帮助我";trip"(短途)旅行",save me a trip"帮助我省了一趟腿";visit"拜访";bill"账单";根据句意,故选 B。 **4.** B

5. A **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。walk 后应跟介词 across,意为"穿过……";before 为介词,后跟动词的-ing 形式。故选 A。

6. A **点拨**:根据指路规则确定答案。 **7.** C

8. B **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:他的笑话足够搞笑,惹得我们都大笑起来。enough 在这里用作副词,意为"足够地",可修饰形容词或副词,要放在所修饰的形容词或副词之后,故第一个空格用 funny enough。使役动词 make 后跟不定式作宾语补足语要省去不定式符号 to,即 make sb. do sth. 意为"让某人做某事",故第二个空格用 laugh。故选 B。

9. D **点拨**:本题用**寻找题眼法**。homework 为不可数名词,plenty 修饰名词时后要加介词 of,故选 D。

10. B **点拨**:句意:——教室里还有其他人吗?——它是空的。每人都在学校礼堂听演讲。anyone 意为"任何人",用于一般疑问句或否定句中,先排除选项 C 和 D;又根据答语中"教室是空的"可知,大家都在听演讲,everyone 意为"每人",故选 B。

11. A **点拨**:由题意可知,本题考查的是祈使句,故排除 B、D 项;第二空格后为名词,前面应用形容词,排除 C。故选 A。 **12.** C

13. B **点拨**:四个选项中只有 past 为介词,可以与 go 连用接地点名词,所以选 B。

14. D **点拨**:本题用**语法判断法**。句意:父母在家中应该把像刀和药之类的东西收拾好以保证孩子们的安全。may 可能;might 可能;can 能;should 应该。所以选 D。

15. A **点拨**:本题用**交际法**。根据回答"I'm new here, too."我也是新来这儿的。及"Thank you all the same."还是感谢你。可知回答者也不知道图书馆在哪里。故选 A。

二、**16.** A **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。根据文章后面的"Walking is very interesting."可推断出正确答案。

17. C **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。根据后半句 they stop and look around 可推断出正确答案。

18. C **点拨**:本题用**寻找题眼法**。根据名词 side 可确定要用 each。

19. B **点拨**:根据句意可知这里指交通灯变成了绿色。

20. A **点拨**:表示"过马路"要用 walk across the street。

21. D **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。根据后面 They want to have a big meal …可知答案。

22. C **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。根据 because he is going to have a meal, too 可知答案。

23. C **点拨**:此句为固定句式 Why don't you do sth.?"为什么不做某事?"。

24. D **点拨**:表示"沿着路走"要用 walk along the road。

25. B **点拨**:本题用**推理判断法**。根据 but 可推断出答案。

三、**26.** D **点拨**:细节理解题。根据"When we travel, we must pay attention to the road signs."可判断出答案。

27. A **点拨**:推理判断题。根据"NO THROUGH WAY. PLEASE GO ANOTHER WAY."可判断出答案。

28. A

29. C **点拨**:归纳推理题。由第一段中…we must pay attention to the road signs. 和第二段中 He sees a road sign …可知两段谈的都是道路标志。因此本故事主要是关于道路标志的重要性的。因此选 C。

30. C **点拨**:直接判断题。根据文章内容可判断出答案。

四、**31.** inside **32.** treasure **33.** corners

34. sign **35.** straight

五、**36.** dangerous **37.** leaves **38.** preparing

39. benches **40.** to be

六、**41.** name **42.** get **43.** ten

44. climb **45.** park

七、**范文**:

Dear Lily,

I hope you can come to my birthday party this Saturday.

You can take the No. 2 bus and get off at the Blue Star bus stop. Walk along North Street. Turn right at the second traffic lights. Walk straight on, and you will see a bridge. Go across the bridge and turn left into Park Road. Walk past the supermarket, and you will see my house at the end of the road. My house is at No. 181, Park Road.

I'm looking forward to seeing you at the party.

Yours,

Suzy

点评:作者运用"TWG 法"指示方向。T:take the No. 2 bus, turn right at …, turn left into …;W:walk along North Street, walk straight on, walk past the supermarket;G: go across the bridge,等。

添彩点:作者思路清晰,紧紧抓住关键词汇 turn …, go …, walk …, 对既定路线进行指引说明,指导语简洁有力,语言流畅,用语准确得体。

▶Unit 5 过关测试

一、**1.** A **2.** B **3.** A

4. D **点拨**:句意:他起身去找一些热水,但发现瓶子里几乎没剩下多少。前文不可数名词 water 提示用 little 和 a little 来修饰;but 表示转折提示用 little,表示否定意义。故选 D。

5. C **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。something 应该用代词 it 来代替;代词 it 作 pick up 的宾语时,必须放在 up 前面,故选 C。

6. D **点拨**:-ed 形容词多用于描述人的感受,而-ing 形容词则多用于描述事物,故选 D。

7. A **点拨**:on one's way home 意为"在某人回家的路上"。 **8.** B

9. B **点拨**:句意:——这面包真的很可口。——谢谢。我自己做的。根据语境知,"做面包"的动作发生在过去,应用一般过去时态。故选 B。 **10.** C

11. D **点拨**:表示"某人发生什么事"要用 sth. happen(s) to sb.,且时间状语为 yesterday,要用一般过去时。故选 D。

12. C **点拨**:not… any more = no more "不再……",所以选 C。

13. D **点拨**:hear from"收到……来信";hear of"听说",根据语境可排除 A、B 项,一般疑问句已有助动词,所以谓语动词用原形,故选 D。

14. B **点拨**:as… as 中间加形容词或副词的原级,此处修饰动词 live,故选 B。 **15.** B

二、**16.** A **点拨**:love doing sth."喜爱做某事"。

17. D **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。根据前句中 ghost stories 鬼故事,可知应用形容词 afraid。

18. B **点拨**:play a trick on sb. 意为"捉弄某人"。故选 B。

19. B **点拨**:数词 + years old 意为"……岁"。

20. A **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。由上下文可知,此房子现在无人居住。

21. B

22. C **点拨**:根据文章时态为一般现在时且 Tony 为单数,可知要借助于助动词 does。

23. C **点拨**:本题用**寻找题眼法**。由句中的 just 可知,他只是微笑,什么也没说。

24. A **点拨**:由空格前 be 可知应填 back。

25. B **点拨**:表示"在……以后"要用介词 after。

26. A **点拨**:leave Tony alone 意为"把托尼单独留下"。故选 A。

27. D **点拨**:表示"听到……"要用 hear 且在一般现在时中,故选 D。 **28.** C

29. C **点拨**:句意为"鲍勃和汤姆脱下(拿掉)白色的毯子,高兴地笑了。"take off 意为"脱下"。故选 C。

30. B **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。由上文的内容可知,他们成功捉弄了托尼很高兴。修饰动词应用副词形式。

三、**31.** B **点拨**:由文中第一段最后一句"A newborn blue whale weighs as much as a big elephant."可知选 B。

32. A **点拨**:判断推理题。由"A bear can run as fast as a horse."可判断熊要比人们想象中跑得快。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

33. C **点拨**:细节理解题。由"A male(雄性) elephant may show his love for three years until the female(雌性) elephant accepts(接受) his love".可知。

34. B **点拨**:细节理解题。由"Wolves usually do not go together though they may do this in winter, and they only hurt people at an unusual time."可知。 **35.** D

四、36. little **37.** snakes

38. chalk **39.** searched **40.** replies

五、41. ran **42.** without **43.** later **44.** watching

45. walking

六、46. Yes, they did. **点拨**:由文章首句可知,他们玩得很开心。

47. At the Outdoor Pool. **点拨**:由 After that, they went to the Outdoor Pool and saw a big octopus(章鱼).可知,是在 the Outdoor Pool 中看见了章鱼。

48. They took the bus back to school./By bus.
点拨:由…they took the bus back to school.可知,他们是乘公共汽车回学校的。

49. After lunch. **点拨**:由 After lunch, they went to the Gift Shop and bought lots of gifts.可知答案。

50. The class monitor. **点拨**:由文章最后一句可知。

七、范文:

Tom was afraid of snakes. Yesterday he read a book on them. There were many interesting things about snakes in the book. He changed.

He thought all snakes were poisonous and harmful before he read the book, but now he knows some are not. He once thought we should kill snakes when we saw them. But now, he thinks we should protect them because some snakes are our friends and are important in nature.

Now he is not afraid of snakes any more. He likes them.

点评:本文运用了"总分总法"写令人惊异的动物——蛇。第一段总起引出话题——snakes;第二段分别描述——poisonous and harmful or not, kill them or protect them;第三段总结收尾——He likes them。

添彩点:1.作者用了丰富的词汇来展开写作,例如 interesting, poisonous and harmful, important; kill, protect, be afraid of, like 等等,通过词汇的不同表达出 Tom 情感变化的过程。2.本文用 but 一词连接 Tom 在对蛇的认知上的前后变化,对比鲜明。

▶Unit 6 过关测试

一、1. C

2. B **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。上文句意:哦,天啊!我不知道你也在北京!你什么时候来的?可知说话者过去并不知道此事,因此应用一般过去时态,故选 B。

3. B **点拨**:第一空格处应用副词 alone 单独地,作状语;第二空格处应用形容词 lonely 孤独的,作表语。

4. C **点拨**:本题用**词义辨析法**。句意:一只鸟_____窗户飞进了厨房。across 指从物体表面横穿而过;above 指在物体的上方;through 指从物体内部穿过;under 指在物体的正下方。鸟应该是穿过窗户飞进了厨房。故选 C。

5. A **点拨**:句意:你离开前别忘了关窗户。forget to do sth.表示"忘记去做某事",事情尚未做;forget doing sth.表示"忘记做过某事",事情已经做了,只是忘记了。故选 A。

6. C **点拨**:句意:周先生擅长烹饪,他决定开自己的餐馆。动词 decide 后面接不定式。故选 C。

7. C **点拨**:too many"太多",修饰可数名词复数;too much"太多",修饰不可数名词;much too"太",修饰形容词或副词;无 many too 这种表达。time 是不可数名词,故选 C。

8. C **点拨**:and 前后连接的是并列成分,谓语动词时态应该相同。fall 的过去式为 fell,feel 的过去式为 felt, fall down 是固定搭配,表示"掉下来",所以选 C。 **9.** B

10. D **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:当我看到我的父亲在一个寒冷的冬夜里等着我的时候,我无法抑制住我的眼泪。see sb. doing sth. 意为"看到某人正在做某事";故选 D。

11. D **点拨**:本题用**短语辨析法**。句意:英国的一所小学在它的三个入口处已经张贴了指示牌,上面写着:笑迎你的孩子,而不是(盯着你的)手机。表示"张贴",应用 put up。故选 D。

12. C **点拨**:句意为:人们都知道中国变得越来越强大。比较级 + and + 比较级,意为"越来越……",为固定句型,故选 C。

13. B **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:——快点!电影要开始了。——不要担心。仍然还有一些时间。a little 和 little 修饰不可数名词,a little 表示肯定,意为"有一点";little 表示否定,意为"几乎没有";a few 修饰可数名词复数形式,表示肯定,意为"有一些、几个"。few 修饰可数名词复数,表示否定,意为"没几个"。time 是不可数名词,根据句意判断这里表示肯定,故用 a little,故选 B。

14. B **点拨**:本题用**把握语境法**。句意:"难道你没看见右边的'禁止停车'那个标志吗?""对不起我没看到。但现在我知道停在这儿是不对的。"根据句意,"没看到"是刚刚过去的事情,要用一般过去时态,故选 B。

15. A **点拨**:由 could 可知主句要用过去时,所以选 A。

二、16. C **点拨**:表示"一个"用 a 或 an,old 以元音音素开头,故用 an。

17. B **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。由文章最后一句话"…you never used them."可以看出,那位老农"从不"用那些金币。

18. A **点拨**:本题用**语法判断法**。对过去的否定用 didn't,因空格后有 not,空格处只填 did 即可。 **19.** A **20.** C **21.** C

22. A **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。有一天,老农找不到那个黑色的箱子了。 **23.** B

24. C **点拨**:这个男人认为把一块石头埋在地下也是一样的,就把它看作是一箱子金币。

25. B **点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**。由句意可知应用 because 引导原因状语从句。

三、26. D **点拨**:细节理解题。由第一段的第二、三句话可知,Maria 有许多动物朋友。

27. A

28. C **点拨**:细节理解题。由第二段中的"But the monkey was too weak. Before he died…"可知,那只小猴子因太虚弱而死去。

29. C **点拨**:词义猜测题。由前句"Maria 和她的父母非常生气。"可知,他们决定"赶走"那个鬼,故 C 项正确。

30. D **点拨**:推理判断题。由文章最后一句中"…the animals returned to the forest happily."可以推断出,最后动物们住在森林里。

四、31. towards **32.** reach **33.** period

34. Camping **35.** sweet

五、36. locked **37.** centuries **38.** climbing

39. to pass **40.** left

六、41~45: BCFDA

七、范文:

It was a sunny afternoon. After school, Li Lei was on his way home happily. He felt very relaxed because the next day would be Saturday. Suddenly, he saw an old woman lying on the ground, and the vegetables were everywhere. She looked terrible. Li Lei looked around, but found nobody. He thought for a while. "Help or not help?" he said to himself. If he helped the woman, she might ask him for money when she came to life. If he didn't do that, the old woman might lose her life. Luckily, the old woman was saved. She praised Li Lei, "You are a good boy!" How helpful the boy is! Let's learn from him.

点评:本文运用"5W 法"叙述了发生在放学路上的一个故事。who: Li Lei, an old woman; when: a sunny afternoon; where: on Li Lei's way home; what: Li Lei helped the old woman; why: the old woman was lying on the ground and if he didn't help her, she might lose her life.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

添彩点：时态准确（一般过去时）；see sb. doing sth.，look around，think for a while，come to life 等短语使文章表达丰富、生动、流畅；疑问句 Help or not help? 及两个 if 条件状语从句的使用，表现了主人公李磊矛盾的心理，表述充分、到位。

▶Unit 7 过关测试

一、**1**. A　**点拨**：do well in“在……方面做得好”。

2. D　**点拨**：本题用词语应用法。句意：你从河中救了那个男孩儿，你真勇敢。honest 诚实的，polite 礼貌的，serious 严重的，brave 勇敢的。故选 D。

3. A　**点拨**：send... to... 意为“把……寄给……”。句意：你能替我把信寄给我父母吗？

4. C　**点拨**：由句意“当心！ 那边危险。”可知，此处用表示“当心”的 look out。　**5**. B

6. A　**点拨**：本题用词语应用法。句意：任何擅长唱歌的人可以参加我们学校的这个活动。take part in 参加；take off 起飞；take out 拿出；take care of 照顾。空后面是 the activity，故此处表示参加活动。故选 A。　**7**. A

8. D　**点拨**：本题考查 protect 的用法。protect sb. against/from sth.“保护某人免受某事伤害”为固定用法，所以选 D。　**9**. C

10. B　**点拨**：本题用辨析法。句意：看，小吉姆游得很快。我不能相信我的眼睛。shouldn't 不应该；can't 不能；mustn't 禁止；needn't 没有必要。分析四个选项可知“不能”符合句意。故选 B。

11. C　**点拨**：“一个八岁的可爱男孩儿”用 a lovely 8-year-old boy 表示，所以选 C。

12. D　**点拨**：本题用辨析法。句意：Bob，晚饭准备好了，在吃饭前请洗手。根据常识可知，饭前要洗手。故选 D。

13. A　**点拨**：本题考查同义替换。when... was five = at the age of five，所以选 A。

14. C　**点拨**：考查动词短语 hear sb. doing sth. 的用法，即：听见某人正在做某事。句意：你听到有人在教室里唱歌吗？ 是玛丽。分析句意可知，“唱歌”的动作正在进行，故选 C。

15. B　**点拨**：本题用交际法。句意：——你能帮我修自行车吗？ ——没问题。半小时之后过来取吧。由答语可知，答话人是乐意帮忙的，no problem“没问题”，符合题意。故选 B。

二、**16**. A

17. A　**点拨**：本题用语法判断法。修饰句中名词，要用形容词 helpful，boy 是单数可数名词，故选 A。

18. C　**点拨**：本题用词语应用法。根据句意表示“做许多其他的事情”要用动词 do。

19. D　**点拨**：本题用词语应用法。句意为“有时他教别的学生游泳。”A 项意为“某时”；B 项意为“一段时间”；C 项意为“几次”；D 项意为“有时”。故选 D。

20. A　**点拨**：句意：他也是助人为乐俱乐部的一名成员……a member of……的一名成员。

21. B

22. B　**点拨**：本题用语法判断法。在 be 动词之后要用形容词作表语。　**23**. A

24. B　**点拨**：本题用语法判断法。由上下文可知本句应用一般现在时，主语 Every student 为第三人称单数，故选 B。　**25**. A

26. D　**点拨**：句意：上个月，在他回家的路上，他听到从河里传来一个男孩的呼救声。强调所到时动作正在发生，故用 hear sb. doing sth.，故选 D。

27. C　**点拨**：本题用联系上下文法。根据 and 前半句是过去时，则此处也要用过去时。

28. D　**点拨**：本题用语法判断法。复合形容词作定语时，连字符连接的名词要用单数形式。

29. B　**点拨**：本题用语法判断法。情态动词 can 后面接动词原形。

30. D　**点拨**：表示“收到某人的来信”要用 hear from sb. 且 look forward to 中 to 为介词，后接动名词。

三、**31**. C　**点拨**：根据文中的第一句“Last Thursday，a brave young woman saved an elderly man from a burning house on Garden Road.”可推断出答案。

32. C

33. D　**点拨**：根据文中句子“Kitty quickly used the telephone to call the firemen on 911.”可推断出答案。

34. A

35. B　**点拨**：根据文中句子“Daniel also said，‘In the future，I will be more careful. I don't want another fire in my house!’”可推断出答案。

四、**36**. rushed　**37**. smoke　**38**. term

39. newspapers　**40**. brave

五、**41**. to help　**42**. abilities　**43**. badly

44. could　**45**. hearing

六、**46**. Ready　**47**. happens　**48**. leave

49. follow　**50**. how　**51**. open　**52**. best

53. run　**54**. Turn　**55**. blanket

七、**范文**：

Dear Chairman，

I am a boy student from Class 1，Grade 3. I'd like to be a member of the Helping Hands Club. I am healthy. I work hard at my lessons. I like helping others. I get on well with my classmates and often help them with their lessons. On my way home，I often help old people cross the street. On the bus，I always give my seat to the persons who need help. Sometimes，I pick up rubbish in the park.

If I join the club，I can do more for others. Besides，I will be able to make more friends.

I will be glad if I am accepted. I am waiting for your answer.

Yours，

Wang Lin

点评：作者运用“三步法”展开自荐。第一步点明自荐意向——I'd like to be a member of...；第二步说明自荐理由——work hard，like helping others，get on well with，...；第三步表达愿望。

添彩点：作者思路清晰，紧紧抓住所给提示，用所学语言对自己进行推荐。恰当使用了一些重要短语 get on well with，be able to，help... with，使文章流畅自然，语言亲切真实。

▶Unit 8 过关测试

一、**1**. C　**点拨**：由“她经常把书落在家”可知安是个粗心的女孩，所以选 C。

2. C　**点拨**：本题考查固定短语的用法。in the sun 在阳光下；be bad for 对……有害。

3. B　**点拨**：本题用词语应用法。agree with sb./sth. 表示同意某人或某人的观点看法等。从答语可知完全赞同，故选 B。

4. A　**点拨**：分析句子结构可知，第二个句子是祈使句，所以谓语动词应用动词原形，又由语境可知是把照片带到说话处，所以选 A。

5. D　**点拨**：本题用词语应用法。句意：——爸爸，你能教我英语吗？ ——当然可以！ 但是自学更重要。根据 teach sb. sth. 可知第一空填代词宾格 me；learn by oneself 为固定搭配，意为“自学”，第二空应填 yourself。故选 D。

6. C　**点拨**：本题用短语辨析法。句意：长大后我将更多地帮助别人。get up 起床；pick up 捡起；grow up 长大；put up 张贴；挂上。根据句意应该选 grow up，故选 C。

7. B　**点拨**：本题用寻找题眼法。由题干中 at birth 可知用一般过去时。故选 B。　**8**. B

9. B　**点拨**：本题用词语应用法。so much 后接不可数名词，第一空应用 noise；how 后接形容词或副词，由题干中 is 可知用形容词 noisy。故选 B。

10. C　**点拨**：形容词 special 需要放在 something 之后；故排除 B 和 D。根据语境可知：这里表示 Tina 的微店没有什么稀罕的东西，因此第二个人打算再找一家商店买礼物。故选 C。

11. B　**点拨**：本题用短语辨析法。句意：我的奶奶和我父母住在一起。他们每天照顾她。look at 看；look after 照顾；look for 寻找；look around 环顾四周。由语境可知选 B。

12. A　**点拨**：too much“太多”，后接不可数名词；too many 接可数名词复数；much too + *adj.* / *adv.*，意为“太……”。homework 为不可数名词，所以用 too much 来修饰。故选 A。

13. C　**点拨**：句意为“当我沿着湖走的时候，我

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

看见一些鱼正跳出水面。”解答该题的关键是要知道感官动词 see 后面接动词的用法。see sth. do sth. “看见某物做某事的全过程”；see sth. doing sth. “看见某物正在做某事”。根据句意可知要用 see sth. doing sth.，故选 C。 **14.** B

15. A **点拨**：本题用**交际法**。对正在做着的事表示歉意并表示不再做了，用“Sorry, I won't.”。

二、16. D **点拨**：take him with them 意为“把它带在他们身边”。故选 D。

17. A **点拨**：be away 意为“离开”。故选 A。

18. C **点拨**：本题用**联系上下文法**。根据前后句意可推断出答案。

19. B

20. B **点拨**：本题用**联系上下文法**。根据做事情的先后顺序，可得出答案。

21. D **点拨**：根据句意在离别时，要说 goodbye。

22. D **点拨**：本题用**联系上下文法**。根据前面 at night 可知是在晚上，则应是关门。

23. A **点拨**：句意为“在去接它之前他们一直等到第二天早晨。”until 意为“直到……为止”。故选 A。

24. C **点拨**：本题用**联系上下文法**。根据前后句意可推断出答案。

25. C **点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。修饰动词短语要用副词，又由文意可知用 carefully。

三、26. D **点拨**：本题用**细节理解法**。由第二段“Many people like them because they often have beautiful colours, and because they can 'talk'.” 可知。

27. B **点拨**：本题用**细节理解法**。由第三段第二句“Most birds cannot talk.” 可知。

28. C **点拨**：本题用**细节理解法**。由第三段第三句“Some people say that parrots can talk because they have big, thick（厚的）tongues（舌头）.” 可知。

29. B **点拨**：本题用**细节理解法**。由第四段第一句“Parrots do not usually know what they are saying when they talk.” 可知。

30. D **点拨**：本题用**细节理解法**。由第四段可知道通常会说“Hello”，“Goodbye” 和“people's names”，故答案为 D。

四、31. end **32.** wide **33.** fight **34.** trouble **35.** brushes **36.** basket **37.** held

五、38. teacher **39.** anywhere **40.** built **41.** cleverest **42.** repeating **43.** mice **44.** feeds **45.** noisy

六、46. How **47.** What **48.** enough **49.** clean **50.** food **51.** special **52.** bad **53.** may **54.** once **55.** change

七、范文：

Dear Jenny,

I have a little cat. Its name is Amy, and I like it very much. I'm glad to tell you something about it. It's a very beautiful white cat with yellow ears. It's very lovely.

When I am doing my homework, it looks at me quietly. And it never makes any noise. In my spare time, I play with it. It likes fish so much. When I give it fish, it smiles at me.

Amy and I are good friends. I am sure you will love it. I hope you can have a pet, too.

Yours,

Li Hua

点评：本文用“三方面法”描写动物。第一段写了宠物猫的外貌和习性；外貌（beautiful, white, with yellow ears）；第二段写了典型事例（when I am doing my homework …, in my spare time …, when I give it fish …）。

添彩点：①It's a very beautiful white cat with yellow ears. 这句话借助 with 用三个形容词形象地描写了猫的外貌。②一些短语，连词和句式的运用，使本文语言丰富。重点短语：make any noise 制造噪音；in my spare time 在我的业余时间；smile at sb. 冲着某人笑。重点句式：I'm glad to do sth. 我很高兴做某事；when 引导的时间状语从句；I am sure 我确定……；I hope 我希望……。

随堂练习

Unit 1 Dream homes

▶Period 1

一、1. dream(s) **2.** palaces **3.** town **4.** capital **5.** country

二、6. D **点拨**：本题用**交际法**。问句 Would you like to do sth.？是征求对方意见的句式，肯定回答用“Yes/Sure，I'd like/love to.”。

7. B **点拨**：句意：——尼克，我的钢笔丢了，而且我到处找不到它。——那个盒子里有很多钢笔。尽管拿一个。第一空用 it“它”，指代前面同一物品；第二空用 one“一个”，指代前面提到的同类人或物中的一个。故选 B。

8. A **点拨**：句意：——凯特在哪里？——她正坐在莉莉近旁。next to 紧挨着，在……近旁，是固定搭配。

9. A **点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。Is there...？其肯定回答：Yes，there is. 否定回答：No，there isn't.。故选 A。

10. B **点拨**：巴黎是法国的首都。故选 B。

三、11. Children's Palace **12.** next to **13.** Which country **14.** It; one **15.** in the country

▶Period 2

一、1. own **2.** share **3.** beaches **4.** garden **5.** centre

二、6. best **7.** playing

8. to watch **点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。根据题干中的 and 和 chat 可知前面的动词也应该用动词原形，又因为 like 后可接不定式，故应填 to watch。 **9.** Russian **10.** watching

三、11. C **点拨**：本题考查介词用法。20 miles from the city 意为“离这个城市 20 英里”。

12. C **点拨**：have fun with … 意为“和……玩得很开心”。

13. C **点拨**：本题用**短语辨析法**。根据句意可知，不要朝窗外看，看这幅画。look out of … “从……向外看”；look at “看……”。故选 C。

14. B **点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由 mother is cooking 可知，妈妈应该在厨房里，故选 B。

15. D

四、16. his own family **17.** in the centre; in a small town **18.** chatting with; on the balcony **19.** in bed; for your eyes **20.** to share; with

▶Period 3

一、1. thousand **2.** size **3.** area **4.** metres **5.** feet

二、6. B **点拨**：考查介词用法。句意：大多数村民在六月十八日上午九点钟参加了龙舟赛。9:00 a. m. 表示某一具体时刻，故用介词 at；而“the morning of June 18”“六月十八日上午”是在具体某一天的上午应用介词 on。

7. A

8. B **点拨**：考查数词。表示“……岁的”用基数词，表示“第……个生日”用序数词；nine 的序数词为 ninth。故选 B。

9. B **点拨**：area 以元音音素开头，要用不定冠词 an。故选 B。

10. A **点拨**：句意：数字“23,456”可以被读为“_____”。在英语中读数字时，千位与百位之间不用连词 and，而百位与十位之间用 and 连接。故选 A。

三、(A)11. fifth **12.** ninth **13.** twelfth **14.** third **15.** thirtieth

(B)16. A **点拨**：表示次序可用“名词 + 基数词”或“the + 序数词 + 名词”。 **17.** A

18. C **点拨**：句意：在我们的家乡，数百名村民前往大城市寻找工作。在具体数词后面 hundred 不用复数形式，hundreds of 表示数百，许多，根据句意可知选项 C 符合题意。

19. D **点拨**：英语中，表示编号可用“名词 + 基数词（名词和基数词的首字母都需大写）”或“the + 序数词 + 名词”来表示。Unit Six 相当于 the sixth unit，意为“第六单元”；the seventh unit 相当于 Unit Seven，意为“第七单元”。故选 D。

20. D **点拨**：句意：这座高楼有十二层。托尼住在第十二楼。twelve 基数词，十二，后跟复数名词；twelfth 第十二，前有定冠词 the，且后一般跟单数名词。故选 D。 **21.** C

22. D **点拨**：表示“……岁生日”用“序数词 + birthday”，故排除 A 和 C 选项。第二空回答 How many，应用基数词。故选 D。

23. D **点拨**：“in one's + 连十数字基数词的复数形式”表示“在某人……多岁时”。

24. B **点拨**：由基数词的读法可知为 85,626。

▶Period 4

一、1. knives **2.** bringing **3.** to come **4.** really **5.** to visit

二、6. B **点拨**：本题用**交际法**。问句是打电话用语，句意为“你好，你是莫莉吗？”，肯定答语可用“Yes, this is … speaking.” 或者

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

"Speaking, please."。故选 B。

7. B　**点拨**：句意：——听！外面下大雨了。——哇！看！院子里现在充满雨水哦！固定短语 be full of 充满，故选 B。

8. B

9. A　**点拨**：some day 意为"总有一天，将来有一天"。根据句意可知，"我"希望有一天"我"能在《中国好声音》唱歌。故选 A。

10. B　**点拨**：ask sb. not to do sth. 意为"叫某人别做某事"。

三、11. call; back　12. their own favourite

13. take a message　14. take/have a shower

15. is full of; looks beautiful

▶Period 5

一、1. D

2. A　**点拨**：本题用**词语应用法**。How many 意为"多少"，后面修饰可数名词复数形式；How much 意为"多少"，后面修饰不可数名词；How long 意为"多长；多久"，用于询问物体或时间的长度；How far 意为"多远"，用于询问距离。students 是可数名词复数，故选 How many。　3. A

4. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。hope 常用的结构是：hope to do sth. 希望做某事；hope + 从句。注意：不可用 hope sb. to do sth.。故选 B。

5. C　**点拨**：thank sb. for doing sth. 因做了某事感谢某人。

二、6. At the foot of　7. swimming pool behind

8. on the football field　9. stay; at the weekend

10. invite my friends to; have a party

三、11. miles　12. best　13. garden　14. fun

15. centre　16. shares　17. music　18. own

19. out　20. sea

Unit 2 Neighbours

▶Period 1

一、1. neighbours　2. around　3. afraid

4. like　5. Most

二、6. visitors　**点拨**：句意：许多参观者在假期来到这个伟人的家乡。由空格前限定词 Many（许多）可知此处填名词复数，故填 visitors。　7. buildings　8. waiter

9. playing　**点拨**：本题套用 like doing sth. 短语。

10. cooking; cook

三、11. visitors; visiting　12. will visit; neighbours

13. I'm afraid　14. Most of; nineteen floors

15. to live in; like

▶Period 2

一、1. community　**点拨**：community centre 意为"社区中心"。

2. engineer　3. checking　4. college　5. skills

二、6. (to) cook; helpful　7. problems　8. broken

9. lucky　10. anything

三、11. B　**点拨**：help sb. with sth. 意为"在某事上帮助某人"。

12. B　**点拨**：句意：当我长大了，我想要成为一名工程师。名词 engineer 以元音音素开头，故其前表示"一个"用不定冠词 an。故选 B。

13. A

14. C　**点拨**：句意为：来自我们社区中心的人们互相帮助。我们就像一个大家庭。C 项 like 为介词，意为"像"。故选 C。

15. D　**点拨**：本题用**词语应用法**。句意为：——看！有人在树下面跳舞。——哦，那是我的堂妹，安娜。Everybody 每个人；Anybody 任何人；Nobody 没有人；Somebody 有人。根据句意可知答案为 D。

四、16. ready to help

17. help; with all kinds of

18. something wrong with; help; fix

19. have a meeting

20. are doing some shopping for

▶Period 3

一、1. will be　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由题干中 in a week 可知用一般将来时。

2. Will; see　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由题干中 tomorrow 可知用一般将来时。

3. meet　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由题干中 Shall 可知动词用原形。

4. will/is going to be　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由 tomorrow afternoon 可知用一般将来时，there be 结构的一般将来时形式为 there will be 或 there be(is/are) going to be。

5. will water/is going to water

二、6. A　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由时间状语"in three days"可知，本句为一般将来时。故选 A。

7. B　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由题干中 this afternoon 可知用一般将来时，主语为复数形式且为第三人称，故选 B。

8. D　**点拨**：考查动词时态。根据后面的时间状语"this coming summer holiday(将要到来的暑假)"可知应用一般将来时。故选 D。

9. D

10. C　**点拨**：句意：——他说什么？——他说明天早上将有一个会议。根据时间状语 tomorrow morning 可知用一般将来时，故选 C。

三、11. won't do any

12. is; going　**点拨**：本题用**转化法**。含有 be going to 结构的句子改为一般疑问句时将 be 动词提前。

13. Where shall　14. will; do　15. is going to be

四、16. will call you back

17. cloudy; is going to rain　18. Are; going to

19. Shall we; the day after tomorrow

20. will come to visit

▶Period 4

一、1. manager　2. future　3. office　4. job

5. sick

二、6. elder　7. sitting　8. dancing

9. postmen　10. artist

三、11. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。句意：我想成为一名警察画像师，它是一份有趣的工作。由句意知，两空均表泛指，应用不定冠词；police 第一个音为辅音音素/p/，用 a；interesting 第一个音为元音音素/ɪ/，用 an。故选 B。

12. B　**点拨**：考查感官动词的用法。句意为：——你觉得李云迪怎么样？——很不错的小伙！他的音乐听起来真的很动听。由答语中的 music 知，只能是"听起来"，故选 B。

13. D　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由答语后一句"他是警察。"可知答案为 D。　14. D

15. C　**点拨**：空前有具体的数字，而 far 用于指代较模糊的数字概念，away 表示具体多远，away from 前有数字。所以选 C。

四、16. How many

17. are sure; in the near future

18. What are; be　19. does well in

20. What does; do; What is; father's job

▶Period 5

一、1. notice　2. information

3. below　4. group　5. anything

二、6. A　**点拨**：feel 是连系动词，后接形容词作表语；sell 是实义动词，用副词修饰。

7. A　**点拨**：本题用**语境判断法**。句意为：——下雨了。我不能去拜访我的朋友了。——别担心。你可以明天去。Don't worry. 别担心。That's good. 很好。Good idea. 好主意。You are welcome. 不用谢。故应选 A。

8. C　**点拨**：本题考查形容词比较级。由"近来你看上去很疲倦。"可知，"我认为你需要更好的睡眠。"，因此用比较级 better(更好的)。故选 C。

9. B　**点拨**：本题用**语境判断法**。句意：——我将有个十天的假期。但是我不知道去哪里。——去巴黎怎么样？where to go 疑问词 + 不定式结构作宾语。　10. D

三、11. group; styles and colours

12. makes me feel better

13. information below may help

14. are here to help; with

15. give you some ideas

四、16. neighbourhood　17. volunteers

18. all kinds of　19. check　20. broken

21. at the weekend　22. problems

23. ready to help　24. lucky　25. like

Unit 3 Welcome to Sunshine Town!

▶Period 1

一、1. order　2. wonderful　3. walking　4. tins

5. Maybe

二、6. C　本题用**词语应用法**。句意：——你现在感觉好些了吗？——是的，我感觉身体很好，能上学了。enough 修饰形容词或副词时，要放在被修饰语的后面，故排除了 B 和 D；感觉身体好用形容词 well，故选 C。

7. C　**点拨**：something 某物；anything 任何东西；nothing 没有东西；everything 一切东西。根据句意，可知选 C。　8. A　9. C

10. C　**点拨**：me 人称代词宾格，my 为形容词性物主代词，mine 为名词性物主代词，our 为形容词性物主代词。根据语境可知选 C。

三、11. What's; Nothing

12. to invite; my twentieth

13. takes; to　14. How much money

15. enough to look after

▶Period 2

一、1. local　2. underground　3. soon

4. theatre　5. quiet

二、6. shopping　**点拨**：go shopping 购物。

7. western　8. to visit

9. take　**点拨**：句意：外面正下雨，为什么不随身带把伞呢？固定句型"Why not do sth.?"。

10. doesn't rain

三、11. B

12. B　**点拨**：be famous for 因……而著名。be famous as 作为……而出名。句意为：三亚因其美丽的海滩而著名。故选 B。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

13. C **点拨**:enjoy doing sth. 意为"喜欢做某事";want to do sth. 意为"想要做某事"。故选C。

14. A **点拨**:本题用**固定句型法**。固定句型:It takes sb. some time to do sth.,意为"做某事花费某人多长时间",故选A。 **15.** A

四、**16.** Why not **17.** to sing

18. looking forward to meeting you

19. is not far from

20. learn more about; don't miss

▶Period 3

一、**1.** yours **2.** Their **3.** ours **4.** him

5. Her; her **6.** Father's **7.** parents' **8.** days'

9. members'

10. visitor's **点拨**:考查句意理解和名词所有格。句意为:架子上的书是那个游客的。用visitor表示人,且用其所有格形式visitor's。

二、**11.** A **点拨**:考查名词所有格和物主代词。问句中house是单数,表示两个人共有的房子,只在后面的名词后加's;答语中选项部分表示"她们的",后面没有名词,所以用名词性物主代词theirs,故选A。

12. D **点拨**:句意:我们每年国庆节通常都有一个7天的假期。空格前有基数词seven修饰,其后的名词应用复数形式,故填days,但空格处指代的是"……天的",要在days后加"'"。故选D。

13. C **点拨**:句意:——琼,这是你的词典吗?——不,它不是我的。它是她的。she为人称代词的主格;her用作人称代词的宾格或作形容词性物主代词,其后要跟名词;hers用作名词性物主代词,其后不用跟名词;herself用作反身代词,意为"她自己"。由"not mine"可知要用hers表示"她的词典"。故选C。

14. B **点拨**:考查代词的用法。第一空需填人称代词的宾格me作动词help的宾语;第二空需填形容词性物主代词my修饰名词English。故选B。

15. D **点拨**:考查名词所有格。句意:这个网店以低廉的价格销售儿童和男士的鞋子。child的复数为children,表示"儿童的"用children's;man的复数形式为men,表示"男士的"用men's,故选D。

16. C **点拨**:句意:——你们喜欢看乒乓球比赛吗?——是的,我们最喜欢的乒乓球运动员是马龙。由句意可知用形容词性物主代词。故选C。

17. B **点拨**:句意:——那是你的飞机模型吗?——是的,它是我的。我姐姐把它寄给我的。第一空后为名词,其前应用形容词性物主代词修饰,故排除选项C和D;根据第二空后没有名词,应用名词性物主代词mine。故选B。

18. C **点拨**:由句意可知此空应用名词性物主代词yours,相当于your eraser。

19. D **点拨**:句意:保罗和他的一些朋友去了书店。some friends of his表示"他的一些朋友",故选D。

20. B **点拨**:第一空应用名词所有格修饰名词subject;第二空应用形容词性物主代词修饰名词subject,所以选B。

三、**21.** Your; theirs

22. my uncle's **23.** five minutes' walk

24. a photo of my family

25. a student of my mother's

▶Period 5

一、**1.** like **2.** raises **3.** drives **4.** grow

5. hometown

二、**6.** friendly **7.** hundred **8.** families

9. to study

三、**10.** on a farm **11.** show; around

12. lives in **13.** enjoys his life

14. by underground; drives; to

四、**15.** A **点拨**:表示"带某人参观某地"要用show sb. around sp.,故选A。

16. C **点拨**:考查代词的用法。one … the other …"一个……,另一个……"。结合句意可知此处指两者之中的另一个。

17. B **18.** B **19.** C

五、**20.** underground **21.** fresh **22.** Local

23. expensive **24.** restaurants **25.** Chinese

26. Western **27.** enjoy **28.** teach **29.** meeting

Unit 4 Finding your way

▶Period 1

一、**1.** east **2.** south

3. trip **4.** follows **5.** kilometres

二、**6.** B **点拨**:句意:"台湾在中国的东南部,在福建省的东面。"表示地理位置的方位介词in表示在同一范围内;on表示两地点接壤;to表示两地点有间隔。台湾是中国领土中的一部分,故第一空用in。第二空用to。故选B。

7. D

8. C **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意为"他的测试成绩使他位于班级前几名学生当中。"among指在三者或者三者以上的人或事物之中。故选C。

9. B **点拨**:答语表示方式,提问用疑问副词How,故选B。

10. B **点拨**:本题用**交际法**。句意:——多么好的一天啊!让我们去钓鱼吧。——_____。我们什么时候走?赞同别人的提议时用Good idea,好主意。故选B。

三、**11.** west of **12.** Follow me

13. between; and **14.** Go down

15. have a class trip

▶Period 2

一、**1.** everyone **2.** straight **3.** cross

4. laugh **5.** bamboo

二、**6.** leaves

7. dangerous **8.** funny **9.** monkeys **10.** feel

三、**11.** A

12. D **点拨**:句意:我喜欢晚饭后沿着河散步。表达"沿着……"用介词along。故选D。

13. C **点拨**:look for意为"寻找",强调动作;find意为"找到,发现",强调结果。根据句意可知应选C。

14. C **点拨**:考查remember和forget的用法。remember doing something意思是"记得做过某事(做了)",remember to do something意思是"记得要做某事(未做)"。forget doing something意思是"忘记做过某事(做了)",而forget to do something意思是"忘记要做某事(未做)"。由题意可知选C。

15. A **点拨**:本题用**句式分析法**。考查反意疑问句的用法。根据反意疑问句的句式结构"前肯后否"和主语It可知正确答案选A。

四、**16.** cross the road; find

17. straight on; turn left into

18. make beautiful sounds

19. lie down all day long

20. jump around; make; laugh

▶Period 3

1. B **点拨**:句意:它是如此可爱的一只熊猫以至于我们都喜欢它。lovely以辅音音素开头,故其前表示"一个"用不定冠词a。故选B。

2. C

3. B **点拨**:句意:我相信一天一苹果医生远离我。"一个"表示泛指,用不定冠词a或an,apple以元音音素开头,前面用an。故选B。

4. B **点拨**:句意:——筒,我发现一把雨伞,它是你的吗?——不,它是迈克的。架子上第三把雨伞是我的。umbrella开头是元音音素,而且不是特指,所以用an;third是序数词,在句子中表示特指"第三把雨伞",所以用the。故选B。 **5.** B

6. A **点拨**:第一空用不定冠词"a"表示"一个";第二空表示球类运动,不用冠词,故选A。 **7.** A **8.** B

9. A **点拨**:have a good time是固定短语"玩儿得高兴"。

10. D **点拨**:the + 姓氏复数表示"……一家人",故选D。

11. B **点拨**:on在……上面,in在……里面,under在……下面,from来自,根据题干设置可知用in,live in意为"居住在……",固定搭配。故选B。

12. B **点拨**:句意:诸位打开了盒子,令她惊奇的是,在它里面是一块金表。表示"在……里面"应用inside。故选B。

13. A **点拨**:考查固定词组in the sun,意为"在阳光下",故选A。 **14.** B

15. B **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。在办公室用介词at。故选B。

16. A **点拨**:句意:——打扰一下,你们学校有电脑室吗?——是的,它在第五层。在表示地点、位置时,on主要指在某物的表面,in指在某一空间或范围里,at表示在某一点的位置,在某个楼层上用on,故选A。

17. B **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。next后接to,表示紧邻;beside在……旁边;inside在……里面;in在……里面。由句意可知选B。

18. C **点拨**:在某一范围内的……方位用介词in。

19. B **点拨**:句意:我看不见露西,因为她在树的后面。由can't see可知用介词behind,意为"在……的后面",故选B。

20. B **点拨**:walk along意为"沿着……走";在十字路口用介词at。

▶Period 4

一、**1.** turning **2.** corner **3.** past

4. traffic lights

二、**5.** right at the second turning **点拨**:本题用**替代法**。Take the + 序数词 + turning on the right/left. 相当于"Turn right/left at the + 序数词 + turning."。

6. how to get to

7. Walk straight on **8.** Go across

三、**9.** C **点拨**:本题用**前后呼应法**。由答语No,there isn't.可知选C。

10. E **点拨**:本题用**前后呼应法**。由下面的问

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

句 Which bus shall I take, please? 可知选 E。

11. A 点拨:本题用推理判断法。由上下文的内容可判断选 A。

12. D 点拨:本题用前后呼应法。由 Does the bus stop in front of the hospital? 可知。

13. B 点拨:本题用前后呼应法。由空格后一句内容可知。

▶Period 5

一、1. exit 2. bank 3. prepares 4. plenty

5. invite

二、6. have a picnic 7. prepare; for me

8. the way to 9. is happy to hear

10. looking forward to visiting

三、11. visit 12. front 13. straight 14. along

15. north 16. left 17. west 18. right 19. east

20. animals

Unit 5 Amazing things

▶Period 1

一、1. birth 2. same 3. facts

4. amazing 5. talking

二、6. D 点拨:UFO 的发音以辅音音素开头,前面用 a;amazing 的发音以元音音素开头,前面用 an,故选 D。 7. C 8. B 9. B

10. A 点拨:本题用语境判断法。否定式的一般疑问句句型的问等,若所述的事实为肯定的,用 Yes 形式回答;若所述的事实为否定的,用 No 形式回答。根据后面的"我非常喜欢它。"可知选 A。

▶Period 2

一、1. searching 点拨:本题用联系上下文法。由后半句"但是她没找到它"可知,她在寻找。

2. quickly 点拨:由"剩下的时间不多了。"可知,要走得快一点,修饰动词用副词形式。

3. Suddenly 4. happened 5. strange

二、6. himself 7. later 8. replied

9. surprised 10. carefully

三、11. A

12. C 点拨:本题用词语应用法。句意:你能帮助我拾起那个钢笔吗?它在你的椅子底下。ask for 请求;look for 寻找;pick up 拾起;put up 举起,张贴。根据后一句句意可知,空白处应用 pick up"拾起"。故选 C。

13. A 点拨:本题用词义辨析法。句意:——先生,刚才有人打电话给你。我告诉他二十分钟后再打过来。——好的。谢谢你南希。由对话中 Nancy 所说的话没有提到打电话者的姓名及身份信息可知,她只是说有人打电话来。somebody"有人";nobody"没有人";anyone"任何人";everyone"每个人"。故选 A。

14. A 点拨:句意为:警察们正在搜寻丢失的小孩。表示"搜寻某人或某物"要用 search for。故选 A。 15. A

▶Period 3

一、1. saw 点拨:本题用寻找题眼法。由题干中的 yesterday morning 可知用一般过去时。

2. bought 3. was

4. studied 点拨:本题用寻找题眼法。由题干中的 five years ago 可知用一般过去时。

5. picked

二、6. went 7. drank 8. took

9. stopped 10. left

三、11. B 点拨:句意:——昨天的排球比赛怎么样?——哦,很精彩。我们玩得很开心。根据上文中 was 一词可知事情发生在过去,需用一般过去时。故选 B。

12. B 点拨:本题用寻找题眼法。句意为:去年夏天,蒂娜和她的父母去英国观光了。由 last summer"去年夏天"可知,此处指过去的事情,要用一般过去时,动词要用过去式。故选 B。

13. C 点拨:根据时间状语从句 when he was six years old 判断主句时态使用过去时。故选 C。

14. A 点拨:本题用寻找题眼法。句意为:上周日我姑姑和我在家,我们一整天都在看电视。Last Sunday 表过去,动词应用过去式,并且 my aunt 是单数。故选 A。 15. B

▶Period 4

一、1. without 2. chalk

3. snake 点拨:本题用词义猜测法。根据"住在地上,人吃;或水里",且所给首字母提示是 s 可知填 snake。

4. Camels 5. little

二、6. at the same time 7. didn't; any more

8. is afraid of 9. the other day

10. surprised to hear of

▶Period 5

一、1. sandwiches

2. surprised 点拨:be surprised to do sth. 意为"做某事感到惊讶"。

3. called 4. well

5. didn't watch 点拨:本题用寻找题眼法。由题干中的 last night 可知用一般过去时。

二、6. playing cards 点拨:like 后接动名词表示习惯性的动作。

7. ask for 8. in use

9. at least 10. all over the world

三、11. went 12. sat 13. heard 14. turned

15. saw 16. left 17. met 18. searched

19. found 20. took

Unit 6 Outdoor fun

▶Period 1

一、1. outdoor 2. hurry 3. ride

4. outside 5. that

二、6. would like to 点拨:本题用替代法。短语 want to do sth. 意为"想做某事",相当于 would like to do sth.。

7. What

8. Hurry up 点拨:含 if 引导的条件状语从句的复合句,可以转化为"祈使句 + or/and + 简单句"的结构。

9. complain too much

10. What; about camping

▶Period 2

一、1. by 2. fell 3. hit 4. notice 5. rabbit

二、6. sunny 7. passing

8. across 点拨:cross = go across

9. locked 点拨:此处应用形容词 locked 作表语。

10. watches

三、11. on the other side 12. take out of

13. stood up 14. get away

15. to go through

四、16. D 点拨:本题用词义辨析法。句意:一个妇女站在窗户旁边,看着孩子们正在花园里做游戏。结合文中"watching the children playing games in the garden"可知该妇女站在窗旁,past"经过";through"经过;通过";across"穿过";by"在……旁边"。故选 D。

17. C 点拨:表示从空间穿过用 through,所以选 C。 18. B

19. B 点拨:look out 意为"小心";look after 意为"照顾";look up 意为"抬头看",符合题意。根据 and 后的 saw 可知,空格处动词应用过去式。

20. D 点拨:第一空格应用 alone,表示独自;第二空格应用形容词 lonely,意为"孤独的"。

▶Period 3

一、1. hurried 2. taught 3. went; didn't go

4. was; listened 5. did; get

二、6. B 点拨:本题用语法判断法。根据问句末尾的 a week ago 判断用一般过去时,助动词 did 后面跟动词原形作谓语,故选 B。

7. C

8. B 点拨:本题用寻找题眼法。根据句中的时间状语 last Sunday afternoon 可知为一般过去时态,故选 B。

9. B 点拨:考查动词的时态。根据句意"——对不起,请看'禁止拍照'的标牌!——对不起,我没有看见它。"可以判断,是"刚才没有看见",用一般过去时,故选 B。

10. D 点拨:考查动词的时态。根据 for my last birthday 可以判断,用一般过去时。故选 D。

三、11. didn't play 点拨:考查否定句结构。谓语动词 played 是一般过去时态,一般过去时态的否定句结构为 didn't + 动词原形。

12. Were there any 点拨:此题用转化法。此题考查 be 动词的一般过去时的一般疑问句。注意肯定句中的 some 在一般疑问句中应改为 any。

13. Did; have 14. they did; they didn't

15. didn't do

▶Period 4

一、1. Italian 2. period 3. excited

4. centuries 5. mobile phone

二、6. to make paper 点拨:make paper 意为"造纸"。

7. famous for 点拨:be famous for 意为"因……而出名"。

8. wood in history

9. From then on; playing 点拨:from then on 意为"从那时起";be interested in doing sth. 意为"对做某事感兴趣"。

10. became; heard

▶Period 5

一、1. sweet 2. towards 3. reach

4. entered 点拨:此题用寻找题眼法。根据句中的 took 可知应用一般过去时。

5. failed

二、6. to catch 7. to do 8. to learn 9. to write

三、10. too excited to

11. small enough to go through 点拨:此题用"adj. + enough to …"的结构。

12. Don't forget to take 13. climb up

14. some more 15. becoming better and better

四、16. passing 17. surprised 18. ran

19. noticed 20. smaller 21. through

22. decided 23. towards 24. forgot 25. failed

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 Abilities

▶Period 1

一、1. ability　2. notebook　3. send　4. even
5. paid

二、6. A　**点拨**：raise 作及物动词意为“举起”，其后可以直接跟宾语；rise 作不及物动词，意为“上升”，其后不能跟宾语；shake 握手，摇动；wash 洗。结合句意可知选 A。
7. B　**点拨**：在 will 后面不能用 can。
8. D
9. B　**点拨**：本题采用**短语辨析法**。look for 寻找；pay for 为……付款；ask for 要求；wait for 等待。结合句意可知选 B。
10. B　**点拨**：本题用**短语辨析法**。句意：——小心！有东西正从楼上掉下来。——天啊！这太危险了。Look at 看；Look out 小心；Look after 照顾；Look for 寻找，根据题意确定 Look out 合乎题意，故选 B。

三、11. clean up　12. gives his seat to others
13. are collecting; for
14. even able to pay for
15. don't believe; will go there　**点拨**：此处 believe 后接表示否定意义的宾语从句时，否定需前移。

▶Period 2

一、1. brave　2. burnt/burned
3. rubbish　4. newspaper　5. protect

二、6. badly　7. rushed
8. matches　9. could　10. nodded

三、11. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**。句意：耐心点！给他更多的时间，他会独自找到这个问题的答案。这两句之间是顺承关系，表示“和、且、又”，应用 and。故选 C。
12. B　**点拨**：由句中的 last month 可知主句用一般过去时，所以应用 couldn't。原因状语从句的动作也发生在过去，也应用一般过去时，而 hurt 的过去式还是 hurt，所以选 B。
13. C　**点拨**：生病住院用 in hospital，所以选 C。
14. D　**点拨**：“五十岁”作定语时，要用复合形容词 50-year-old，“五岁”作表语时，要用 5 years old，所以选 D。
15. D　**点拨**：句意：把脏水倒进河里是不好的。固定短语“把……倒进……”要用 pour … into …。故选 D。
16. D　**点拨**：固定结构：hear sb. doing/ do sth.。后接 doing sth. 表示动作正在发生，接 do sth. 表示听到了整个过程。由“When I passed the classroom”可知强调当时动作正在发生。故选 D。
17. D　**点拨**：本题用**短语辨析法**。put off 推迟；put away 放好，收起来；put down 放下；put out 扑灭。根据语境可知应该选 D。
18. B　19. B
20. C　**点拨**：keep…from doing…“阻止……做……”为固定用法。

▶Period 3

一、1. could　2. can/may　3. could　4. can
5. may

二、6. How　7. What a　8. What　9. What
10. What an

三、11. C　**点拨**：本题用**交际法**。由答语第二句句意“它们仅仅是展出的。”可知是不可以试穿的，故选 C。
12. A　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**。句意：请你说大点声好吗？我不能很好地听到你说的话。can't 不能；mustn't 禁止；不允许；shouldn't 不应该；needn't 不需要。表示“不能够”，应用 can't。故选 A。
13. A　**点拨**：考查情态动词 can 在具体语境中的用法。句意为：——你能唱一首英文歌吗？——是的，我能。由答语可知问句是由 can 引导的。can 表示能力，意为“能，会”；may 可能，可以，常用于委婉的请求；must 必须，一定；need 需要。根据句意可知选 A。
14. C　15. B
16. B　**点拨**：考查感叹句的用法。句意为：我们在初中过得多么愉快啊！感叹句句式为 What(/a/an) + *adj.* + *n.* + 主语 + 谓语！或 How + *adj./adv.* + 主语 + 谓语！该句中空格后 good 是形容词，time 是名词，we 作主语，have had 作谓语。应使用 What 句式，又因为 have a good time 是固定短语，故选 B。
17. A　**点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。句意：——昨晚我看 NBA 比赛直播了，你呢？——我当然看了，好精彩的一场比赛！根据感叹句句式结构：What + *a/an* + *adj.* + 可数名词单数 + 其他！以及 amazing 以元音音素开头，故选 A。　18. A
19. A　**点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。句意：——她穿着多么漂亮的鞋子啊！——我认为是这样。本句用 what 修饰名词短语 beautiful shoes，故选 A。
20. C

四、21. Can; speak; No; can't
22. was able to
23. What nice food
24. How interesting
25. What a

▶Period 4

一、1. term　2. careless　3. article
4. violin　5. show

二、6. A　**点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。play 与乐器类名词连用时，名词前需加上定冠词 the；答句第二句为感叹句，根据中心词 music 为不可数名词，可知其结构为：What + 形容词 + 不可数名词 + (主语 + 谓语)！故选 A。
7. A　8. B
9. B　**点拨**：句意：我弟弟希望他能进入学校篮球队。get into 进入。
10. A　**点拨**：考查介词短语辨析。句意为：他退学后在_____时就开始工作了。at the age of 在……岁时；at the beginning of 在……开始；at the top of 在……顶部；at the bottom of 在……底部。分析句意可知：他退学后在 12 岁时就开始工作了，故选 A。

▶Period 5

一、1. madam　2. part　3. award　4. before
5. visiting

二、6. in need　7. did their best
8. recommend; for　9. heard from
10. lose your way

三、11. B　**点拨**：reason 原因；need 需要；answer 回答；way 方式。由语境可知没有必要买，这两款手机几乎一样，所以选 B。
12. A　**点拨**：本题用**词语应用法**。句意：——你听说过张家界玻璃人行桥吗？——当然，它被建在张家界国家森林公园的一个 300 米深的峡谷上。“基数词 + 连字符 + 单数名词 + 连字符 + 单数名词”可构成复合形容词，用以修饰名词，故选 A。
13. D　**点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。第一空后为名词，故前面应用形容词；第二空是修饰动词 plans，应用副词，故选 D。
14. D　15. B

四、16. an　17. with　18. years　19. neighbour
20. alone　21. shouting　22. smoke　23. hurt
24. tried　25. save　26. lots　27. hot
28. burnt　29. hospital　30. gave
31. presents　32. happy　33. dangerous
34. important　35. careful

Unit 8 Pets

▶Period 1

一、1. knee　2. best　3. goldfish　4. mice
5. pets

二、6. D　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**。句意：——对不起，格林小姐，我把数学书忘在家里了。——没关系的。记得明天把它带到这儿。记得要做某事 remember to do sth.；将某物带到这儿来 bring sth. here，故选 D。
7. C　**点拨**：表示“游来游去”要用 swim around。故选 C。　8. C
9. B　**点拨**：考查 like 和 watch 的用法。like 后接 to do sth. 或 doing sth.；watch sb. 后接 do sth. 或 doing sth.。故选 B。
10. A　**点拨**：表示“教某人做某事”要用 teach sb. to do sth.。故选 A。

三、11. something to eat
12. to bring him
13. That's it
14. holds; in his hand
15. feeding; to

▶Period 2

一、1. hides　2. trouble　3. gentle　4. end
5. touch

二、6. hunting　7. fights　8. built　9. poems
10. hid　**点拨**：本题用**寻找题眼法**。由题干中 couldn't 可知前面也应用一般过去时。hide 的过去式为 hid。

三、11. C　**点拨**：本题用**语法判断法**。第 1 空用 a 表示“一个”；第 2 空最高级前面要加 the，故选 C。
12. C　13. B
14. B　**点拨**：fight for sth. 意为“为某事而斗争”；each of them 作主语时谓语动词用单数形式。故选 B。
15. D　**点拨**：本题用**短语辨析法**。题意：当你游泳的时候，_____你的耳朵。你可以用耳塞来阻止水进入你的耳朵。take after 相像；take part in 参加；take off（飞机）起飞，脱下；take care of 照顾。分析句意可知：要照顾好你的耳朵，故选 D。

四、16. with eyes open wide

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

17. to run after; quickly
18. in trouble
19. are afraid of; bite
20. have to; look after

▶Period 3

一、1. D　点拨：本题考查形容词的用法。safely 副词，“安全地”；safe 形容词，“安全的”；quietly 副词，“安静地”；quiet 形容词，“安静的”。be 后跟形容词，排除 A、C 项；由句意“请安静。隔壁房间有一个重要的会议。”可知选 D。

2. A　点拨：考查系动词的用法。句意：妈妈喜欢做馅饼。她做的馅饼尝起来很好吃。我喜欢它们。good 是形容词，意为“好的”；well 副词，意为“好”；bad 形容词，意为“坏的”；badly 副词，意为“很，非常”。taste 是系动词，后接形容词。故答案为 A。

3. D　4. B

5. C　点拨：something 是不定代词，要用形容词修饰，excited 常修饰人，exciting 常修饰物。故选 C。

6. A　点拨：本题用语法判断法。句意：我的小弟弟是个干净的男孩。他总是使他的房间保持清洁。keep…clean 表“使……保持清洁”，其中的 clean 是形容词，作宾语补足语。故选 A。

7. A　点拨：考查不定代词的用法。句意为“你没有饮料了。我可以给你拿些吗？”此处表示请求许可，something 可以用在一般疑问句中表示请求许可，故选 A。

8. D　点拨：考查不定代词的用法。句意：我认为咖啡尝起来很好，但不是每个人都喜欢喝它。somebody 某人，多用于肯定句；anybody 任何人，多用于否定句或疑问句；nobody 没有人；everybody 每个人。由句意可知选 D。

9. C

10. C　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：——你发现这本书中的有趣的事情吗？——有。它谈论如何成为一个好孩子。一般疑问句中用 anything，故选 C。

11. D　点拨：考查不定代词的用法。句意：——汤姆，晚饭准备好了。——妈妈，我不想吃任何东西。我感觉不舒服。everything 所有事物；nothing 没有什么；something 某事，某物；anything 任何东西，常用于否定句和疑问句中。not 与 everything 连用表示部分否定，根据句意可知选 D。

12. B

13. B　点拨：考查不定代词的用法。句意为“瞧！Sonia 看起来很着急，她一定是发生了什么事。”nothing 没有什么，表示否定；something 某事，某物，用于肯定句和表示请求的疑问句中；anything 任何事物，用于否定句及疑问句中；everything 所有事物。根据语境，只有 B 符合。

14. A　点拨：本题用语法判断法。本句为肯定句应该用 something；else 形容词，意为“其他的”，应该放在不定代词的后面，故选 A。

二、15. something
16. Nobody/No one
17. anybody/anyone
18. Everybody/Everyone
19. someone/somebody；anything
20. somebody/someone
21. Everything
22. anything；nothing

▶Period 4

一、1. D　点拨：本题用词语应用法。第 1 空用动词单三形式 brushes；第 2 空用名词复数 brushes，故选 D。

2. C　点拨：考查介词的用法。“在阳光下”要用 in the sun。故选 C。

3. B　点拨：本题用词义辨析法。考查名词辨析。voice “嗓音，说话声”；noise “噪音，吵闹声”。句意：因为工厂发出的噪音，这个男孩睡不好觉。故选 B。

4. C　点拨：本题用辨析法。weigh 动词，意为“重；有多重”，weight 名词，意为“重量”，本句用动词单三形式 weighs 作谓语，故选 C。

5. D

二、6. grow up
7. Don't make any noise
8. how to look after
9. too much
10. How heavy

▶Period 5

1. fur　2. paws
3. weighs　4. quiet
5. hungry　6. sleeping
7. plays
8. feeds
9. brushes　10. worries

教材习题参考答案

Unit 1 Dream homes

▶Welcome to the unit

A　1. Japan　2. the USA　3. France
4. Canada　5. the UK　6. Russia

▶Reading

B1　1. bathroom　2. bedroom　3. living room
4. dining room　5. kitchen

B2

Name / Home	Neil	Anna	Stephen
City/Town	a town 15 miles from London	the centre of Moscow	Los Angeles
House/Flat	house	flat	house
Big/Small	big	not big	big
Favourite place	kitchen	living room	balcony

B3　1. F　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. T　6. T

B4　1. the USA；balcony；sit there and look out at the sea
2. Russia；bedroom；listen to music in bed
3. the UK；kitchen；sit there and enjoy a cup of tea

▶Grammar

B1

Cardinal numbers	
1 = one	11 = eleven
2 = two	12 = twelve
3 = three	13 = thirteen
4 = four	19 = nineteen
5 = five	20 = twenty
6 = six	21 = twenty-one
7 = seven	30 = thirty
8 = eight	40 = forty
9 = nine	100 = one hundred
10 = ten	101 = one hundred and one
Ordinal numbers	
1st = first	11th = eleventh
2nd = second	12th = twelfth
3rd = third	19th = nineteenth
4th = fourth	20th = twentieth
5th = fifth	21st = twenty-first
6th = sixth	22nd = twenty-second
7th = seventh	23th = twenty-third
8th = eighth	30th = thirtieth
9th = ninth	40th = fortieth
10th = tenth	100th = one hundredth

B2　1. seventh　2. fifteenth　3. fourth
4. second　5. ninth　6. twelfth

▶Integrated skills

A1　dining room a 2，garden b 4，living room e 1，kitchen d 3，bedroom e 6，bathroom f 5

A2　a knives；forks　b flowers　c sofa；TV　d fridge　e lamp；picture　f shower；toilet

A3　(1) house　(2) garden　(3) beautiful　(4) living room　(5) rooms　(6) bedroom

▶Study skills

B　1. centre　2. bathroom　3. hundred
4. October　5. message　6. include
7. favourite　8. wonderful　9. design

Unit 2 Neighbours

▶Welcome to the unit

A　1. c　2. b　3. a　4. b　5. a　6. c

▶Reading

B1　1. shopping　2. college　3. fixing，bicycle
4. engineer，computer

B2　1. T　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. F　6. T

B3　(1) different skills　(2) all kinds of　(3) at the weekend　(4) problems
(5) check　(6) fix　(7) broken
(8) homework　(9) ready to help　(10) lucky

▶Grammar

A　(1) will ask　(2) will，be　(3) will call
(4) Will，wait　(5) will wait

B　(1) are，going to do　(2) am going to buy
(3) is going to buy　(4) are，going to do
(5) are going to bring　(6) is going to make
(7) is，going to do　(8) is going to cook

▶Integrated skills

A1　1 postman　2 office worker
3 manager　4 policeman
5 company　6 restaurant
7 police station　8 post office

A2

Person	Job	Place
Wendy's dad	policeman	police station
Wendy's mum	manager	restaurant

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Wendy's elder brother	postman	post office
Wendy's elder sister	office worker	company

A3 1 policeman 2 police station 3 at night 4 restaurant 5 manager 6 post office 7 postman 8 by bike 9 office worker 10 company

►Task

B (1) community centre (2) 5 March (3) doctors and nurses (4) make them feel better (5) engineers (6) something wrong (7) styles and colours (8) what to wear to a party (9) how to design their homes (10) some ideas

Unit 3 Welcome to Sunshine Town!

►Welcome to the unit

A **1.** shopping **2.** Chinese food **3.** football **4.** films

►Reading

B1 **1.** b **2.** e **3.** d **4.** a **5.** c

B2 **1.** e f **2.** g h **3.** b d **4.** a c

B3 **1.** T **2.** T **3.** F **4.** F **5.** T **6.** F

B4 (1) fresh (2) green hills (3) 40 minutes (4) expensive (5) Chinese (6) Western (7) theatre

►Grammar

A **2.** Daniel's **3.** Kitty's **4.** Daniel's **5.** Millie's

B (2) your (3) mine (4) My (5) yours (6) yours (7) hers (8) my

►Work out the rule!

do not need

►Integrated skills

A2

Time	Place	Things to see
	Taihe Palace	the golden throne
	Zhonghe Palace	
	Baohe Palace	works of art
	Huangji Palace	Chinese paintings
	Fengxian Palace	

A4 **1** T **2** F **3** F **4** F **5** F

►Study skills

B **1** a want to **1** b bookshop **1** c a CD **2** a watches TV **2** b Daniel **2** c Sunday

Unit 4 Finding your way

►Welcome to the unit

A Sunshine Zoo 2 Sunny Garden 1 Lake Park 6 Sunshine Park 7

►Reading

B1 pandas; lions; birds; monkeys; giraffes; elephants (1) north (2) north (3) west (4) south (5) east (6) north-east

B2 **1.** F **2.** F **3.** T **4.** F **5.** T **6.** F

B3 (1) cute (2) bamboo (3) king (4) sounds (5) jump around (6) laugh (7) tall (8) neck (9) large (10) fans

B4 (1) animals (2) cute (3) visitors (4) dangerous (5) sing (6) funny (7) giraffes (8) leaves

►Grammar

A (1) a (2) a (3) The (4) the (5) an (6) a (7) a (8) an (9) the (10) the

B (1) on (2) Next to (3) on (4) Beside (5) in (6) under (7) Between (8) on

►Integrated skills

A1 1 b 2 b 3 b 4 a

A2 c 1 d 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 e 6

►Task

B (1) underground (2) left (3) right (4) next to/beside

Unit 5 Amazing things

►Welcome to the unit

A **1.** c **2.** d **3.** b **4.** a

►Reading

B1 **1.** b **2.** c **3.** c **4.** a **5.** c **6.** c

B2 **a.** 4 **b.** 7 **c.** 1 **d.** 2 **e.** 3 **f.** 6 **g.** 5

B3 **1.** T **2.** F **3.** F **4.** F **5.** T **6.** F

B4 (1) whisper (2) afraid (3) bushes (4) weak (5) miaowed (6) animal

►Grammar

A **1.** started **2.** loved **3.** played **4.** planned **5.** replied **6.** said **7.** met **8.** heard **9.** left **10.** told **11.** stood **12.** brought

B (1) went (2) got (3) were (4) spent (5) took (6) bought (7) came (8) had

C (1) went (2) was (3) saw (4) learned/learnt (5) lived

►Integrated skills

A1 a 1 b 3 c 4 d 2

A2 (1) seven (2) months (3) water (4) smell

A3 (1) only seven bones (2) eats little or nothing (3) can live without water (4) can smell things well

►Study skills

B **1.** /ɑ/ **2.** /ʌ/ **3.** /ɪd/ **4.** /ʌ/ **5.** /ɪd/ **6.** /ɪd/ **7.** /ʌ/ **8.** /ʌ/ **9.** /ʌ/ **10.** /ɑ/ **11.** /ʌ/ **12.** /ɑ/

Unit 6 Outdoor fun

►Welcome to the unit

A **1.** c **2.** f **3.** a **4.** b **5.** e **6.** d

►Reading

B1 **1.** b **2.** d **3.** a **4.** e **5.** c

B2 **1.** c **2.** h **3.** b **4.** a **5.** g **6.** e **7.** f **8.** d

B3 **1.** F **2.** F **3.** F **4.** T **5.** T **6.** F

B4 (1) river (2) rabbit (3) watch (4) pocket (5) field (6) hole (7) ground (8) hall (9) key (10) door

►Grammar

A (1) visited (2) had (3) play (4) practised (5) did (6) go (7) stayed (8) read

B (1) Did; go (2) didn't (3) went (4) Was (5) was (6) did; do (7) put (8) were (9) rowed (10) Did; stay (11) did (12) was

►Integrated skills

A1 a Millie b Simon c Amy d Daniel

A2 **1** d **2** c **3** b **4** a

A3 (1) 2,000 (2) Mozi (3) wood (4) Lu Ban (5) Cai Lun (6) 13th (7) Marco Polo (8) West (9) outdoor (10) kites

►Study skills

A **1.** b **2.** g **3.** a **4.** h **5.** d **6.** e **7.** c **8.** f

B **2.** 88 – 89 **3.** 34 – 35 **4.** 84 – 85 **5.** 46 – 47

Unit 7 Abilities

►Welcome to the unit

A **1.** b **2.** a **3.** d **4.** f **5.** e **6.** c

►Reading

B1 **1.** d **2.** e **3.** a **4.** f **5.** c **6.** b

B2 (1) smoke (2) neighbour (3) wet (4) protect (5) afraid (6) hospital

B3 **1.** bathroom 改为 kitchen **2.** trousers 改为 clothes **3.** legs 改为 arms **4.** months 改为 weeks **5.** cards 改为 presents

C **1.** b **2.** a **3.** d **4.** c

►Grammar

A (1) Can/May/Could (2) can/may (3) Can (4) can (5) Can (6) can't (7) May (8) may (9) can/could

B (1) How (2) What (3) How (4) How (5) What

►Integrated skills

A1 C E A B D

A2 (1) Chinese (2) English (3) History (4) Geography (5) member (6) shows (7) volleyball (8) Wednesday (9) friendly

A3 (1) Chinese (2) English (3) History (4) Geography (5) member (6) school shows (7) volleyball (8) Monday (9) Wednesday (10) friendly

►Study skills

1. *China 1911 – 2011*

2. *100 Greatest People in History*

3. *English-Chinese Dictionary*

4. *A Guide to English Grammar*

5. *The Cat Goes Shopping*

6. *Ronnie Goes into Space*

7. *The Life of a Plant*

8. *How the Earth was Formed*

Unit 8 Pets

►Welcome to the unit

A **1.** parrot **2.** rabbit **3.** dog **4.** mouse **5.** cat **6.** goldfish

B **1.** f **2.** d **3.** a **4.** c **5.** e **6.** b

►Reading

B1 **2.** wide **3.** tricks **4.** fight **5.** end **6.** pet **7.** trouble **8.** touch

B2 **1.** b **2.** c **3.** a **4.** e **5.** d

B3 (2) bark (3) miaow (4) feed (5) touch

B4 (1) miaows (2) tricks (3) hides (4) trouble (5) runs (6) barks (7) bite

►Grammar

A1 **1.** Birds make nice sounds.

2. Dogs are clever and friendly.

3. Goldfish are quiet and easy to look after.

A2 (1) black (2) tired (3) hungry (4) special (5) clever (6) happy

B (1) anything (2) anyone (3) everyone (4) someone (5) anyone (6) Nobody/No one (7) nothing

►Integrated skills

A1 **1** F **2** F **3** F **4** T **5** T **6** F

A2 (1) clean (2) the sun (3) your hands (4) vegetables (5) a day (6) small (7) 20 (8) 400 (9) black

A3 (1) goldfish (2) clean (3) vegetables (4) 20 (5) 400 (6) quiet

►Study skills

1 c **2** a **3** b

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料